

GOVERNMENT OF INDIA
ARCHAEOLOGICAL SURVEY OF INDIA
CENTRAL
ARCHAEOLOGICAL
LIBRARY

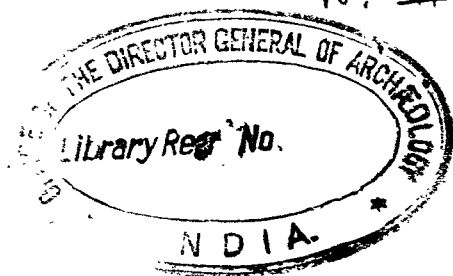
ACCESSION NO. 12056

CALL No. 954.023/che.

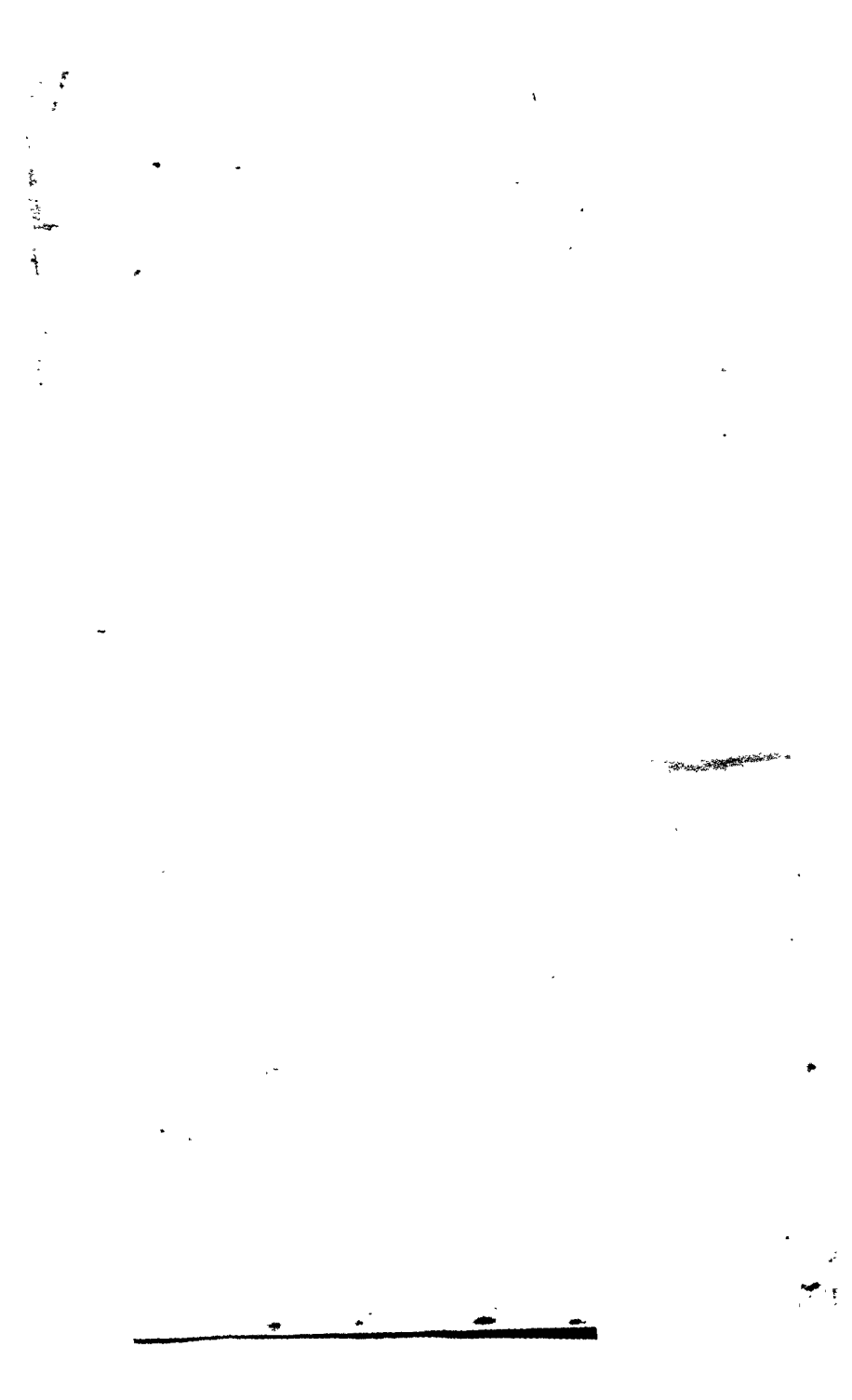
D.G.A. 79

Acc. 12056

Vol. II



~~D 4366~~ Vol. 2





Emperor the Great

Emperor of the

MOGULS and TARTARS

BEING

JOURNAL of his Conquests

Asia and Europe

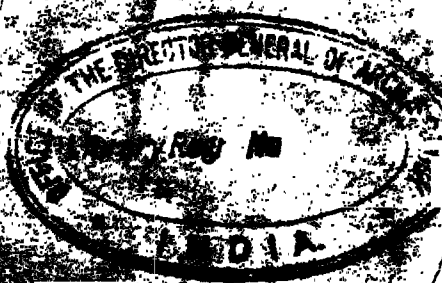
Written in Persian by **CHEREDDIN ALI**
Nati of Tez, his Contemporary

Translated into French by the late **Joseph de la Croix**,
Bach Professor in the
Royal College, and Secretary and Interpreter
to the King in the Oriental Languages.

With Historical Notes and Maps

and a Family record of the Mogul Empire

84366 80





(3)

THE
HISTORY
OF
TAMUR-BEE.

BOOK IV.

Tamur enters India, and passes over the rivers Indus and Ganges. He takes the citys of Moultan, Lahore, and the capital of that kingdom. A considerable battel between Tamur and the Sultan Mabmoud, grandson of Firuz Shah emperor of India. The Tartars are suc-
cessful in conquering the elephants in the battel with the Indians. The destruction of the temples of the Gaudians. Several battels with these adorers of other idolaters of this re-

The history of Timur-Bec.

CHAP. I.

The cause of Timur's war in India.

TIMUR had given to his grandson prince Pir Mehemed, son of Genghis, the provinces of Gouda, Bacalan, Cabul, Gaznin, and Candahar, with their dependencys, as far as the frontiers of India, as we said before; and this Prince being established in these principalities, endeavor'd to render 'em flourishing by his justice and goodness.

He receiv'd orders from court to assemble the troops of all the provinces, and to depart at their head for other conquests, and to make himself master of many towns and countrys in India. He accordingly set out with a great army commanded by good generals, the most valiant leaders of his country.

They began with the plunder of the Ongans, inhabitants of the mountain of Sofman Cough*, which country they entirely ravag'd. They pass'd the Indus, enter'd Outchah*, and also laid siege to Moultan*, which had then for its governor prince Sarent, eldest brother of Melan Can, who govern'd the empire of India for the young Sultan Mahmood.

Timur resolv'd to make war in the empire of India, because since the death of Piran Chah

* On the west of the Indus, between Cabul and Candahar.

* A town E. of the Indus, N. of Moultan.

* A town of India on the Rave, long. 107°. lat. 29.

The history of Timur-Bec.

emperor of it, Mellou Can and Sarenk two Chah's brothers, who had been his generals, had usurp'd the sovereign power; and having plac'd on the throne Sultan Mahmoud, grandson of Firouz Chah, they reign'd over all India, Mellou Can residing at Delhi, near Sultan Mahmoud, and his brother Sarenk at Moultan.

Moultan being besieged by our army, was briskly attack'd and batter'd without intermission; there were two assaults given every day, and the regiment of Timur Coja son of Achanga, fought with more heat than all the others, because this Emir was not only an adviser, but the first actor in this enterprize.

Timur receiv'd the news with joy, and as he had already resolv'd to carry his arms to Catai or China, to root out the infidels, he got together all the troops of the empire. He had been before that inform'd, that the mahometan religion was then observ'd in many places of India, as at Delhi and other cities, where the testimony of this faith was written upon their coins; nevertheless the greatest part of the provinces distant from this town were inhabited by idolaters. Timur, who design'd to partake of the merit and glory of the Gazis, rais'd this numerous army with intention to make war on the enemies of his religion, and resolv'd on the conquest of India. He consult'd his council, according to the custom Ma-

Capital of India, long. 100. lat. 30. It consists of three Towns, Siri, Gharipera, and old Delhi, all which make the one. The Paris consists of the city, university, and fort of St. George.

¹ Gazis among the originals signifies the war the Mahometans undertake against those who profess a different religion. They imagine that whoever die in these wars, become martyrs, and of consequence inherit paradise.

The history of Timur-Bee.

Book IV. Timur had introduc'd, and propos'd his undertaking to the great Emirs of the state in these terms:

“ Fortune, my dear friends, furnishes
“ with such happy conjunctures, that she seems
“ to offer herself to us, and invite us to lay hold
“ of the favorable opportunitys which present
“ themselves; for as we have already seen the
“ empires of Iran and Touran, and almost all
“ Asia under our command, she shews us In-
“ dia, thro the disorders of the princes who
“ govern it, opening its gates to receive us.
“ My name has spread terror throughout the
“ universe; and the least motion I make is ca-
“ pable of shaking the whole earth. It is
“ therefore time to attack the kingdom of In-
“ dia, where having overcome what opposes
“ our designs, we shall oblige this kingdom to
“ acknowledg no other sovereign than me.
“ What think ye, my dear friends, who are the
“ companions of my victorys, of this great en-
“ terprise? Speak all in general, and every
“ one in particular, your opinion of this pro-
“ posal, which appears reasonable, since for-
“ tune has not yet withdrawn its protection
“ from us.”

Timur having thus made known his resolu-
tion to the captains and generals of his army,
they fell upon the ground, and with sincere sub-
mission and perfect obedience, said, The order
of the emperor was a law to all men, and more
indispensibly so to them who were his slaves;
that wherever he shou'd set his feet, there they
shou'd be ready to lay their heads: that it
was their glory punctually to obey his orders,
even when he requir'd 'em to undertake the
greatest difficultys. Timur, pleas'd with this
answer, heap'd favors on 'em, and thought of
nothing

The history of Timur-Bec.

nothing more than the means of bringing this enterprize to perfection.

7
Chap. 2.

C H A P. II.

Timur brings his army into the field, to make war against the Guebres in India.

THE Alcoran says, the highest dignity man can attain to, is that of making war in person against the enemys of his religion. Mahomet adviseth the same thing, according to the tradition of the mussalman doctors : wherefore the great Timur always strove to exterminate the infidels, as much to acquire that glory, as to signalize himself by the greatness of his conquests.

For which reason in the year of the Leopard, that is, in the month of Regeb of the year 800 of the Hegira, having left Mirza Omar son of Mirza Miran Chah to govern the city of Samarcand, he took the road to India, having many kings of Asia for his attendence, who were come to his court as to an asylum, to render their services to this conqueror.

March
1398.

He had in his army soldiers and even chiefs of all nations ; but all the chiefs, and greatest part of the companys who were in posts of consequence, were Tartars : and he had also a great many lords of Kech.

Timur being arriv'd at Tormed, there order'd to be made a bridge of boats over the Oxus, which he cross'd with his army : He rais'd many choice foldiers and of good appearance in the fine city of Culm, from whence he took the road to Aznic and Semencan ; and after having

The History of Timur-Bec.

pass'd the mountains of Batalan, he went to an
camp at Enderabe.

CHAP. III.

*Timur marches against the inhabitants of
Ketuer. He defeats the Siapouches, who
were cloth'd in black.*

WHILST Timur was encamp'd at Enderabe,
the inhabitants came to ~~ask~~ ^{cast} themselves
at his feet, to complain of the insults and ~~that~~
that they receiv'd from the idolaters of Ketuer,
and from the Siapouches^{*}: they represented to
him that there were a great number of Mus-
fulmans, from whom the infidels exacted every
year excessive sums of money, under the name
of tribute and Carage; which if they fail'd to
pay punctually, they kill'd their men, and made
their women and children slaves.

The emperor, touch'd with their complaints,
and excited by zeal for the religion of which
he was protector and defender, march'd imme-
diately against these tyrants: he chose three
soldiers out of every ten, and left the Mirza
Charoc to command the rest of the army and
the baggage at Gounandictour[†], where they
ordinarily pass'd the summer. Timur decamp'd
twice a day, and march'd with so much dili-
gence, that he made two days journey in one.

^{*} A mountain of Bedakchan inhabited by idolaters, long.
115. lat. 36.

[†] An idolatrous nation cloth'd in black, inhabiting the moun-
tains S. of the province of Bedakchan.

[‡] A cool place in the mountain near Enderabe.

The history of Timur-Bec.

He soon arriv'd at Perjan⁹, whence he sent Mirza Roustem, accompanied by Burhan Agien, and other Emirs, with ten thousand men towards the left, to seek the Siapouches; and following his road, he arriv'd at Caouc¹, where he found a demolish'd citadel, which he caus'd to be rebuilt. Many Emirs and soldiers left some of their horses at Caouc, and ascended on foot the mountain of Kietuer, where the sun was in Gemini, the snow lay in so great abundance, that the feet of most part of the horses, which the lords wou'd have carry'd up, fail'd^d em; yet some of em were sped on so much during the night and the frost, that they were constrain'd to get up: but day being come, and the snow turn'd into ice, they kept these horses under felts till evening, when they continu'd to ascend the mountain, so that at length they arriv'd at the top, and then sent for the rest of the horses. And as the ascent was in narrow passages and precipices, and there was no road to get to them, besides what was cover'd with snow; some of the Emirs and soldiers descended by cords, while others lying on the snow, slid down to the bottom. They made a sort of raft for Timur, to which they fasten'd rings, that they might tie cords to it of two hundred and fifty cubits in length: he sat upon it, while many persons let him down from the top to the bottom of the mountain, as far as the cords wou'd reach. Others dug with pickaxes in the snow a place where he might stand firm. They who were on the top

⁹ A town in the province of Bedakchan, two days journey from Enderabe near the Siapouches.

¹ A town at the foot of the mountain of Kietuer, long lat. 36.

The history of Timur-Bec:

Book IV. having gently descended, they let down Tim again in the machine. The place also was mark'd out where he shou'd stay next; and so on till the fifth time, when he arriv'd at the foot of the mountain. Then this monarch took a staff in his hand to rest on, and walk'd on foot a great way. These fatigues did not deter him, nor the cause of his confidence in the merit of his valour, which always increas'd his ardent zeal in the most difficult enterprizes. Those who are for God may rest assur'd of success. They let down some of the emperor's horses, girthed 'em about the belly and neck, with great caution; but most of 'em thro the fault of the guides fell headlong down, so that there remain'd but two fit for service. Then the emperor took horse, and all the army follow'd on foot. The infidels of this country are strong men, and as large as the giants of the people of Achaemen; they go all naked; their kings are nam'd, Oods and Oodschoon; they have a particular language, which is neither Persian, nor Turkish, nor Arabian; and know no other than this, that it was not for the destruction of the world, that they were sent to these places, who are found in the mountains, and having learnt their language, they are not able to understand any other.

These infidels were in a citadel, at the foot of the mountain, where a great river passes; and on the opposite side of this river there was a high mountain. As they had learnt the approach of Timur twenty-four hours before his arrival, they abandon'd this post, cross'd the river, and car-

* Arabians in the time of Nimrod.

* The language of the people of Ketur was heretofore un-

The history of Timur-Bec.

11

ry'd their effects to the top of this mountain, Chap. 5.
imagining it inaccessible, especially with the intrenchments they had made there.

When the army after long fatigues arriv'd at the citadel, they found nothing there but some sheep the enemy had left, which they made themselves masters of: then having set fire to the houses, they immediately cross'd the river. The emperor order'd 'em to ascend the mountain by many narrow passages; which our soldiers did, and at the same time return'd thanks to God.

Cheik Arslan, at the head of the vanguard of the left wing, attack'd the foremost of the enemies, and made himself master of a rising ground. They were also attack'd by Ali Sultan Tarachi, who came down into the place where they were encamp'd. A colonel nam'd Chamelic signaliz'd himself by many great actions; and fourteen of our bravest soldiers fell from the top of the mountain to the bottom, and were kill'd. Mocher also behav'd himself gallantly. Moush Goja advanc'd at the head of his company, and gain'd the top of the mountain. Sevindgie Behader did all that could be expected from the greatest valor. Cheik Ali Saliberi advanc'd as far as the ridge of the mountain with all his soldiers; he attack'd the enemy, and got possession of their post. Mousa Recmal and the Emir Hussein Gornahi behav'd themselves with the utmost resolution; and at length all the Emirs of the Hezares and Gouchons attack'd the infidels on all sides in the most dangerous places. The enemy defended themselves vigorously, notwithstanding the great slaughter of their men. The fight lasted three

* The Tartars have a vanguard to each wing, which they call Gambol.

The history of Timur-Bec.

nights with solicited obsequies, but at length these unfortunate men killing themselves no longer able to make resistance, besought quarter with tears and prayers. Timur sent to tell Aco Sultan Kechi, with order, to tell them that if they would come to him with submission and repentance, abandon their errors, and take up a resolution to acknowledge the true God, and embrace the Mahometan religion with sincerity, he would not only give 'em their lives and estates, but also leave 'em to enjoy their principality as before. They had no sooner learnt this from an interpreter, than the fourth day they came to cast themselves at the feet of the conqueror, conducted by Aco Sultan Kechi: they renounc'd their idolatry, and embrac'd the Mahometan religion, promising to submit entirely to the emperor, and obey all his commands. Timur, according to his wonted generosity, gave them clothes, and sent them away, after having comforted 'em by the most affectionate speeches.

When these wretches, whose hearts were more black than their garments, fell upon the argument of Chamelic, he gave all the soldiers of it to the sword, except a few who, who wounded and lame, escap'd their hands.

As soon as this treason was discover'd, our men slew near one hundred and fifty of 'em. All the army got up upon the mountain, and following the precept of Mahomet, who orders the women to be spar'd, they put to the sword all the old and young men of these infidels, and carry'd away their women and children. At length they built towers on the top of the mountain and the end of the bridge, with the heads of these traitors, who had never bow'd their head to adore the true God. Timur order'd to be engrav'd upon marble the history of

The history of Timour-Bec.

of this action, which happen'd in the month of Ramadan in the year of the Hegira 800; and he added the particular Epocha which this people us'd, that their posterity might have some knowledge of the famous valor of the ever-victorious Timur. This pillar so inscrib'd gave the greater pleasure to Timur, in that these people had never been conquer'd by any prince in the world, not even by Alexander the great.

CHAP. IV.

Timur sends Mehemed Azad to gain intelligence of Mirza Roustem and Burhan Aglen, His return to Ketuck.

AS there came no news of Mirza Roustem and Burhan Aglen, who were gone against the Siapouches, the emperor order'd the inhabitants of Ketuck to furnish him with guides; and he sent Mehemed Azad and Doletchah, who had been rais'd to preferments in his court, Four or five Emirs in company'd 'em, with four hundred Turkes and three hundred Tadjicks, commanded by Mehemed Azad, who had orders to get intelligence of Mirza Roustem and Burhan Aglen. At his departure, according to Timur's custom, by strait and difficult passages, treading fatigue, high mountains covered with snow, which he afterwards slid down

* The Turks are those who descend from the Moguls and Tartars.

* The Tadjicks are the inhabitants of the town of Tadjikana, and all the country of Iliu, who are neither Moguls, nor Turkes.

The history of Timur-Bec.

strongly fasten'd his buckler to his shoulders. He then march'd to the fortress of the Siapouches, where he cou'd not meet a single person, or hear one word; but he found the tracks of the feet of several men, who were gone to the other side of the mountain. These were the footsteps of the Siapouches, who having advice of the march of Mirza Roustem and Burhan Aglen, were gone out of their fortresses, and retir'd to the mountains, where they lay in ambuscade in a very narrow passage. Some pass'd by 'em, and others without precaution got off their horses, which they let go loose: then the Siapouches, laying hold of the opportunity, came out of their ambuscade, and fell suddenly upon them. Burhan Aglen, thro his great cowardice, or rather by an unheard-of treason, flung off his coat of mail, and fled without fighting, which caus'd the defeat of his troops. When a general turns his back, we may say he is the murderer of his soldiers. The infidels seeing the Mussulmans fly, became more daring; and pursuing our men close, slew many of 'em with their axes and war-clubs, and among the rest Cheik Hussein Courtchi, Doletchah Gebegi, and Adina captain of the horse, who, after a vigorous defence, were destroy'd among the rest.

Affairs were in this miserable state, when Mehemet Azad observing the prints of the feet of the Siapouches, arriv'd in the passage where this tragedy happen'd: he met 'em at their return, attack'd 'em with the greatest bravery, after a sharp fight utterly defeated 'em, and retook from 'em the bucklers, arms and horses of our Mussulmans. He then went to rejoin Burhan Aglen with the horse which had fled; and every

The history of Timur-Bec.

every one knowing his own bucklers, arms and Chap-
horses, they were restor'd.

Mehemed Azad then told Burhan Aglen that he must stay in that place all night; but this coward would not do it: he got up to the top of the mountain, whither he was follow'd by his troops, to the great regret of Mehemed Azad; for when a commander proves a traitor or a coward, his army never fails of being conquer'd. This action of Burhan was very infamous; and since the reign of Genghiz Can there has not been one prince of the race of Cayat*, who has committed the like. Burhan had formerly done the same in the war of the Uzbeks, and receiv'd pardon by the singular goodness of Timur, who continu'd to honor him as before, and had even sent him on this expedition, in hopes he would repair his fault, and recover his credit, which in this last affair he entirely destroy'd.

After the conquest of Ketuer, and defeat of the idolaters, Timur sent Gelalelissam and Ali Sistani with troops to seek an easy passage from the mountains, and to clear the ways: and he order'd them to ruin whatsoever they met belonging to the infidels.

These two Emirs having found a passage to their mines, open'd a way in the snow; and then Timur cross'd the mountains, and went down to Caouc', where he left a strong garrison. At this place he join'd the Emirs and soldiers, who for eighteen hours had constantly

* A Mogul hord, from whence Genghiz Can sprung; which hord were the descendents of an ancient Mogul prince, Cayat, who was descended from Turc, son of Japhet, son of Noah.

† A town in Ketuer rebuilt by Timur.

The history of Timur-Bec.

fought on foot: then they took horse, and accompanied the emperor.

When Burhan Aglen and Mehemed Azad had found the imperial standard with their troops, Timur would not admit the first into his presence, because without making any defence he had fled from the infidels: he treated him with scorn as he met him by chance: and to shew his infamy, cited a passage of the Alcoran, which assures us, That twenty zealous Mussulmans are able to conquer two hundred infidels: provided they trust in God: and yet Burhan (said the emperor) at the head of ten thousand men fled from a handful of infidels, and put the Mussulmans in danger of being torn in pieces. Then Timur declar'd him criminal, and as mark of disgrace banish'd him the court.

Mehemed Azad having fought on foot at the head of four hundred men only, and stood his ground against the same men, tho' puff'd up with their victory: and having also put a great number of 'em to the sword, recovering from 'em all the horses they had got: Timur bestow'd on him honors and riches, rewarded him by great praises, and giving him the command of a regiment to reward his valor. The emperor distributed also largesses among those who had given marks of their courage in so dangerous an expedition.

CHAP. V.

Timur sends Mirza Charoc to Herat.

At this place * Timur permitted his dear son Mirza Charoc, heir apparent to the crown, to return to Herat, capital of Corassana, of which he was governor. When he took leave of this prince, he gave him his advice, and us'd many expressions which shew'd a fatherly tenderness and affection; and after having embrac'd him, and recommended him to the divine protection, he dismiss'd him. Timur decamp'd at the same time, and march'd towards Cabul: he took the road to Tulle, ascended the mountain of Hendou-Kech, pass'd by Pendgen, commonly call'd Pender, and went to encamp in a meadow of the country of Baran, about five leagues from Cabul. And as the design of this conqueror was chiefly to dispense justice to the people, and to render the countrys and towns flourishing, he gave orders for a canal to be dug, which might join the river which passes thro' those quarters. He divided the land between the captains and soldiers, and in a short time there was a great canal made five leagues long, which is yet call'd the canal of Mahighir: at length there were many large villages built up; and the valley, which before had no

* A little town of Belakchia.

* A town and mountain, where Abulfeda the geographer says there are two silver mines; and that the town is full of ditches dig'd to get out the ore. It lies the first of the mountains of Cachmir to the west, between Cabul and Lahore.

been cultivated, became a fine and delightful garden.

C H A P. VI.

*The arrival of ambassadors from several places. Taizi Aglen, sent from the country of the Calmacks, and Ghar Nou-
man from that of Kars.*

TIMUR being encamp'd in the plain of Dourin, there arriv'd an ambassador from Timur Corlu, Aglen a prince of Capchac, and another from Emir Aidecou, a prince of Capchac, as also a third of Gese from Kaser Coja Aglen; who were presented before the throne by the Emirs and Nevians. After they had kiss'd the ground and perform'd other usual ceremonies, they began their harangue, wishing all prosperity to Timur, and highly extolling him: then they declar'd the nature of their embassy, which was, to assure the emperor that their masters were faithful servants of his majesty; that tho for some time past there had been no good intelligence or agreement between 'em, which had made 'em depart from the obedience they ow'd him, and wander as vagabonds in the deserts: yet consideration and prudence having now brought 'em to see the deformity of their actions, they sincerely repented of 'em and that if the emperor would be merciful and pardon their fault, they would for the future

* A village near Garan.

The history of Timur-Bec.

be most obedient, and never disobey the orders of his officers. Chap. 6

Taizi Aglen, who for some difference which happen'd between him and the Can at Olug Yurt*, fled from the kingdom of Calmac, came to this place to lay himself at the feet of the throne. He was receiv'd as handsomly as a prince of his rank cou'd expect. Timur embrac'd him, and presented him with a vest wove with gold, a belt set with precious stones, horses of great price, several mules and camels, tents and pavilions, and whatever cou'd be expected from a great emperor. At the same place also arriv'd Emir Cheik Nouredin, son of Sar Boga, who had been left by Timur in Persia, after the five years campaign there, in order to receive the revenues of that kingdom and the neighboring countrys. He brought with him an immense treasure, with abundance of jewels of inestimable price; likewise animals proper for the chase, and birds of prey; leopards, gold money, belts enrich'd with precious stones, vests wove with gold, stuffs of all colors, arms and all sorts of utensils for war, Arabian horses with saddles of gold, great camel, several carriage and riding mules, fine stirrups, the straps embroider'd with gold and silver, umbrellās, canopys, pavilions, tents and curtains of scarlet and all colors; in short, there was so great a quantity of curious pieces of work, that the secretarys and comptrollers of the harem employ'd three days and three nights

* That is, the great hord, seat of the kings of Calmac, rather of the Mogul Cans or emperors, near Caracorum capital of Calmac.

* A kingdom, formerly call'd Caracatal, is situated, north of the kingdom of Cource or Leasing.

The Story of Timur-Bek.

to register 'em, and write copyes of 'em, which were presented to the lords of the court for their perusal.

The day for presenting petitions being pointed, the Emirs or generals, and the Nevys or foreign princes, presented Emir Cheik Noureddin before the Imperial throne. This prince knelt down, and the whole day was spent in calling over before him, or all his presents, than which none ever was seen so magnificent, not even in the reign of the great Baidar, or of Corzu Peruize.

Prince Taizi Aglen, the ambassadors of Capchac, and several princes of the race of Genghis Can, who were present, were surpriz'd it; not only at the sight of the riches, but but also considering that the power of Timur must be very great, since one of his subjects was rich enough to make so magnificent a present.

Timur distributed a great many of these rarities, and gave a very friendly reception to Emir Cheik Noureddin, who told the emperor that all these presents were from those who had resolv'd to sacrifice their lives to him.

Timur being willing to treat the ambassadors of the Uzbeks and Geres handsomely, gave caps of gold, belts, vests and horses; he granted 'em whatsoever they ask'd, and loaded 'em with presents, as well for themselves as their masters, with letters in answer to those they had brought. At length Emir Cheik Noureddin knelt down, and ask'd pardon for Burhas Aglen, and the rest who accompany'd him at

* King of Persia of the first race.

* King of Persia of the third race.

* The princes of Capchac are here call'd Uzbeks.

The history of Timut-Bec.

the audience: Timur granted this with an excess of clemency and generosity.

He then sent to India Sultan Mahmoud Can, with the troops of the left wing, and all the princes and Emirs who had before receiv'd orders.

At this time Malek Mehemed, brother to Lechkan Khan in Ougani, cast himself at the feet of the emperor, and in an humble manner told him, that Moussa, prince of the nation of the Kerkes, had kill'd his brother, who was an officer of his majesty; that he had ruin'd the town of Isiah, and pillag'd his Herazas; that he had made himself master of their effects by force; and that this villain constantly robb'd in the great roads, that no one cou'd pass those quarters. "For my part, says Malek, I, who am a poor servant of your majesty, have fled to save my life from the hands of this villain; your majesty I have pleas'd by Gander, and find in this news I receiv'd of the Emperor, your imperial standard."

This advice rais'd Timur's passion, and he resolv'd to put a stop to these disorders, by such means or other. He order'd Malek to be receiv'd, and to keep this advice secret, telling him he wou'd call Moussa to court; and if he came, he wou'd oblige him to do justice, and make entire satisfaction; but if he did not come, he wou'd give him an army, with which he might revenge himself on this murderer, for the death of his brother. Timur immediately sent

* This emperor of Zagarai, who serves under Tamer as general of the army, and has only the name of Can, Timur being sovereign.

* Four days journey from Dourin, in the road to India.

Book IV. a messenger to Moussa, to whom he gave order to tell him as follows.

"The emperor having advice that you had demolish'd the city of Irjab, situate in the great road to India, does not think convenient that it should remain in ruins; wherefore he wills and commands you to come back with to court, for he has designs to visit you with the government of that country, not doubting but you will rebuild the place and restore it to its former splendour."

The messenger having handsomely acquainted himself of this commission, Moussa came immediately with a resolution to cast himself at the feet of the throne; but Timur, who had resolv'd to put him to death, with all his accomplices, receiv'd him in a civil manner at sight, and gave him a vest woven with gold, belt, a sword with a gold handle, a horse well equip'd, with other curious things; and at last said to him, "We will assign your troops, with which it is impossible you should go, and rebuild that place; we will furnish you with the domesticks and friends, and

forts, that the place may be rebuilt. We thrive; and if there is need of any thing towards the perfecting of it, we will order it you; and then leaving you in the government of it, we will depart for India." Timur then sent him away, and order'd Moussa Recana, with three thousand brave men, to accompany him.

When Moussa was arriv'd at Irjab, he made dispatch in executing the orders he had receiv'd, and employ'd all his men and domesticks, about three hundred persons, in the rebuilding of this place.

The History of Timur-Bec.

CHAP. VII.

*The repairing of the Fortrefs of Irjeb, and the
the Gaggas robbers.*

TIMUR sent from the country of Dour-
rin to Samarcand the august prince's Ser-
rai Mule Camm, and the Mirza Oluc Bel, who
were at court; and then he decamp'd. In four
days he arriv'd at the town of Irjeb, which he
found badly repair'd: there he fix'd his imper-
ial tent, and the army encamp'd in order of bat-
tel, every one in his proper post. Timur or-
der'd that the rebuilding of the town should be
continu'd, and the Emir Chahmedik and Gela-
lism had a commission for rebuilding of
mosques and other public buildings, insomuch
that all was finish'd in fourteen days. Tim-
ur before command'd the Tavachis not
suffer any of the subjects of Moussa, employ'd
in repairing the town, to re-enter it when
going out: and this order was not
out came, for on the seventeenth of
in the morning, Timur having taken a
view the place, with its ditches and walls, ac-
company'd with many princes and generals,
who march'd on foot on each side him, he was
receiv'd by seven of Moussa's labourers, who
were in an upper story of an house stand-
hind a gate of the town; and being with him
shot at him, they let fly from a window with
design to kill him. But they did not
aim, and the rustling the arrow made only
his horse. However Timur went into the town
by another gate, and caus'd Moussa and his ac-

complices to be seiz'd: the seven assassins were in the house from whence the arrow was shot, took up their arms to defend themselves and wounded some of our men; but at last Khatib Beg broke open the house with some force and put his accomplices to death.

Timur de-
 liver'd to Malek Mahmud his enemy's head with two hundred of his soldiers; he had sent a messenger, call'd by three names, to revenge the death of his brother whom they had slain and made a tower of them. Then they pillag'd all his country and subjects, and put to death some leaders of these villains who were mix'd among our officers. The women and children as well as the goods and moveables of these traitors, were given to the poor oppress'd people of Irab, who, for being of Malek Mahmud's side, had suffer'd for several years, great violence and injustice. And on this occasion we see that the Prophet's Alcoran fulfill'd which threatn'd punishment to the traitors. Timur gave the principality of Irab to the noble Mahmud, and by this means deliver'd the vassals from being intell'd by these insolent robbers. Thus as he tender'd kingdoms flourish-
 ing by his goodness and equity, so he suppress'd disorders by his power and justice.

CHAPTER VIII

Timur marches to Chenouzan and Nagaz, and defeats the robbers of the nation of the

TIMUR, after having settled the affairs of the country of Iraj, which requir'd as great authority as his reputation in order, the eighteenth of Zilhadge, in the year 800, march'd towards Chenouzan. After having pass'd many forests and mountains, he encamp'd near that place; and the next day, and sent his son prince Gahi Sultan to Banai', by the road of Castelaghi', at the head of the baggage, accompanied by several Emirs.

Sept. 1-
1398.

Timur having march'd all night with great diligence, and with some thousands of horse, arriv'd at the fortress of Nagaz, where he arriv'd early on the twenty-first of Zilhadge.

It is to be remark'd, that the court had been before at Cabul, Emir Solyman Chah and other commanders of the troops of Candahar were come to Nagaz', according to Timur's order, to rebuild that place; and that they had work'd very hard there, so that it was completely fortify'd. Timur at his arrival there, was inform'd that the nation of the Pervians, a part of Ougamis, to whom he had sent orders to appear before his throne with their troops, to serve in the army, had revolted, and refus'd

' Towns of Cabulestan near the Indus.

' A town of Cabulestan, between the Indus and the river of Cabul.

to feed their men: for one day when Mirza-
 Schement, who had been to view some nei-
 bouring places in India, was return'd with
 troops and plunder, bringing with him to Cab-
 ferval captives: these inconsiderate men w^o
 to hold as to find the way passage, to name
 one of part of the troops, this the river of H^o
 and entrench themselves in the mountain
 and woods, from whence they constantly w^o
 to rob the high ways: Timur-Bec w^o
 to punish this, than giving leave to his
 he the same day march'd in search of these
 loose people, whose end must of course be
 found. He came up to 'em in three d^s
 and order'd all his soldiers to dismount,
 they might march into the woods and mountain
 with more ease; and to seize and exterminate
 these rebels. They attack'd 'em with the great-
 est vigor, and after a weak defence cut 'em
 pieces, made their children prisoners, and
 burnt their goods, having set fire to their
 habitations, and a
 Timur would stay long
 to deliver passengers from the
 robbers. At this place the deputys and
 lancers of the nation of Oubel came to c
 themselves at his feet, to beg pardon, and
 plore his protection. This monarch, w^o
 thought nothing more than the welfare of
 people, not only forgave their crimes, but
 receiv'd 'em into his protection, heap'd favors
 'em, and granted 'em many privileges, becau
 of their sincerity.

A nation among the Ouganis.

The history of Timur-Bec.

27

The Emir Solyman Chah having restor'd the town of Nagaz to its former splendor, taught that the Kelatians, a strong and numerous people, had refus'd to obey the orders of the emperor, and to go to the camp with their troops. This refus'd oblig'd him to fall on 'em, which he did with such bravery, that in two days and nights he defeated these gins, who before that time were esteem'd the most valiant in the world; he pillag'd their country, cut to pieces a great number of 'em, put the rest in chains, made their children slaves, and burnt their houses. After this he left the country of the Kelatians, and return'd in triumph to the city of Samarkand, where he was receiv'd with all the respect his actions deserv'd.

The first of Muharrem in the year 805, Timur leaving the country of the Pervians, went down to view the neighbourhood of the town of Nagaz: he sent the Emir Solyman Chah to Mookhan with great troops, to Mirza Pir Mehemmed; and leaving Chah Ali Ferahi with five hundred foot in garison at Nagaz, he departed for Banou, in which he left Pir Ali Seldar, and the Emir Hussein Gourchi, with a small garison.

Timur departed from Banou, and the first of Muharrem arriv'd at the river Indus, in the very place where Sultan Gelaladdin king of Larizme, when he fled from the wrath of Genghis Can, swam cross the river. Genghis Can came up'd here, but did not pass the Indus.

Timur had a bridge of boats and reeds made over this river, in which all the army were

Sept. 30
1398.

* A nation among the Tartars.

History of Timur-Bec.

stantly employ'd: and it was smit'd in to
 this place he dismiss'd the Ambassadors
 who came to pay their respects to him, and
 were the said Mohamed Medini, amba-
 sador from Mecca and Medina, and from all
 princes and Chieftains Arabia, who pray'd
 to conquer to honor him that day with a
 and take him under his protection. Timur
 dismiss'd the ambassador of Enderog, Ge-
 noral of Chachin, whom he had sent to
 his majesty to receive him upon his obe-
 sence: he order'd him to tell his master that
 receiv'd his offer with pleasure, and that he
 would not fail to come to him at
 town of Djabout, and there join the impe-
 rial camp.

A. C. H. A. P. IX.

Timur's progress to India.

In the twelfth of Muharrem in the year
 which answers to that of the Leopard
 Timur cross'd the Indus at the head of his army
 and encamp'd at the entrance of the great
 fort of Geron, which is call'd Tchou-Gou
 before the Sultan Gafseddin Carezen fled
 flying from the wrath of Genghis Khan, and
 the Indus at this place, and enter'd this deli
 to avoid being put to death by the sword.

* The Chieftains of Mecca and Medina offer'd to declare
 mur Calif, tho Bajazet was invest'd with that high dignity.

* A province, whose capital was Nagar,

* A town of India, S. of Lahore.

The history of Timur-Bec.

that conqueror. At Timur's arrival at this place, the Rayas, and the principal inhabitants of the mountain of Couhdgioud, came to make their submissions to him: they offer'd him presents, promis'd to remit to him considerable sums, and serve him on all occasions.

Some time before, Roustem Tagi Bougai Berkat had been sent with an army towards Meherat; and having stopt some days at Couhdgioud, these same Rayas did him several important services, furnish'd him with provisions, and even money to pay his soldiers. Timur was highly pleas'd with 'em upon these accounts, and resolv'd they shou'd enjoy the fruits of his clemency: he prohibited every one from insulting 'em, and order'd they shou'd be treated with humanity and affection. After which they return'd home joyful and contented, without either being molested or depriv'd of their usual place of residence. These are the effects and fruits of civility. The poet says, We ought always to be under the protection of our own actions.

C H A P. X.

Chehabeddin Mobarec Chah Timur commits hostilities against the emperor after his submission.

CHEHABEDDIN Mobarec, who was the prince of an isle of the river of Indus, had a great number of officers under him, and was very

* A mountain S. E. of Cachmir.

* A river near the Indus: it is the continuation of the river Depdana, which comes from Cachmir.

rich

The History of Timur-Bec.

rich in money and moveables. When the Mirza Mohammed Chehangir march'd to the Ho of Moultan, Chehabeddin came to him to his feet, and met with a handsome recep-
tion from him. He submitted to the emperor, after he had taken some time to make his
to the Mirza, he took his leave, and retir'd home; where he intended to be
taken with pride, and trusting in the strength of his life, which he believ'd invulnerable, he fortified it with a good ditch and wall.

Timur at his arrival at the river of Jamna, receiv'd advice of his revolt; and the fourteenth of
Octob. 13. he order'd the Emir Cherk Noureddin
to attack this Isle at the head of his Toman, as
soon as he made himself master of it, to
to the sword every one he shou'd find therein.
When the Emir came there, he and his soldi-
ers cast themselves into the water to cross over.
The Islemite prepar'd to obstruct their passage
and there was a furious battel fought as
ever heard of, which last'd till night. Che-
habeddin at the head of ten thousand men
by the windings of the river to attack the
my in the rear during night, and fought with
great courage and bravery. The Emir C'
Noureddin, a man of good conduct, receiv'd
the enemy with the greatest intrepidity; and
after several attacks entirely defeated 'em, and
driv'd 'em to leap into the water,
they were drown'd, and killing the rest. Ma-
four and Dourege Teshoura, officers of the e-
peror, perform'd many noble actions, and
receiv'd several wounds.

Timur came with diligence to this place, and
encamp'd near the isle. Chehabeddin, who till
that time had never us'd precaution in an af-
fair, was so prudent as to get ready two hun-
dred

The history of Timur-Bec.

301

dred flat-bottom'd boats, that he might escape Chahartan if he shou'd be conquer'd. Whereupon at his return from the night-attack, in which he was vanquish'd, he fled with his domestics in these boats. With a great deal of difficulty they escap'd, rowing along the river Jamad, and at length they came to Outcha, a town of India.

The Emir Cheik Noureddin had orders to pursue him along the banks of the river: he slew a great number of these Indians with arrows. When he return'd, the emperor rewarded those who had behav'd themselves gallantly on this occasion, and were wounded, giving 'em vests, and other things. Chehabeddin's boats arriving near the borders of Moultan, the troops of Mirza Pir Mehemed and Mirza Charoc, commanded by Solyman Chah, who had been sent out as scouts, hinder'd their passage, and sinking the boats on the river, cut 'em to pieces. Chehabeddin cast his wife and children into the river, and half-dress'd the bank. As many of the prince's subjects were retir'd into the woods, Timur order'd Chamelik to catch 'em, and if possible to exterminate all who were there for refuge. Chamelik accordingly enter'd the forests and bogs, and having slain a great number of these miserable people, and pillag'd their effects, return'd to the camp laden with booty, and a great number of captives.

After the success against Chehabeddin, the army march'd five or six days on the banks of the Jamad, and on the twenty-fourth of August arriv'd at a place call'd the Baye, a narrow channel, or bay, on the borders of the Gange, the fortrels over-against which the Jamad and the Gange join in one stream, where

¹ On the Jamad above Moultan, Aug. 1177.

² It falls into the Baye above Moultan,

The history of Timour Bee.

he never daring against one another, make it appear like the most perfect order. Timour ordered a bridge to be built over it, which was finished on the twenty-seventh of March, all the troops having been employ'd in it. We then found it difficult ever any one but a bridge over it before, and even Turmechin Can, who formerly cross'd it, was oblig'd to swim over.

CHAPTER XL

Timour's arrival at Toulouk.

Timour pass'd that day with his army, and encamp'd on the other side the next day having entirely left the bridge to give free passage to the baggage and the rest of the army. He went to encamp over against the town of Toulouk, on the bank of the river. His army, accompanied by his family, immediately came to him at Timour's tent. They first treated him with the greatest respect, and were then treated by him.

On the same day Timour pass'd the river, and the army, with the baggage, encamp'd on the other bank, till all the army was arriv'd over. The first of Sefer he encamp'd on the neighboring plain of Toulouk.

Timour's army, consisting of 100,000 men, he conquer'd the town of Toulouk. He then march'd on to the city of Samarkand, and the city of Samarkand was taken.

The

The ministers tax'd this town at two millions of crowns for the safety of their effects and lives. The Cheriffs, because of the nobleness of their race, and the doctors for their learning and virtue, were exempted from this tax. They had even presents made 'em of vests and other things, because Timur was naturally respectful to men of their character.

Some part of this tax was soon paid; but the inhabitants making a difficulty of paying the rest, the troops, who were in great want of provisions, had orders to carry away all the grain they could find. During the night the soldiers, under pretence of making a search, march'd towards the town, which they sack'd and pillag'd, burning all the houses, and even making the inhabitants slaves; the Cheriffs and doctors being the only persons exempt from this misfortune.

Timur had advice that a number of Rayas and their wives in the neighbourhood of Toulonah, who had before submitted to the Mirza Pir Mehemed, had now revolted; whereupon he sent the Emir Chamelik, and the Cheik Mehemed Aicoutmur, with their regiments, to raze the country of these Rayas, with orders to punish 'em severely, for an example to others. The Emirs immediately departed, and enter'd the forests whither the enemy was retir'd. They kill'd two thousand Indians, who became prey to the wild beasts and birds; and carrying away their children prisoners, they return'd to the town, laden with the spoils of the rebels.

The eighth of Sefer, Timur departed from Toulonah, and next day encamp'd on the borders of a deep lake, situate on the bank of the Bahr, within sight of the town of Charavaz.

* A river near Lahor, which falls into the Indus.

C H A P. XII.

Timur marches in search of Nasret Goulteri

TIMUR, having advice that Nasret, brother of the Cheik Goulteri, had surrounded a deep and large lake with a wall, behind which had retired with two thousand men, immediately took horse, and leaving the baggage, went encamp with his army on the borders of a lake. He rang'd his soldiers in order of battle, and gave the command of the right wing to the Emirs Cheik Noimuddin and Allahdad, two great men of that time. The left was given to the Emirs Chamelik and Meliched Aicoutmur. The main body was commanded by Ali Sultan Tavachi, with many and good soldiers. And being all in their places, he gave the signal of attack. At first the Cheik Nasret, with a thousand men, himself on the borders of the lake, and his main army, Spies and soldiers, went on with his baggage, and the warlike sloughs were very difficult passages to our men; yet they gave marks of their invincible rage. Ali Sultan was advanced in the first rank, and several others of our captains, by the Emirs Cheik Noimuddin and Allahdad entering into the bog, and all the enemy's pieces, and fixing their heads on their lances and spears at Timur's feet. It's uncertain what became of Nasret, whether he fled into the desert, or was slain. The soldiers set fire to the houses of these rebels, pillag'd their goods, and brought away a great number of cattle.

The history of Timur-Bec.

35

The tenth of Sefer the army pass'd this great Chap. 13.
 lake, and the low-lands, which were full of Nov. 7.
 fogs and marshes, notwithstanding the extreme
 difficulty of the ways; and went to encamp at
 Chanavaz, a great and populous town. Here
 they found several granarys full of corn, of
 which the soldiers took as much as they had
 occasion for.

Shortly after the Emirs had orders to depart.
 They cross'd the river of Bish, in pursuit of
 some soldiers of Nusret who had fled. They
 overtook them, and having cut them in pieces,
 brought away a great booty. Timur staid two
 days at Chanavaz, and set fire to the granarys
 which were left, in order to reduce the infidels
 to extremity: and on the 19th of Sefer he de- Nov. 10.
 camp'd, and went down to the banks of the
 river Bish, over against the town of Dgedagan,
 to which place the baggage and main body of
 the army was come. Here he made all his sibops
 pass the river. The same day Herimul, his
 faithful domestic of prince Chanac, came from
 Herat: he acquainted the emperor with this
 prince's good state of health, which very much
 pleas'd him, and excited him to read the Al-
 koran, and distribute alms in token of joy.

C H A P. XIII.

*Arrival of prince Pir Mehemed Ghalibay
 from Moultan.*

WE said in the chapter * which gives the * Cha
 reason of Timur's march into India,
 that the Mirza Pir Mehemed belieg'd the town
 of Moultan, where, after a siege of six months, Siege of

IV. the inhabitants were in such great want of victuals, that they were constrain'd to eat cleanly things, and even dead bodys: and rent the governor being at length oblig'd fly, the town was taken by our prince, immediately sent advice of it to the emperor. In the mean while there happen'd an inundation, which caus'd a mortality among our and oblig'd us to carry the sick horses into town, and there shut 'em up.

Upon this accident the Rayas of these try's revolted, tho' they had before submit. They declar'd war against us by acts of lity, massacring the governors who had been set over 'em. And as our men had no horse these insolent people advanc'd during night the gates of the town, which extremely disturb'd our Mirza: but at length the enemy, on vice of Timur's approach, flung away weapons, and fled.

The Mirza being deliver'd from this trouble, came out of Astracan the fourteenth of September, and march'd to the banks of the Biah; where he went to kiss the emperor's feet, who tenderly embrac'd him, and gave him a handsom reception.

Juneid Bourouldai, his brother Bayazid, Mehemed Dervich Taicani, who in the of Carezem had fled from the Emir Gehanel and with great difficulty were got into Ind

* Pechahal is the name the Indians give to the rains and inundations which happen in India at a certain time of the year; for then they say to travellers, Don't go now, is the season of Pechahal. This inundation is caus'd by the great rains and snows, which falling off the mountains, fill the flat countrys, fill the rivers, and overflow like the Nile in Egypt; and this constantly happens in the months of July, August, September and October.

having heard that the Mirza Pir Mehemed had Chap. 13.
made himself master of Moultan, came from
the very furthest parts of India to implore his
protection. The Mirza carry'd 'em to the em-
peror, and procur'd 'em the honor to salute him,
begging pardon for 'em. Timur granted their
lives, but not their libertys, before they had
been bastinado'd according to the laws of Gen-
ghiz Can. The fifteenth of Sefer, Timur cross'd Nov. 12.
the Biah, and went to encamp at Dgendgian,
forty miles distant from Moultan. In three
days the soldiers pass'd this river, some in barks,
and others by swimming, notwithstanding its
rapidity, without any damage.

Timur staid four days at Dgendgian; and
the eighteenth of Sefer, the prince Pir Mehe- Nov. 15.
med made a sumptuous banquet, and offer'd his
rich presents, which consisted of crowns of gold,
belts of gold, Arabian horses with gold saddles,
jewels of great price, stuffs, curious vessels,
basons and pots of gold and silver; of which
there was so great a number, that the secretarys
and comptrollers of the Divan employ'd two
days in registering 'em. Timur distributed these
presents among the Emirs, Vissiers and officers
of his court, according to their deserts: and
as the Mirza's soldiers had lost their horses in
this campaign, and some were oblig'd to ride
on oxen, and others to go on foot, he gave
thirty thousand horses among 'em. Then Ti-
mur departed for Schoual: on the twenty first Nov.
of Sefer he encamp'd at Afouan, where he
staid one day, and at length went to Gehaoul.

* Towns S. of the river Biah.

* A town between Lahor and Dipalpour, S. of the Biah.

The History of Timur-Beg

ok IV.

The inhabitants of Divalpaur had formerly submitted to the Mirza Fir Mehemed, who plac'd over em a governor nam'd Meftafer Cabuli, with a thousand men: but there being a mortality among the horses of the Mirza, which consequently diminish'd his troops, these men join'd with the Goulam guards of Sultan Firoz Chah, and slew Meftafer with the thousand men he commanded. On the report of Timur's approach, these rebels, thinking to escape the emperor's fury, retir'd with their effects into the fortress of Batnur. Timur, at his arrival at Gonsal, left the Emir Chahmelik and Dolet Timur Tavachi, with the baggage and main-body of the army, which he order'd em to conduct by the way of Divalpaur, and to join him at Samana, a town near Deli. Then he departed with ten thousand horse, and got to Adjondan Nov. 21. on the twenty fourth of Sefer: the inhabitants of which town having been drawn from their obedience to the nephew of the Cheik Noureddin, by the Cheiks Munaver and Sad, had shamefully abandon'd their country; for these Cheiks, after having seduc'd the inhabitants into their pay, and carry'd em to Batnur, except some few who fled to Deli with the Cheik Munaver.

The Cheiks and doctors, being inform'd of the respect Timur always shew'd to men of their character, were so far from being disturb'd at

* A town between Bahor and Deli.
 * Goulams are the eunuchs of the Indian kings, some of christian slaves and Mahometans. They are educated by the king's order in the noble exercises of arms and sciences. There are also such in Persia, who in their youth are call'd Goulams, and when grown up and instructed in the sciences, call themselves.

these

that, as soon as they had advice of his arrival in their quarters, they came immediately to the foot of the throne, and met him with a kind reception there. Timur gave the government of their town to Moulana Nafreddin Amer, and to Chahab Mehemmed son of Coja Mahmud, with orders to hinder the troops in their passage from molesting the inhabitants of that place. Thus Timur treated those civilly who rely'd on his protection, and extirpated those who refus'd to submit, pillaging their goods, and carrying away prisoners their women and children.

CH A P. XIV.

The taking the town of Bend, and the fortress of Batmir, the inhabitants of which places fell to the sword.

THE citadel of Batmir was the strongest and most noted place in India; situate in a desert, and out of the common road. The inhabitants have no water, except from a small lake near the gate of the town, which is never fill'd but in inundations: and as no foreign army ever came into these parts before, the inhabitants of Dipalpour, Adjoudag, and other towns, fled for refuge into Batmir, as a place of safety from the soldiers. So many had retir'd hither, that the place not being large enough to contain all their cattle and effects, they had left without a great number of cattle, and several chariots fill'd with moveable goods.

Book IV. The twenty fifth of Sefer, in the morning Timur enter'd Adjoudan; he visited the palace of the Cheik Ferid Cheker Cond whose protection he implor'd near God's throne. Then he departed for the conquest of Batnir, cross'd the river Dons, and encamp'd on the bank of Galesenteli, ten miles distant from Adjoudan and fifty from Batnir; three miles, which is call'd Gourouh, making one Farsanga, or a Persian league. Timur read the noon-prayers at Galesenteli; and then he march'd all night by moonlight, and cross'd the great desert in one day.

Nov. 23. The twenty sixth of Sefer, at ten in the morning, he came before Batnir, and immediately caus'd the drums to be beat, and a great cry Souroun to be made: and the soldiers pillag'd whatever they could find without place. Raoudouldgin the governor prepar'd to make resistance. He had a great many soldiers and domestics, and reign'd as a sovereign in that country. He forc'd the merchants and caravans to pay custom to him, no one being exempt from his insults. The strength of the city, the many officers, and the abundance of arms he had, made him so insolent, that he refus'd to obey Timur; for which reason the army march'd directly against the place. The right wing was commanded by the Emir Solyman Chah, the Cheik Noureddin, and Ishidaz; and the left had for its leaders, a Mirza Calil Sultan, and the Cheik Mahomed Aicoutour.

At the first attack our generals made themselves masters of the out-parts: and forth where they slew a great number of Indians and got a vast quantity of booty; they also took the counterescarp: and at the same time the Emirs, colonels and captains invested the town.

The history of Timur-Bec.

41

Chapter 22

and arming themselves with their bucklers, gave a second assault. Raoudouldgin posted himself at the gate of the town with the bravest of his Indians; but the Emirs Solyman Chah, Seid Coja and Gehan Mulc, who belong'd to prince Charac's court, march'd to attack that gate. Seid Coja and Gehan Mulc fell briskly upon the enemy near the person of the Indian prince, and perform'd several heroic actions. When all the soldiers began to advance at the sound of kettledrums, drums and trumpets, and the terrible Kerrenai. They gave many assaults; and as they were on the point of gaining the place, Raoudouldgin, despairing of being able to make any longer resistance, demanded quarter, and had recourse to the emperor's clemency. He sent a Cheriff to Timur, to desire a suspension of arms for one day, on condition that he came the next to cast himself at his feet. Timur granted his petition for the messenger's sake, who was of the race of Mahomet; he order'd his soldiers to retire from the gate of the town, and even from the suburbs, and to incamp in the open plain. Next day Raoudouldgin not keeping his word, orders were given that every Emir shou'd sap that part of the walls which was over-against his respective post, that they might the more easily take the town by assault. Every one obey'd, and all the fire, stones and arrows the besieg'd cast upon our men, cou'd not divert 'em. Raoudouldgin and all his court being astonish'd at their intrepidity, got upon the tops of their towers, and made signals that they implor'd the conqueror's clemency, acknowledg'd their fault, and wou'd for the future obey the emperor, only begging he wou'd save their lives. Timur, following the precepts of the Alcoran, which

The History of Timur-Bar.

which tells us that pardon is the title of victory hearken'd to their prayer: whereupon in the evening Raoudouldin sent his son Naib, with presents of animals and arabian horses, to foot of the throne. Timur, after a handsome reception, gave him a vest of gold-brocade, belt and sword; and then sent him back to his father. This prince took courage, and more at Timur's civilitys, came out of the place the

Nov. 27. twenty-eighth of Sefer at nine in the morning accompany'd by the Cheik Sadeddin Adjoudan. he kiss'd the threshold of the door, and at length approach'd the imperial carpet; he made several presents of animals and three sets of arabian horses, nine in a set, with saddles of gold to each. Timur recompens'd him with vests of gold, belts of gold, and a crown. As because the people who were in this place, were very numerous, especially those of Dipalpour and Adjoudan; the Emirs Solyman Chah and Akhadad had orders to guard the gate of the forests. And on the thirtieth of Sefer, Timur order'd the people who were to come before him. They were put into three ranks, and some faithful persons, and some thousand of Arabian horses were taken from them, which Timur gave to the Emirs and bravest warriors of the army. Five hundred of the inhabitants of Dipalpour were put to the sword, and all wives and children made slaves, for having treacherously slain Messafer Cabuli, and other famous horsemen belonging to the Master of Mehemmed. And as for the people of Adjoudan who had abandon'd Timur, part of them were slain, and the rest made prisoners, after having their effects pillag'd.

Nov. 26.

Kemaladdin, brother of Raoudouldgin, having seen the punishment of those who had deserv'd it, was seiz'd with a panic fear: and next day, Raoudouldgin was in the imperial camp. He caus'd the gate of the town to be shut. This so irritated Timur, that he caus'd Raoudouldgin to be put in chains, and order'd the siege to begin again, and the place to be fill'd with the blood of the inhabitants. The soldiers having set themselves to sap the walls, the besieg'd soon found they shou'd not be able to defend themselves against so warlike a people, and an ever-victorious prince: they were perswaded that if the place shou'd be taken by assault, they must not expect their lives, for repentance wou'd then signify nothing: wherenpon they resolv'd to beg pardon of the emperor. Accordingly Raoudouldgin's brother and son went out, to beseech Timur to grant a general pardon, and deliver'd the keys of the town and call'd into the hands of our officers.

The first of Rabiulevel, the Emirs Cheik, Noureddin and Allahdad enter'd the place to receive the tribute for saving the people's lives: but the Rayas and other chiefs wou'd not accept the tax: and as there were among the rest Guobres and idolaters, disputes arose, which cou'd not be terminated without commotions and blood. Timur was incens'd at this provocation, and order'd that this rabble shou'd be put to the sword, and the houses of the infidels raz'd to the ground. The soldiers scal'd the walls, and enter'd the place sword in hand. The Guobres set fire to their own houses, saving their wives, children and goods into the street, and those who call'd themselves Mussulmans cut their wives and childrens throats. And the men of these two forts uniting together, put

put themselves in a posture of defence, being resolv'd to die sword in hand. They fought in a cruel obstinate manner: and as these were exceeding strong and courageous, tho' norant, they may be compar'd to an army of satyrs, who fight only in despair.

Our men having enter'd the place, and cry'd out Allahou Ecber', fell upon these enrag'd people, who slew several Mussulmans, and wounded others. The Emir Cheik Nouredin who to partake of the honor of this expedition had resolv'd to dare the greatest dangers, advanced into the midst of the enemy, and struck with his sword one of the bravest of 'em, who he disabled from fighting. But the Emir immediately surrounded by a troop of Guebi and was near being seiz'd by 'em, had not Ouzon Mezid of Bagdad, and Firouz of Sistan made their way thro' these infidels, and deliver'd him from danger. Victory at length declaring for our men, they slew ten thousand Indians, set fire to the houses which remain'd, and even ruin'd the walls of the town, so that it look'd like an uninhabitable place. The emperor distributed among the soldiers all the gold, silver, and habits that were in the place. He rewarded the wounded; and gave great gifts to Ouzon Mezid and Firouz, who had acted with much resolution in delivering the Emir Nouredin, and rais'd 'em to dignities according to their merit.

* God is great. The Mahometans begin all their prayers with these words, which they often repeat, with their faces towards the ground.

The history of Timur-Bec.

Chapter
1

CHAP. XV.

Timur departs from Batnir, for Serefti, Fatabad and Ahrouni.

AFTER the ruin of Batnir, the multitude of dead carcasses which infected the air, oblig'd Timur to depart thence the third of Rabiulevel. When he had march'd about fourteen or fifteen miles, he came to Kenaroi ^{Nov.} ~~the~~ where he encamp'd. Next day he went to the castle of Pironze; and march'd as far as the town of Serefti, the inhabitants of which being infidels, eat swines-flesh. They fled on advice of Timur's arrival, who sent out a detachment of horse in pursuit of 'em. Their cavalry took a great number, whom they put to the sword, and brought their horses and goods back to the camp; Adel Ferach being the only person on our side who was slain. Timur staid one day at Serefti, and the next march'd eighteen miles, as far as Fatabad, where he encamp'd. The inhabitants of this town were also fled. Some of our men pursu'd 'em, destroy'd several, and return'd loaden with booty, as silver, furniture and cattel. On the seventh of Rabiulevel, Timur pass'd by ^{Dec. 4} the town of Radgebuour, and went to encamp near that of Ahrouni, which was inhabited by a brutish people, unfit for making compliments to the emperor, or demanding his protection: wherefore part of 'em were destroy'd like beasts, and the rest made slaves by the soldiers, who carry'd away their corn, and set fire to their houses.

The

The history of Timur-Bec.

The eighth of Rabiullev, the army departed from Ahrouni, to encamp in the plains of village of Toubene, a country inhabited Geres, who had by force of arms made the selves masters of it a long time, and committed disorders there. They rob'd on the high-way insulted and pillag'd the caravans, and in having the least marks of religion, murder all who oppos'd their violence. On the r_ of the arrival of our troops, these wretches themselves in the midst of a wood, where most all the trees were full of prickles.

The emperor sent against em a regiment commanded by Loukel Hindou, Gancara, Moulana Nafareddin Amor. These two made to find a leach, after these robbers, they put to the sword near two thousand, and themselves masters of their cattle, return'd to the imperial camp, dragging several of these wretches loaded with chains.

CHAP. XVI.

Timur marches against a nation of rebels.

TIMUR's intention in these wars was chiefly to exterminate robbers, tyrants and infidels, to put a stop to their disorders and give peace and tranquillity to the people. He departed from Toubene the ninth of Rabiullev, and having sent the baggage under conduct of Solyman Chah towards Samarcand, march'd beyond the castle of Mouno, where he encamp'd. Then he enter'd the desert and woods, whither the Geres were retir'd.

The history of Timur-Bec.

he assassinated two thousand of 'em, making their wives and children slaves, and pillaging their goods and cartel. Thus he delivered the country from the fear of their insults.

Several Cheriffs, who made their ordinary residence in a town in these quarters, came to call themselves at Timur's feet, and kiss'd his hands. Timur receiv'd 'em with demonstrations of esteem and affection, gave 'em vests and considerable presents; and fix'd a governor over 'em, to defend 'em from the insults of our soldiers.

The tenth of Rabiulevel, the Emir Solyman Dec. 7. Chah departed with all the train of artillery which was before Mounee; and march'd towards the town of Samane, where he staid one night. The eleventh of Rabiulevel he arriv'd Dec. 8. at the river of Kenker, at which place Timur join'd him, after he had been against the Getes. Here he staid two days, to wait the remainder of the baggage. He departed hence the fifteenth of Rabiulevel, and went to encamp near the bridge of Foulcoubé, where he was join'd by the Emirs and soldiers of the left wing, commanded by the Sultan Mahmoud Can, and several others, whom Timur had sent from the meadow of Cabul by a particular road. In the night where they had taken towns, ravag'd the country, and brought into subjection several people.

The thirteenth of Rabiulevel, the Emperor, Dec. 10. the head of his army, cross'd the bridge of Foulcoubé, and encamp'd on the other bank. The baggage and remainder of the army from Dipsaour, under the conduct of the great general Chamelik, also arriv'd the same day at the imperial camp.

IV. The twentieth of Rabiulevel, the army parted from Poulcoule. They went but five miles that day, and encamp'd near the Foulberan. The twenty first they arriv'd the town of Kuteif, seventeen miles from mane.

CH A P. XVII.

A review of the whole army marching in order of battel.

WHEN the several bodys of the which had taken different roads, join'd the imperial camp, orders were g that every Emir shoud repair to his respect post. The right wing was commanded by Mirzas Pir Mehemed and Roustem; the left the great Sultan Mahoud, Can of Zagatai, the princes of the blood, and several Em and the main body was composed of many mans and regiments, which march'd and two miles by the road of Deli.

The twenty-second of Rabiulevel, they a at the town of Allendi, seventeen miles from teil. The inhabitants of Samage, Kuteif, Allendi, who were mostly idolaters, their own houses, and fled to Deli; so the men cou'd meet with no one in their cor

the 20.

The twenty-third, after a march of six they encamp'd at Togloppour, the inha of which town were of a particular fe They believ'd that the whole universe w- vern'd by two beings, the first of which call Yezdan, that is, God; and the other rimen, that is, the devil. The former

exp

The history of Timur-Bec.

49

explain the light, and the other by darkness: Chingiz
 has said that all good proceeds from God,
 and all evil from the devil. Chingiz and all
 these idolaters, called Souldans, having all
 fled, our soldiers set fire to the town. The
 twenty-fourth of Rabilevel the army arriv'd at
 Raoipar, which is twelve miles from Toploppour.
 All the inhabitants had fled like the rest. There
 was found in this place a granary of wheat, in
 which were more than ten thousand Mans of
 full weight, worth about a hundred and fifty
 thousand Mans of common weight, which was
 distributed among the soldiers. The twenty-fifth
 they march'd about six miles, and encamp'd
 on the bank of the river of Panjar. The twenty-sixth
 all the Emirs girded on their cuirasses, that they
 might be ready upon occasion, and then continu'd
 their march, and arriv'd

Dec. 23

Dec. 24

Dec. 25

The twenty-seventh of Rabilevel, the Emirs of the
 right wing had orders to march as far as the
 mountain called by the Sultan Biretz Dagh, the top
 of a mountain, two leagues from Heli: at the foot
 of which runs the great river Jaoun. According
 to this order, they march'd from Goughistan as far as Goughistan-
 mai, putting to the sword all the officers they met,
 and making slaves of the inhabitants of that
 country, whom they pillag'd. On the twenty-ninth
 the army departed from the town of Heli, cross'd
 the Jaoun, and march'd to the right of the town
 of Loupi, where was abundance of pasture, here
 they encamp'd the same day. This place is
 situated between the two rivers of Jaoun and Heli.
 There is a great branch which the Sultan Biretz

A Man is a pound, or thereabouts.

VOL. II.

D

had

had cut off from the river, of Calini, who joins the Jaoun near the town of Firouzab. The Emirs Gehan Chah, Chamelik, and Allad, were already come to the foot of this cascade, the governors of which, nam'd Maimo and Maichoum, far from coming to meet with submission, resolv'd to defend themselves. At Timur's arrival there, an experienced man came out to cast himself with respect at the emperor's feet, and demand his protection; but the inhabitants, who were Guebres, and the servants of Mellou, persisted in their resolution of resistance.

Then Timur order'd his men to besiege the town, and sap the walls. Accordingly it began to do it at noon, and by evening made themselves masters of the place, where the ebres had burnt their houses, with their women and children. Timur repos'd himself this night without the place, and the thirtieth of Dec. 27. he order'd that the inhabitants who were Guebres, should be separated from the ebes and servants of Mellou, which being done, the latter were put to the sword; the houses were pillag'd excepting those of Cherris, for whom Timur always preserv'd filial affection, because of their extraction; then the rest of the town was set on fire.

Dec. 28. The first of Rabiulakher, Timur depart from the town of Loum, and went to the foot of the Jaoun, before the palace of Gehan, so that observing himself the passages in places, he might the better know how to execute his orders. He return'd to the camp in the evening, and assembled his imperial council consisting of the princes his children, the great Emirs, and generals of his army. He propos'd to 'em the method of forming the siege, in the

The History of Timur-Bec.

Chapter

capital of India, which was not far off: and he resolv'd, that a great quantity of corn and ammunition should be got together forthwith, and kept in Gehannumai; and that this great city should be stock'd up.

Accordingly the Emirs Solyman Chah, Georgian Chah, and others, were order'd to pillage the villages in the neighbourhood of Delhi: upon they set out in the beginning of the month of Rabiulakher. Next day Timur was for taking the diversion of walking in the palace of Gehannumai: he took horse with seven hundred cavaliers with their cuirasses on, pass'd the river Jamun, and enter'd into this magnificent palace, to which the Sultan Firouz Chah had given the name of Gehannumai, that is, the mirror of the universe, because of its fine prospect; tho one wou'd think this name was rather given it to prognosticate that it shou'd fall into the hands of the monarch of the universe.

When Timur had consider'd the beauty of this place, he took care to observe from this rising-ground the properest place for the field of battle, that he might draw the enemy thither in case they appear'd. In the mean time the Sultan Tavasir and Juncid Bourouldai, who had been sent out as scouts, return'd: the first bringing with him Khatenai Saif, whom he had seiz'd, and Juncid bringing another Mahomet Saif was question'd concerning what had been transacted in the city, and then sent to death. When Timur had pass'd the river, to observe the field of battle, four thousand horse, five thousand foot, and twenty-seven elephants, belonging to Malou Chah, were seen near Gehannumai. Our scouts, command'd by Scid Coz and Melascher, to the number

of

The history of Timur Beg

of three hundred, attacked their vanguard, pretending to fly, led 'em as far as the bank the river, where a furious battle ensu'd.

On advice of this, Timur sent Saingic hader and Allahdad to incour Seid Coja: cross'd the river, with their regiments, having join'd him, let fly a shower of arrows the enemy; but as they were about to fall 'em with their drawn swords, the Indians, accustom'd to such brave actions, gave ground at the first onset, and fled towards the which with difficulty they enter'd. Seid pursu'd 'em, and slew a great number. A flight an elephant fell and was wounded. It was a prognostic of our further victory.

C H A P. XVII.

Timur marches to the east side of the of Lanna. He kills a hundred and Indian slaves who were in his

Dec. 30.

= Chah
Zades.

TH E third of Rabiulakhir, Timur parted from Gohannimar, and encamp'd on the east side of Lanna, where emperor's sons *, the great Emir, the of the regiments, who were gone out to invade, came to the imperial camp. He assembled, Timur, who would not give to the greatest generals of the army, so most undaunted warriors, as well in policy wisdom of government, as in war, held not improper to harangue the leaders, uniting in that the example of the antique emperors and the most illustrious conquerors.

The History of Timur-Bek.

Chap. 18.

Timur
harangues
the army.

did not want the eloquence that cou'd be expected on such an occasion. He spoke to 'em of the danger of brooking their ranks, of overturning the standard, and how they shou'd repulse the enemy, who had told 'em how to make retreats when overpow'r'd, and how rally the foldings to the attack; how to sustain a desperate fight, and how to free one's self from any eminent danger. In short, he expounded, concern, with so much energy and perspicuity, all the maxims of war, that his captains admir'd the extraordinary wisdom and experience which appear'd in his speech, saying that the discourses of great princes are the most beneficial; inasmuch that being excited by the lively reasons and learned maxims which he had articulated, they were fill'd with zeal and ardor, and prepar'd to confront the greatest dangers in his service. They assur'd every thing he propos'd by generous vows for his glory, and the continuation of his victory; they kiss'd the ground on which he stood, to testify their respect and joy at being the officers of so great a commander.

The same day the Khan Ghan Chah and the other generals remonstrated to Timur, that since his crossing the Indus, they had made above a hundred thousand Indian slaves, who were mostly Guebres and idolaters; that they were now in the camp, and wou'd probably in any desperate battle, take part with the men of Delhi, and falling upon our soldiers, make us lose the battle. This remonstrance was back'd by those who had observ'd, that when the officers of Mahmud Can came out of Delhi with their elephants to attack us, the slaves fear'd highly pleas'd. Timur having made a serious reflection on all the circumstances of this affair,

prison an order, that should who had any Indian slaves should put them to death, and he wd defend or refuse doing so, should be put to death himself, and his wives, children and facts be given to him who should inform against him.

As soon as this order was made public, it began to put it in execution, and within an hour were put to death a hundred thousand Indians, according to the smallest computation among others, Monsiara Stafreddi a Moor, one of the most venerable doctors of the court who could never consent to such as to kill single sheep, was constrain'd to order all slaves whom he had in his house to be kill'd. Timor afterwards order'd that one soldier of every ten should keep watch over the Indian women and children, as also over the canoes they had taken in the pillage of the coast. After these precautions, Timor resolv'd to march to the siege of Delic. he set out on the third of Rabiultherar, and encamp'd at the bank of the river. The astrologers and soothsayers secretly dispos'd themselves in disposition of the heavens, and of the good or unfortunate aspects of the planets. His departure, but Timor, told 'em that neither star affliction, adversity nor prosperity, turn'd on the stars, but on the will of the Creator, the thump of drum, and the trumpet, and he said "say the emperor, in the assistance of the mighty, who has never been deceiv'd." "What avail the triplicity or conjunction of the planets? All when they who command the execution of my projects, when I have taken sufficient measures and precautions to bring 'em to perfection." Next morning he made the public prayer, and order'd an

Timur-Bee.

Chap. 19.

came to be brought him, from whence he might
know of the event of his expedition. Here
he found a very favorable answer, which point-
ed out the destruction of a people by a wonder-
ful effect of the Almighty's providence. He ex-
plain'd the vision in his own favor, and having
shown it to the army, became assur'd of the
victory. Our warriors being thus animated by
the Alcoran, which promis'd em the divine
protection, Timur despis'd the stars, and on
the fifth of Rabiulakhir 801, cross'd the river
of Jaoun, and encamp'd on its banks on the
other side. The soldiers thro' precaution made
a ditch to surround em, near a hill nam'd Pouch-
ter-Bonah; here they fix'd palisades of branches
of trees; and for a rampart bound several great
buffaloes neck and heels, behind which they
plac'd their bucklers and ensigns.

CHAP. XIX.

Timur gives battle to Sultan Mahmud.

Part of India.

TUESDAY morning the seventh of
Rabiulakhir, Timur drew up his army in
order of battle. He gave the command of the
right wing to prince Pir Mehemed Ghanghur,
accompanied by several Emirs. The left wing
was led by the Mirzas, Sultan Hussain, and Ca-
lil Sultan, also assisted by many great generals.
The rear was given to the Mirza Koultan,
in conjunction with several illustrious Emirs,
and the main body was commanded by Timur
himself; it being so that this prince, who was

the very life of the soldiers should be fix'd in the heart of the army. Every thing being thus settled, they march'd in good order.

The enemy also advanc'd in order of battel. Their right wing was brought up by Laci Can, Mir Ali, Gaja, and other Indian princes. The left had for its leaders Malak Mounedim, and others: and the middle body was commanded by the Sultan, Mahomed, the grandson of Firuz Chah, emperor of India. His army consisted of ten thousand horse well arm'd, and forty thousand foot arm'd as adversaries; besides several elephants of war, arm'd with cuirasses, having between their long teeth great pointed daggers, and on their backs wooden towers in form of battions; on which were mounted a great many cross-bow men and archers, who could fight under covert as in fortresses: and on the side of the elephants march'd the fingers of fire and melted pitch, as also rockets arm'd at the ends with iron, which give several blows one after another wherever they fall.

Our soldiers were not much daunted at this Indian army: but as they had never seen any elephants before, they ignorantly imagined that the arrow and sabre had no effect on the sides of these animals; that they were so very strong, that they could break through any thing that they pass'd along, that they could shove down the strongest battlements; and that in battel they would toss both horse and footman to a vast height in the air. This deserv'd several of our side; so that when the posts were fix'd for the officers and lords of the court, Timur, who always shew'd respect to men of learning, civilly demanded of 'em what they

The history of Timur Bee.

then would chuse. Several of these doctors, Chap. 10.
who were always near Timur's person, being
ask'd at what they had read and heard of
the elephants, answer'd immediately, "If it
please your majesty, we chuse to be near the
lady's."

Timur, sensible of his soldiers fear, took
all possible precautions to arm 'em with con-
fidence. He order'd that a rampart of bucklers
should be made before the ranks, and a ditch
dug before the rampart: then he caus'd buffalos
to be tied by the neck and feet with long pieces
of leather, close to each other; after which on
each side of 'em and on their heads, were fix'd
brambles. Besides this were made iron-hooks,
three fork'd, and fix'd to stakes; so that when
the elephants should come to the attack, these
hooks should be planted in their way, and the
brambles on the buffalos lay so close to put the
elephants into disorder. The victory declar'd
for us before the full occasion to make use of
these machines.

Timur's
artifice to
overcome
the Indian
elephants.

As soon as the two armys were in view,
Timur got upon an eminence in the middle of
the field of battle, near the foot of the hill of
Pouchrai Beshi, whence he observ'd the motions
of both armys. When they were on the point
of coming to blows, he fell on the earth, and
after several times bowing, besought God to
bestow him the victory, which he must expect
from the divine goodness, and not from his own
valour, and the number of his soldiers.

While Timur was at prayers, a strange acci-
dent happen'd; which was, that the Emirs of
the rear, Cheik Noureddin, Chamelik and Al-
lahdad, imagin'd that if the emperor should
recruits from the main body to the right wing,
and even to the rear, this would be a certain
token

token of victory. Accordingly after prayer Timur order'd Ali Sultan Tavaiz, and Tahir Bonga, who commanded the regiment of Janissaries of the Toman of Roustem, which belong'd to the main-body, and also Altou Bacchi Feiz and Moussa Recmal, to go with their regiments to succour the right wing: and at the same time he sent another battalion of Janissaries to reinforce the rear. This so excited the passions of our warriors, that they rush'd imperiously upon the enemy, whom they attack'd with so much vigor, that the Indians were discomfited on every ground, and the great and strong elephants suffer'd themselves to be drove like oxen.

This advantage augmented the valor of the other battallions, who also fell upon the enemy, praising God. So hot a battle was never seen before; the fury of soldiers was never carried to so great excess; and so frightful a noise was never heard: for the cymbals, the common kettledrums, the drums and trumpets, with the great brass kettledrums which were beat on the elephants backs, the bells which the Indians sounded, and the cries of the soldiers, were enough to make even the earth to shake; and there was not a man, how dauntless soever, who was not somewhat dismay'd at the beginning of the fight. But our vanguard, compos'd of the regiments of many illustrious Janissaries, perceiving the enemy's vanguard advancing, retir'd behind the right wing to lie in ambuscade, till they had pass'd by, then they came out of the ambuscade, and fell on the enemy sword in hand like roaring lions, and in a moment between five and six hundred men. The great Fir Mehemed, who was at the head of the guard of the right wing, assist'd by the Emir Solyman Chah, attack'd the left of the enemy, which

The history of Timur-Bec.

Chap. 13.

which shined in the valor of Taji Cao: this he did with so much conduct, that he drove 'em before the baton of Alivert. Then Pir Mahmud fell upon the elephants; and these furious animals, finding themselves closely press'd, enter'd among the ranks of the enemy's left wing, and caus'd a further disorder. Our left wing, command'd by the Mirza Sultan Husein, perform'd several great actions, thro' the valor of that prince, of Gehan Chah Behader, Cayasddia Tercan, and others; for they made the enemy's right wing, command'd by Moineddin and Mutek Ham, give ground; and those who stood at the edge of the sword, were ropp'd as far as the gate of the city. While the enemy's wings were thus gaul'd, their main body, sustain'd by the elephants in good order, came to the attack: they had a warm reception from the brave Russians who command'd the army, and was fought over against 'em. A bloody battle ensu'd, in which the Emir Cheik Noureddin gave marks of extraordinary valor. The Emir Chamelik also perform'd the most heroic actions, rushing furiously into the midst of the elephants, with Dolet Timur Tavach, and Menghell Coje. With their lances they overthrew those who were mounted on the elephants; and with their sabres and bows cut off the trunks of these terrible animals, whom they wounded in all parts of their bodys; so that in a short time the field of battel was cover'd with the elephants trunks, and the blood and bones of the slain.

The most valiant Indians always endeavor'd to defend themselves; but this defence seem'd rather like the struggling of sheep going to the slaughter, than a vigorous resistance. Thus these poor Indians were constrain'd to turn their

their backs with their elephants, so which this passage of the Alcoran may be well apply'd: "Do you not see how the Lord thy God has dealt with the men of the elephant?"¹ The Sultan Mahmud, and his third general Mellon Can, fled into the city, the gate of which they shut.

The Mirza Caili Saimee who commanded our left wing, brought to the front one of his elephants bound with cords, and having with much maul'd it with the sword, he cut through its guards, and made it walk, before him as the husbandman does the plow, the Sultan, Timur and all the court were up and like a child of but fifteen years old, stood dare to attack, and be able to conquer and had a war elephant, which had struck terror into the enemy's army.

When the flight of the enemy had been of victory, Timur spur'd his horse towards the gate, and carefully examin'd the walls and fortifications, and as it was the time of noon prayer, he was at the bank of the Hayirgas, which is a narrow river, an arrow's shot in diameter, but in the season of Firouz Chah, and as in any inundation it is fill'd with rain-water, it furnishes the inhabitants of Delhi with water for an entire year. On its bank is the tomb of Sultan Firouz Chah.

Timur being encamp'd here, the princes and generals came before him to kiss the earth, they congratulated him on his victory, and gave applauses to the princes of the blood, the lords, and other brave men, who had signaliz'd themselves in the battel.

* The Arabians before the Hegira had an epocha call'd the Elephant.

The History of Timur-Bec.

Chap. 20

Timur upon hearing these strange adventures, burst out into tears of joy: he bless'd God for having given him such brave children, and such faithful and valiant subjects. Was it not surprising, that this great prince, who on some occasions could exercise extraordinary severity, had at this time so tender a heart, that he could not restrain his tears, while he return'd thanks to God for his favors? Timur had in the person of Calil Sultan a son worthy of himself, who in magnificence, valor and generosity, surpass'd Menoutcher, Feridon and Kei Cosru*: he was as virtuous as Alexander, and as rich as Darus. He was at first nam'd the friend of God, Calil Allah; and the glory he afterwards acquir'd, was the reason of his being call'd Sultan.

* Cosroes.

CHAP. XX.

Flight of Sultan Mahmoud, and his general Mellou Can, prince of Bloolian, Refuge of Dela, capital of India.

THE Sultan Mahmoud and Mellou Can, being vanquish'd, re-enter'd their country, thinking they had ever undertaken to go out: but repentance now being useless, they could have recourse only to flight. They departed at midnight while it was very dark: the Sultan went out by the gate of Havaderah, and Mellou by that of Barake, both which are sit-

* Son of Feridon, King of Persia.

into the south of Gehampenah : and they retir'd into the deserts.

Timur being inform'd of this flight, sent several Emirs in pursuit of 'em; they seiz'd on some of their officers who fled with 'em, and return'd with a great quantity of booty, taking prisoners the prince Suf Can, surnam'd Malek Cherefeddin, and the prince Canadad, son of Mellon Can.

The same night the Emir and other colonels of our regiments, had orders to make themselves masters of the gates, as the princes went out; as also to guard the other gates of the city, that no one might escape.

Jan. 4

The eighth of Rabiulakher, Timur erected his standard on the walls of Deli, and went in person to the gate of the capital, where he sat on the Aidgiah, or throne whereon the Indian emperors sit in their royal robes on the great feast-day. This gate is in the quarter of Gehampenah, over against the bason of Havizcas. In this place a tent and tribunal were prepar'd for him, where he gave audience. Then the Cheriks, Cadis, and principal persons of the city of Deli, came to cast themselves at the foot of the throne, and had the honor to lay the imperial carpet. Fadlallah Bacchi, lieutenant of Mellon Can, at the head of the whole Khan of Deli, was the first who came to make his submission; and the Cheriks, the men of learning, and the old men, address'd themselves to the princes the emperor's sons, and to the great Emirs, to obtain quarter for the Mirza Pir-Mehamed, and the Emirs Solyman Chah and Gehan Chah, at a proper time presented their petition.

According to custom they carry'd the high tail and kettledrums, which were fix'd upon the

The History of Timur-Bec.

the game, and the comforts of music were per-
formed on this occasion on the tune Rihavi, as
in victories. And to preserve the memory
of so considerable a conquest, an ingenious poet
made these verses, the letters of which form
the epocha of this memorable day:

*On the day the eighth of the month of Rabiulakhir Jan. 4.
1399, the ever-victorious emperor Timur made
himself master of Deli, the sun being in Ca-
pricorn.*

All the elephants and rhinoceros's were
brought to Timur. These animals, being be-
fore instructed, fell down before the emperor
in an humble posture, and at the same time
made a great cry as if they demanded quarters.
There were an hundred and twenty of these
elephants of war, which at the return from
India were sent to Samarcand, and to the pro-
vince of the emperor, where Timur's sons re-
sided. Five were carry'd chain'd to Tauris,
one to Chiraz, five to Herat, one to Chirvan
to the Cheik Ibrahim, and one to Arzendgan
to the lord Tahartan. The tenth of Rabiulakhir,
the doctor Mameddin Amor was order'd
to enter the city, with the other lords and
chiefs of the court, to preach in the great mosque,
and make the public prayers and lectures in the
name and titles of the invincible empe-
ror.

The letters of which form the epocha of this day, are the letters of which they
make up the word of conquest, and by which they signify
a victory, and the letters of which they signify a conquest.
The letters of which they signify a conquest, and the letters of which they signify a conquest.
denote the day, month and year wherein this action was
performed.

Timur, and not in the name of Firouz Shah, as was done before.

The Dehirs, Menehis and other secretaries, sent a relation of this expedition, in their letters of conquest, into all the parts of the empire, and even to the princes in alliance with Timur, tho' it were a year's journey to go round to 'em all; so that public rejoicings might be made for these great advantages, with which God distinguish'd the reign of Timur.

The Bitidcehis, or controllers of the Khan, also enter'd the city, where having estimat'd of the mony due for saving the people's lives, the receivers-general took care to receive it.

In the mean while the principal lords of the court, and the emperor's favorites remonstrated to his majesty, that after having suffer'd the fatigues and difficultys of this war, victory inclin'd 'em with thoughts of renewing their diversions and pleasures; that Feridon and the Keis had always done the same; and that it was in justice due to 'em after they had thus fatigued themselves. The emperor willingly consented, and gave orders for a feast, which was continu'd for several days. Timur began the rejoicings by presents to the princes of the blood, the Emirs and generals of the army, in consideration of their services and great actions: afterwards the musicians perform'd concert music in amorous and drinking tunes, which charm'd the hearts of all, that they forgot the rigors of war, and the fatigues of a campaign.

Jan. 12.

The sixteenth of Rabialakhet, a great number of our soldiers being assembled at the camp of Deli, insulted the inhabitants of the city. The great Emirs were order'd to put a stop to these disorders; but God, who had promis'd

Chap. 20

the ruin of this place for the chastisement of the inhabitants, permitted its destruction by several causes. Our soldiers coming into the place was one cause; and the despair of the Guebres, who remain'd in great numbers in the towns of Seiri, Gehanpenah and old Deli, was another. The curiosity of the Sultaneses to see the ruins of Deli, and particularly of the famous palace, adorn'd with a thousand columns, and built by the antient king of India, Melik Jouna, induc'd 'em to go into the city with all the court, which was very numerous: and the gate was left open to every one, so that above fifteen thousand of our soldiers got in unperceiv'd. Besides the Emirs and comptrollers of the Divan, who were set at the gate to receive the tribute for saving the inhabitants lives; other officers in commission had the same liberty to enter the city: but there remain'd a far greater number of troops in a large place between Deli, Seiri, and Gehanpenah. The disorders our men committed in the two last places caus'd a great bustle among the Guebres, who in despair fell upon our men; and several of 'em set fire to their houses, wherein their wives and children were burnt. Our men perceiving this desolation among the Guebres, pillag'd 'em, because of their evil designs. As other troops were set into the city to seize on the inhabitants of the neighbouring towns and villages who had fled for refuge thither, the confusion very much increas'd, and the troops within the place employ'd themselves intirely in plundering and burning the houses of the Guebres. The Emirs, to quell this disorder, caus'd the gates to be shut, that the troops without might not enter: but the soldiers who were in open'd the gates to their comrades; by

morning all the army enter'd, and the soldiers rose in arms against their leaders, who oppos'd their enterprize. So on the seventeenth of Rabiulakher 801, this great and proud city was destroy'd.

The next day pass'd in the same manner; and there were some soldiers who took a hundred and fifty slaves, men, women and children, whom they carry'd out of the city; and some soldiers boys had twenty slaves to their own share. The other spoils of precious stones, pearls, rubys, diamonds, stuffs, bells, and silver vessels, money, plate, and other valuables, were innumerable; for the Indian women and girls were adorn'd with precious stones, and had on their feet and hands, and even on their toes, bracelets and rings; of which our men had such great numbers, that they refus'd to carry away a vast quantity of precious ornaments of inestimable value.

The nineteenth of Rabiulakher they did the same in old Delhi, where the rest of the Guebres were retir'd. The Indians assembled together in the great mosque, and prepared to defend themselves; but the Emir ~~Emir~~ All Sultan Tavachi came thither with five hundred men, and having forcibly enter'd mosque, sent to the abyss of hell the souls of these infidels, of whose heads they erected towers, and gave their bodys for food to birds and beasts of prey. Never was such terrible slaughter and desolation heard of. In old Delhi was pillag'd the same day, they made some of the inhabitants slaves, whom they load ed with chains, tho they had promis'd on their lives. Several days were employ'd in making 'em quit the city; and as they went out, every Emir of a Toman or regiment took

took a number of 'em for his service: and as there were several thousands of tradesmen and artificers, some were distributed among the princes and Emirs who serv'd under Timur; and others were sent to the officers of the emperor's sons, and to the other Emirs in their respective governments. The emperor likewise order'd that all the masons should be kept for his particular service, as he design'd to build a spacious mosque in Samarcand of stone.

But it may not be amiss to give a description of the three towns which compose the city of Deli^s. That of Seiri is surrounded with a wall in form of a circle; old Deli is the same, but much larger; and from the walls of Seiri on the north-east, to the walls of old Deli, which is on the south-west, there are two other walls, one on each side; and the ground which lies between 'em is call'd Gehanpenah, and is larger than old Deli. Three gates of Seiri look towards Gehanpenah, and the four others have the prospect outwards. Gehanpenah has thirteen gates, six to the north-west, and seven to the south-east; so that when one speaks of Deli, we comprehend the three towns together, which have in all thirty gates.

¹ Description of Deli, as it was in the author's time. They tell Deli is a new city, built by a Sultan, called by Gelseddin Echer, and call'd *Delia* after him, from the name of that king, the father of Hamaoun Chah.

C H A P. XXI.

Timur departs from Deli; and pursues his conquests in the remoter parts of India near the Ganges.

TIMUR continu'd fifteen days at Deli the destruction of which place was caus'd by the ill conduct of the inhabitants: then having resolv'd to exterminate the idolaters India, as well as the robbers and rebels, he march'd towards the other most famous place of this empire. At his departure he order'd the Cherifs, Cadis, doctors and Cheiks of the city, to assemble in the great mosque of Ganpenah; where he fix'd a governor over 'em to protect 'em from the insults of the soldier whom victory had made insolent.

Jan 12.

1390.

* A prostration in prayer.

The twenty-second of February, at ten in the morning, the army encamp'd near Ganpenah, and march'd down to a place three miles from Deli. Here Timur staid a hour to view this delightful place; and, after having made two Rekaets * in the mosque adjoining to it, which is built of stone on the bank of the Jaoun, to return thanks to God for conquest, he departed out of this town.

About this time the lord Chamfeddin, one of the Cherifs of Termed, with Aladdin Naib lieutenant of the Cheik Coukeri, who had been sent ambassadors to the town of Couteles, return'd from their embassy: they brought advice that Behader Nehar prince of these quarters, had willingly submitted to the emperor

and hop'd next friday to have the honor to Chap. 21.
kiss the ground before his majesty; and offer
him his services. Timur being encamp'd on
the other side of Gehanuma near Vezir Abad,
the ambassadors presented him two white par-
rots, from Behader Nehar. These birds had
liv'd ever since the time of Toglug Chah, and
had been kept many years in the antichambers
of the emperors of India. Timur took this
curious present for a good augury; and conti-
nu'd his road six miles farther to a place call'd
Moudala, having before cross'd the Jaoun.

The twenty-fourth of Rabiulakher, he march'd Jan. 20.
six miles and encamp'd at Kere, where Beha-
der Nehar with his son Coultach had the ho-
nor to kiss the imperial carpet, to offer a great
many rich presents, and assure the emperor of
their obedience. The twenty-fifth the army Jan. 21.
march'd to Baghout, which for its beauty is
compar'd to the delicious garden of Durbhar,
and to the magnificent temple of the idols of
Ferrar. Which places are distant from each o-
ther six miles. The twenty-sixth they march'd Jan. 22.
also six miles, and encamp'd at Asar, situate
between two rivers, where Timur staid to re-
pose himself.

CHAP. XXII.

*Conquest of Myrthe. The Guebres are slain
alive.*

THE town of Myrthe being one of the
most noted places of the empire of In-
dia, Timur resolv'd to make himself master of

whereupon the twenty-sixth of Rabyulakhe he sent thither from Afar the lords Roustem, Tagi, Bouga, Chamelik, and Afahdad. The twenty-eighth these lords sent advice to the emperor, that Elias Ongani, and the son of Mou-lina Ahmed Tobaideri, with a Guebre nam'd Ben, had fortify'd the town, and were back'd by a company of Guebres; that they had refus'd to submit; and had not only declar'd that they resolv'd to defend themselves, but even sent to the Guebre insolent expressions, saying that the emperor Turmechirin had sent him to besiege the place, but was oblig'd to raise the siege; and that they hop'd the same would be our fate. This news disquieted Timur and their speaking contemptuously of Turmechirin Can, whom they tax'd with cowardice, highly incens'd him. On Tuesday at the hour of morning-prayer he took horse at the head ten thousand men; and in two days and one night, march'd twenty miles.

Jan. 25.

The twenty-fifth of Rabyulakhe at noon he arriv'd at the town, where he order'd the captains of the army to batter the walls. At night they visit the walls, and found they had already advanc'd ten or fifteen cubits breadth to each bastion and corner; which so surpriz'd the Guebres, that they desist'd from defending themselves.

Next day the Emir Afahdad, with his regiment nam'd the faithful, consisting of the ancient people of the Couitchins, attack'd the gate of the town. A young lad, one of his domestics, nam'd Serai, son of Calandar, boldly cast a net upon the battlement, and mounted the walls. He was follow'd by Roustem Berlas, and a great many brave men, who rush'd into the town sword in hand: they bound Elias Ongani, and

The history of Timur-Bec.

39

and the son of Tehaneseri, governors of the place, whom they carry'd to the foot of the imperial throne. The Guebre Sefi, one of the princes of this place, was kill'd in the assault, and his body cast into the fire which he ador'd.

The first of January they flea'd alive all the Guebres at this place, and made slaves of their wives and children: they set fire to every thing, and raz'd the walls, so that this town was soon reduc'd to ashes, tho Turmechirin Can, a great emperor in Asia, cou'd not make himself master of it.

It is remarkable, that before the army's marching to this place, Timur had relay'd to the inhabitants, to reduce 'em by good nature and promises: but the secretary being about to write these words, "Why do you compare us with Turmechirin Can?" a villainous rascal, who had order'd the secretary to write in such a manner, saying, "What need I to Turmechirin Can? He was a weak man, and not so good as me, of stricter virtue, and better conduct: but my design is to revenge the affront these villains have put upon so powerful and august a monarch." So without suffering the letter to be concluded, he march'd to exterminate 'em: This was Timur's modesty, which ought to serve as an example to others.

C H A P. XXIII.

*Several battels upon the great river of Ganges,
against the willies of the Guebres.*

Conc. the
Jan
of
Conc.

† Juenga

Jan. 27.

THE same day that Myrthe was taken, Timur order'd the Emir Gahan Chah to depart with the left wing by a different road, to ravage the country of the Guebres, for which purpose he embark'd with his troops on the Jaoun †. The emperor gave the command of the baggage to the Emir Cheik Noureddin, with orders to conduct it along the river of Carafou; and then departed in person towards the great river of Ganges, fourteen miles from Myrthe. The Emir Solyman Chah join'd him on the road; and having march'd six miles, they encamp'd at Mansoura, where Timur staid one night. The second of Jumazinlevel, he set out at three in the morning, and at sunrise arriv'd at Pirouznour, where they march'd three miles to the ordinary passage. Some time after they came to the ordinary passage, which was very difficult and dangerous: several horsemen swim over their on horseback, but not without great risque. Timur going to do the same, the Emirs on their knees besought him to the contrary, telling him that the Mirza Pir Mehemed and the Emir Solyman Chah, having cross'd the river near Pirouznour, were on the point of passing. In the mean while several brave men swim over, as the Tomans of the Mirza Charoc, Seid Coja son of Cheik Ali Behader, and Gahan Mulc son of Melket. Then Timur march'd

two miles further along the Ganges, and encamp'd. The third of Jumazintevcl, he went towards Toclocpour, a town on the bank of the Ganges, twenty miles from the place whence they set out. When they had march'd fifteen, advice was brought the emperor, that a great number of Guebres were got together on the bank of that river. Timur immediately sent thither the Emir Mobacher, Ali Sultan Tavach, and other Emirs of Tomans, and captains, to the number of fifty thousand horse; and continu'd his road towards Toclocpour. At this time the emperor was seiz'd with a very troublesom swelling in his arm, which much impair'd his health; but this distemper did not continue long, thro the care and assiduity of his officers.

In the mean while advice was brought that a vast number of Guebres in forty-eight boats, arriv'd against us upon the Ganges. This news kindl'd up the emperor's fury; and the pleasure of having an opportunity of acquiring glory and merit in this war against the infidels, made him forget his distemper. He took horse with a thousand of his particular officers, and march'd along the banks of the river. He had no sooner perceiv'd the enemy, than some of our brave men spur'd their horses into the water sword in hand, with their quivers fasten'd on their sides. The unskilful enemys only let fly their arrows upon 'em, with their bucklers laid over their heads; while our men continually advanc'd, and laying hold on their flat-bottom'd vessels, enter'd 'em, notwithstanding the resistance of the enemy, whom they cut in pieces, and cast their bodys into the Ganges, making their women and children slaves. When they were become masters of these great boats, they

they went in search of ten others mann'd with
Quebrecs, who prepar'd themselves for fighting,
and fasten'd their boats to one another, that they
might the better defend themselves, and make
a kind of naval fight. Our soldiers, after hav-
ing discharg'd a vast number of arrows, board-
ed their vessels, giving praise to God; and
with their swords slew the remainder of these
unfortunate Indians.

CHAPTER XXIV

Tamer's three Gages, or expeditions against the Guichres.

Jul 20.

AFTER the taking of the flat boat on the Ganges, Timur decamp'd for Teesrapour : and when he was arriv'd there, on the fourth of Jumadinvel, a little after midnight, two men came from the Prince of Aahad, the Jazet, Coutchin, and Altroun Rivers, who brought advice that having found an easy passage where they cross'd the Ganges, they had met on the banks of that river a great number of infidels well arm'd, who had for their leader a king nam'd Mevaret Can, who was resolv'd to defend himself :

Tibur, on advice of these motions, took horse before morning at the sound of drums and kettledrums, being lighted by a vast number of flambeaux and torches: he cross'd the Ganges, and read the morning-prayer, after having march'd a mile on the other side that river. Then our soldiers, with their cuirasses on, advanc'd against Mobarek Can, who had ring'd

The history of Timur-Bec.

Chap. 22

ten thousand horse, and some infantry, in order of battel, and expected us with his ensigns displayed, tho' he risk'd his crown on this occasion.

Timur hereupon imagin'd that these Indians being far more numerous than we, and our two wings at a great distance, we cou'd use no precautions, but must entirely resign our selves to the will of God. And as he was thus disquieted about the success of the battel, five hundred horse of the Tomans of Mirza Charoc arriv'd, which had cross'd the water with Seid Coja and Gehan Mulk, to make incursions in several places; and they join'd us at so proper a time, that one wou'd have thought they had been appointed to meet us here, or that heaven had sent 'em express to succour Timur when he had such need of 'em. Whereupon he return'd God thanks for his kindness to him, and ordered the Emir Chamsik and Allandad to attack the enemy with a thousand horse, and not regard their number, or resistance.

Our brave men, in obedience to this order and in resignation to the will of God, rush'd with fury upon the enemy, who thinking that our men were not alone, but only the vanguard of a great army, suddenly grew afraid, and fled like hinds before a roaring lion, and the Chamsiks hid themselves in the woods. Our warriors persued 'em, and put a great number to the sword, carrying away captive their women and children, with a considerable booty of oxen and other animals. Timur encamp'd at

* Chacal is an animal which partly resembles a dog, and partly a fox. It digs up dead bodies to devour 'em, and has a languishing voice.

his place; and at the same time receiv'd advice that a great number of Guebres were rendezvous'd in the defile of Coupels, east of the Ganges. Whereupon he departed with five hundred horse for that place, leaving the rest to guard the spoils. The emperor at his arrival at these mountains met a great number of Guebres. The Emirs Chamelik and Ali Sultan Tavachi, notwithstanding the enemy were superior to 'em in number, fell upon 'em sword in hand, giving praises to God. These angels at first defended themselves: but our men got to the rout, notwithstanding their great numbers; while the soldiers were employ'd in collecting the booty. Timur being left with only a hundred horsemen of his guards, a Guebre, nam'd Malek Cheika, fell briskly upon him with a hundred men, partly horse and partly foot. Timur oppos'd these rash fellows; but while the two partys were about to let fly a shower of arrows, one of our soldiers, thro' mistake, told Timur that this man was the Cheik Conkeri, one of his faithful servants. This false alarm caus'd the emperor to turn to the bottom of the mountain; which the Guebres perceiving, he attack'd some of our men. Timur then return'd against this infidel, shot him in the belly with an arrow, and unhors'd him with a cut of his sabre on his head: he was then bound with cords, and drag'd after him. Timur being willing to question him concerning the condition of the enemy; but he presently gave up the ghost. Some time after advice was brought that in the defile of Coupels, two miles from this place, a great many Guebres were assembled; that in the passages of these mountains were only thick woods, and trees twisted one within another, with reeds and

and came so large and strong that a man cou'd scarcely grasp 'em.

Chap. 24

W

Timur, who had already taken horse twice this day to fight, and was in great want of sleep, had no sooner heard this news, than preferring the treasures of eternal rewards to his quiet bed, he march'd towards this defile at the head of some officers and Emirs of the vanguard. As he was oblig'd to go thro woods almost unpassable, and the Indians were far more numerous, Timur said to his men, " If my son Pir Mehemed and Solyman Chah shou'd arrive here presently, they wou'd be of great service to us: but that cannot be: being it is but three days since I sent 'em to make inroads beyond the Ganges, which they have cross'd at Pirouznour. " While Timur was thus speaking, on a sudden they perceiv'd these brave men, who were over-joy'd to meet the emperor in this place. The pleasure, as one may easily imagine, was not less on Timur's side. They march'd together against the Guebres, on whom they discharg'd showers of arrows; and then rushing on 'em sword in hand, they made a cruel slaughter: they took a vast quantity of booty from these infidels, as well camels, oxen, and other cattle, as gold and silver belts, which the enemys wore.

Thus Timur was in three battles the same day, which never happen'd to any prince before him, that we find mention'd in history. The field of battle being so strait, and full of woods and thorns, that it was impossible to encamp here, in the evening they were oblig'd to return to the place where the second Gange was fought.

C H A P. XXV.

Timur exterminates the Guebres assembled in the famous defile of Coupele. Description of a marble statue of a cow ador'd by the Indians.

THE defile of Coupele is situated at the foot of a mountain near the Ganges, and fifteen miles higher than this defile is a stone carved in form of a cow, from whence springs this great river. For this reason the Indians adore this stone; and in all the neighbouring countrys, within a year's journey, when they are at prayers they turn towards it. One of their customs is to burn themselves alive, and to have their ashes flung into the Ganges, believing they shall merit salvation by it. They also cast into this river their gold and silver, and a chief part of their substance; and wash themselves in it, and there have a bath of honour and head, upon which they pour water; and they esteem as useful as the Mahometans imagine the Abdeste* necessary, when they go on pilgrimage to Mecca.

Abounair Otbi, in his book call'd Yemini gives a relation of the superstitions of the Indian idolaters, and of the ridiculous notions they entertain concerning this river. We told in this book, that Nasareddin Suba

* The ablution which the Mahometans are oblig'd to wash before prayer.

* A famous history of the Sultan Mahmoud Subutkin of India.

and his son the Sultan Mahmoud, for several years made war on these idolaters of India, and by degrees conquer'd the towns and castles of this kingdom; that God bless'd their undertakings, and permitted the Sultan Mahmoud at the end of these wars, to march into the kingdom of Cannouge with the mahometan army. The interpreter of the Yemini remarks, that this war in the country of Cannouge is the most celebrated of any that Yemin Eddole Mahmoud was ever engag'd in.

But to return to our subject: we must know that when Timur took up a resolution to carry his arms into India, he sent several Emirs with considerable troops by one road, and with the rest of his army march'd himself another; that these two armys took all the citys, castles, fortresses, towns and villages, in their way; that they exterminated the idolaters, and met together before Deli, as we have already mention'd, and that after the reduction of Deli, they cross'd the Ganges. Thus Timur accomplish'd his undertaking in India, for the extirpation of idolatry in that country. But as there yet remain'd a prodigious multitude of Guebres in the mountains of Goupele, who possess'd a

A town and kingdom on the side the Ganges. The geographer Abulida says that the Ganges runs towards the east to the Kingdom of Cannouge, at forty leagues distance; and that the capital of Cannouge is in long. 104. lat. 26. N. Ferishta says it is in long. 81. 30. lat. 26. 31. which is consistent with the former, because the one comes the length of the river from Alexander's pillars, and the other from the mountains of the Ganges. The English remarks that Cannouge is at a league east of Mourat.

Adam is a town of the kingdom of Cannouge, seven days journey from the city of the last. Benfai tells us that Cannouge is between two arms of the Ganges.

great quantity of riches, camel, and movable goods; he resolv'd to attack 'em. Whereupon the fifth of Jumaziulevel the army began its march towards this defile, where the infidels, who were destin'd to perish, dar'd to wait their arrival, and rashly prepar'd to sustain the attacks of our warriors, and make a vigorous defence. At sun-rising the mahometan army was rang'd in order of battel, and arriv'd at the defile in very good order. The right wing was commanded by the Mirza Pir Mehemed, and the Emir Solyman Chah; and the left by other Emirs of great reputation. The Emir Chamlik and other captains famous for their valor, led the vanguard of the main body.

When the noise of the drums, the great and little kettledrums, and trumpets, accompany'd with the usual great cry, had echo'd in these mountains and narrow passages, the infidels were confounded, and lost all courage: fear got possession of their hearts, and wou'd not suffer 'em to wait the attack of our warriors, but oblig'd 'em to conceal themselves in the mountains, whither they were pursu'd by our men, and great part of 'em slain; some sav'd themselves, yet their effects, which consisted of furniture and other riches, fell to the conquerors.

This kingdom being thus deliver'd from these idolaters, the army return'd the same day, and cross'd the Ganges, on the banks of which I now read the noon-prayer, returning thanks, God for the advantages and victorys he had gain'd thro his goodness. Then he took horse and after five miles march encamp'd toward the lower part of the river, pleas'd with the conduct of all the captains and soldiers of his army, to whom he gave rewards for their brave actions in this war.

C H A P. XXVI.

Timur's intention to return to the seat of his empire.

TIMUR being satisfy'd with having march'd as far as the eastern frontiers of the empire of India in one campaign, and having acquir'd the merit of the Gazie, departed from the bank of the Ganges the first of January, to join the baggage. Every one march'd in his respective post; and the quarter-masters and harbingers had orders to meet the baggage, and conduct it to the army. The seventh, they march'd six miles; and encamp'd four miles distance from the baggage.

Jan. 31

Feb. 1

As the news of this advice was brought that in the mountain of Soualec, one of the most renowned mountains of India, which stretched over two thirds of this vast empire, there was assembled a great number of Indians, with design to insult us. Timur order'd the troops which accompanied the baggage to detach and march towards Soualec, while himself went in person to a place but five miles distant, where the Mirza Cahi Sultan and the Emir Nouredin join'd him with the baggage. The Emir Solyman Cahi and the other generals on their knees besought the emperor to stay in the camp, and not continuing to expose the sacred person; while they would go and exterminate the Indians. Timur told the Gazie that he had two considerable armies; the one was, that is procur'd for the war, the other

Book IV. nal merit; the other, that he acquir'd by it worldly spoils and goods: that as they had these two advantages in view, they shou'd be willing that he might partake of 'em also, since his intencion in all his fatigues and labors, was only to render himself well-pleasing to God, and so treasure up good works for his eternal happiness, and riches to bestow upon his soldiers, and do good to the poor.

Then he sent orders to the Emir Gehan Chah, who had been gone out a week to make incursions on the Jaon, to come to the camp, that he might partake of the merit of this expedition as well as the other Emirs. This Emir accordingly obey'd the order, and return'd to join his majesty.

CH A P. XXVII.

Timur's irruption on the mountain Soualec.

Feb. 4.

ON Saturday the 4th of Jumaziulevel, Timur departed for the mountain of Soualec, where a Raya nam'd Behram had collected a number of Guebres in a narrow passage; and confiding in the strength of the mountain, and a strong place he had in possession, which he imagin'd inaccessible, had resolv'd to give us battel. Our army advancing in good order, Timur went down to the entrance of this defile, where he stopt. Our soldiers fell suddenly upon the infidels, who made but a weak defence; so that with their swords and hal-pikes they slew a great number of 'em. Having reduc'd 'em thus low, they became masters of their carrel and effects, and took those prisoners who escap'd the sword: but as

The history of Timur-Bec.

83

the booty was unequally divided, the rich and powerful having got four or five hundred oxen, Timur order'd the spoils should be equally distributed, that the poor and weak might have their share. The following night Timur lay in the tent of the Mirza Pir Mehemed; and next day he went to Behre, near Behem, commonly call'd Melapour.

The strength of Jamazinlevel he march'd four miles, and encamp'd at Chaslarava. The soldiers were so laden with booty, that they could scarce march four miles a day. Next day they went four miles, and encamp'd at Kender.

C H A P. XXVIII.

Several combats in the woods near Souler.

The strength of Jamazinlevel Timur march'd four miles, and encamp'd in another part of the mountain of Souler, where advice was brought that a Raja named Raja had caus'd the inhabitants to assemble to attack his the people, and kill upon one day, that by the power of a number of soldiers, and a great number under his command, and had taken the first and successful victory. The day would not stay till night was over, but he began the march against him; but could not see him till he was lighted, and order'd his captains to keep a constant march in order of battle. The soldiers employ'd all their strength in cutting down the trees to make roads, and in the same night they advanced twelve miles.

The History of Timour-Bee.

The fifteenth before morning they arriv'd between the two mountains of Sualce and Choke, where the Raya was prepar'd to give battle, having form'd two wings and a main body: but he had no more courage than the rest; for as soon as the noise of the drums, rattles and muskets, with the soldiers cries, were heard in this mountain, they fled, and the Raya himself turn'd his back, and retir'd to the bottom of a valley. The soldiers follow'd the enemy, and cut in pieces great number, carrying themselves with valour, and carrying away an innumerable booty of captives.

The same day our right wing went into another denile of these mountains, where, after having exterminated the Guebres, they gain'd a considerable booty: the left wing also made inroads in another place, and massacred several Indians; but got no spoils. The following night the two wings return'd to Timour.

Feb. 10. The sixteenth, Timour quitted this narrow passage, and he arriv'd at the ~~place~~ ^{place} where he arriv'd in a place ~~known~~ ^{known}.

known, which country is full of craggy mountains. Then he resolv'd to go person into the most dangerous places; and back the left wing, compos'd of the troops Corassins, to make inroads, because they return'd without any booty.

In the mean while Sime-Mazur, at the of the tenth, arriv'd at nine in the morning bringing advice that there were so many bres in these quarters, that it was impossible. This news oblig'd Timour to: in this place, while the left wing should go to make inroads.

The history of Timur-Bec.

Chap. 28.

Then advice was brought from the body of **Guebres**, with abundance of **Patel**, were got together in a **Ullah** on the left side. Timur immediately marched towards this place, ordering the **Sheik** **Noureddin** and **Ali Sultan** to follow him the **Guebres**. They then became **expeditions**, putting the **enemies** to the sword, in the emperor's presence, who had set up his imperial standard on the very brink of the mountain, to encourage his men. Some of the wounded lay'd themselves by night; but all their **arms** and **carrel** fell into the hands of the victors. Timur lay upon the mountain till evening, and caus'd part of the booty to be distributed among those who cou'd get none; so that every one had as much as he cou'd well take care of. At night they encamp'd in this desert, where there were **no** **houses**, who came to heal

we may truly say, there were twenty battles fought in thirty days, during which time our men conquer'd several of the most important fortresses of India, which were a long way off to Calicut. These were **not** **far** **from** **each** **other**, and were at such a distance from each other, that the **fortresses** were at such a distance from each other, that they had formerly paid tribute to the emperors of India; but were some time ago brought to subjection to the **Muslimans**, from whom they revolted, refusing to pay tribute to them; and thus they merited the punishment they receiv'd. One of these places, which

* A strong place in Syria, inhabited by Jews, formerly conquer'd by the prophet Mahomet.

The history of Timur-Bec.

belong'd to Cheikou, a relation of the Cheik Couher, had willingly submitted to Timur, thro' the interposition of the Mussulmans who liv'd with em; but this was mere shew; for they soon gave us marks of their treason and malice, and when the customary tax for the saving of their lives was impos'd on em, they made use of tricks and equivocations. In the mean while one of Timur's officers invented a stratagem to oblige em to pay the money with less reluctance; which was, that we should buy up all their weapons, which they accordingly sold our men, and offered a good price; so that they had scarcely any more arms left. Then it was order'd that forty Guebres should be lifted up in the service of Hendon Chah Isker, one of the emperor's officers; which they wou'd not consent to, but slew several Mussulmans.

This oblig'd us to treat em as enemys, and besiege their place in form; which having taken, we put two thousand Guebres to the sword, as a punishment for their past crimes.

The place belonging to Malek, and seven others, were taken with the same success in a very short time; so that this country was clear'd of this generation of idolaters, their temples were ruin'd, and the mahometan religion afterwards flourish'd there.

CHAP.

C H A P. XXIX.

Timur's Campaign and expeditions in the province of Tchamou.

After E Gazies on the mountains of Souleic being finish'd to Timur's satisfaction, he departed from Manfar the sixteenth of Jumazin, March 12, 1399. lakher; and after a march of six miles, encamp'd at Basia, a town of the province of Tchamou, where he was join'd by the Emirs Cheik Muhamed Akemmur, Mobacher, and Ismael Berlar, of the Toman of Mirza Calil Sultan.

The inhabitants of this town were valiant men, and their forts very difficult of access; they had a wide ditch round their woods, which was a great obstacle for a vigorous resistance. The soldiers were eager to fall upon 'em; but there came an order from the emperor to defer the attack till next day, because he design'd to be there in person.

The fourteenth Timur took basia, and arrayed his army in order of battle, and the great cry to be made, and the infantry was to be sounded; but the enemy fled out of the town, and fled into the woods, to hide themselves. Part of our soldiers were posted on the top of the wood, while the others enter'd the town without opposition, and made themselves masters of a great quantity of money and ammunitions; so that the army was furnish'd with all necessaries.

The same day the army departed thence, and encamp'd four miles further. Onia Timur, Tora, and Coulad, as also the Mirza Roustem, and

the faithful Zeineddin, who had been sent ambassador from Deli into Cachmir, arriv'd at the camp with letters from prince Chah Eskender, from whom there likewise came ambassadors; who assur'd Timur that their prince, full of respect to him, had resolv'd to demand his protection, with all the submission that could be expected from a subject, who was entirely resign'd to his orders: and that at a short notice of his success, he was upon his way to meet the emperor, being already arriv'd at a place where he was rejoind by the death of one of his ambassadors, who told him that the Emirs of Timur's Army had tax'd him at thirty thousand horses, and a hundred thousand Dervells of gold, each horse requiring two Makhals and a half. Chah Eskender immediately resolv'd to collect the money he was tax'd at, that he might the sooner have the honor to kiss the imperial carpet. Timur, on advice of this, disapproved of the order, because they had impos'd a tax upon him, which he was not able to pay, since it was more than his country was worth: and as the ambassador was sent represented to the emperor how Chah Eskender had submitted to him, Timur order'd that he shou'd be treated with civility, and sent to tell him that the payment of such a sum shou'd not detain him from coming before him.

March 14. The eighteenth of Jumadulakhir, the ambassadors of Chah Eskender and of Moravveddin were sent back to Cachmir, with orders to Chah Eskender to come to the bank of the Indus in ten days. Then the army on their route lag'd three towns: but Aramour, officer of Timur's household, was wounded with an arrow.

March 15. The nineteenth of Jumadulakhir, they encamp'd over-against the capital of Tachkent, after

after having march'd four miles. In their road Chap. 12
they found four leagues of cultivated land, ready
for harvest; which serv'd for forage, and our
horses were let loose among the grass in this
pasture-ground.

The river of Jumaziblakher, Timur en-
ter'd the town from whence the river of Tcha-
mon issues, which the army had cross'd several
times. It is situate at the foot of a mountain, on
the left side of the city of Tchamou, having on
its right the town of Menou. It was inhabited
by strong and tall Indians, who were resolv'd
to defend their lives, and having sent their wives
and children into the mountains, had intrench'd
themselves in almost inaccessible woods, upon a
craggy mountain, having their king at the
head; and like dogs barking at the rising moon,
they howl'd, if one may so say, when they dis-
cover'd their army.

Timur thought it better to surprize 'em by
night, than to attack 'em openly in so danger-
ous a place: whereupon he order'd our soldiers
to leave 'em, and to go to pillage the town of
Menou; which was accordingly executed. The
troops also enter'd the town of Tchamou, whence
they brought away ammunition and spoils enough
for their pay and subsistence. Then Timur
sent some regiments of active and resolute soldiers
to the woods where the enemy had fortify'd them-
selves, and in the mean while he departed with
the main army.

Timur then he cross'd the river of Tcha-
mon, march'd four miles, and camp'd on the
bank of the Genave, in a plain of four leagues
in length, full of pasturage.

As soon as the imperial army had enter'd the
city of Tchamou and Menou, the Indians, like
snakes coming out of their holes, when they smelt
the fire, came forth.

hills void of lions, came out of their mountain to re-enter their houses; but they were soon attack'd by our regiments who lay in ambuscade; and who falling upon em, cut em in pieces, not giving quarter to any one.

Dolet Timur Taveh, an officer of the Toman of Cheik-Boudouk, assisted by Hussein Melik Contchin, took the king of Tchamou prisoner, with fifty officers of consequence, whom he brought to Timur. The emperor return'd thanks to God, and thus address'd these kings:

"Blessed be the almighty King of heaven and earth, who hath humbled these proud Guebres, the enemies of his name, who but yesterday violently pray'd the faithful from their craggy mountains, having no regard to any one: but to day God has deliver'd em up to us, bound like malefactors. To him be blessing and glory for ever." Then he order'd that the captives shou'd be loaded with chains, and left traveling upon the earth, except the king of Tchamou, who had been wounded in the heat: he was heal'd of his wound, and treated with civility, as well because of his character, as for that they imagin'd they might the more easily get the mony due to the mahometan army for the town of Tchamou, and the saving the lives of the king and his men. In the mean while they treated this prince with so much kindness and respect, instructing him in the beauty's of the mussulman religion, that he resolv'd to make profession of mahometanism, and quit his errors and idolatry. So he declar'd his belief of the unity of God, and eat the flesh of oxen, which the Mussulmans, which is prohibited these miserable Indians.

This change of religion caus'd him to be honor'd and carels'd by Timur, who consented

made a treaty with him; by which he was received under the protection of our monarch.

Chap. 30.

The twenty third of Jumazulakhir the army staid on the banks of the Genave, to wait for the troops which were gone to Lahor.

March 19.

C H A P. XXX.

Relation of what pass'd at Lahor, with regard to Chicai Conker, prince of that city.

In the mean while advice was brought that the princes and Emirs, who had been sent towards Lahor, had made themselves masters of that city, and actually receiv'd the tax for redressing the inhabitants lives, having made Chicai Conker prisoner.

It may at first have a good aspect, but in the end it makes the person himself a prisoner: wherefore Timur, who was an enemy to tricking, made use of the following words for the motto of his seal. *Safety consists in fair-dealing.*

But that every one may be sufficiently apprized of the affair of Chicai Conker, they must know that this prince of Lahor, at the beginning of the year, accompany'd Timur every where, from whence he obtain'd so much favor and respect, that a great number of the Indians made use of his name, they were neither pillag'd nor made prisoners. When the war was between the two parts of Ganges and Poan, he beg'd leave to go into his own country, which was granted him: and he even agreed about the presents he should make to the emperor upon his meeting him again at the bank of the Blah, which is also call'd the river

of

of Lashor. Thus Chica Conquer return'd into his own country, where he pass'd some time in plays and diversions, forgetting what he had promis'd before the august tribunal of Timur: and he not only neglected the performance of his promise, but even gave marks of his disregard to us; for several of our officers having pass'd thro' his city coming from Transoxiana, as the doctor Abdallah Sadre, Hendekehan Cazen, and others, thro' whose protection he might have adorned himself in honor and power, he did not give 'em a handsome reception, nor show'd any marks of civility, pretending ignorance of their being in the city. This procedure drew on him Timur's indignation, who order'd that his country should be pillag'd, and his person kill'd. Thus our monarch punish'd ingratitude.

March 20. The twenty fourth of Jumazilakhir, Timur cross'd the river of Genave, and encamp'd after having march'd five miles. The same day messengers arriv'd from Fauris from the Mirza Pir Chan, bringing news of the good health that prince, his children, and principal Ewls. They also brought an account of the state of Bagdad, Egypt, Syria, Arabia, and Persia; as likewise the condition of the fort of Alengic.

The twenty fifth, several sick soldiers were drown'd in the river; which oblig'd Timur who was the most merciful prince in the world to give those who were in want of 'em, provisions and mules out of his own stable, which they cross'd the river. The same day the emperor sent Hendekehan Cazen to Samcand, with advice that he was about to return home, to comfort the people who impatiently expected him. That day there likewise arriv'd an officer from Persia from the Mirza Pir Chan.

The history of Timur-Bek.

97

med, son of Omar Cheik, who brought news of Chagatai to this prince's health, and the state of his kingdom; he likewise presented Egyptian swords, polished blades, and other curiosities.

The twenty sixth of Jumasulabber the army decamp'd from the bank of the Gienave, and after six miles march encamp'd in the desert; and the following day the emperor sent again to Samarkand one of the ambassadors who came from Timur, to order the prince his sons to come and meet him. Then Timur designing to cross the river Dindana before the rest of the army, set out before 'em.

The twenty seventh he march'd six miles, and encamp'd at the entrance of a wood: they saw a lion in a meadow, which every one attack'd, and the Emir Cheik Noureddin kill'd.

Then the Mirza Pir Mehemed and Roustan, with the Emir Soliman Chah and Gahan Chah arriv'd at the camp with labor, after having slain several beasts, and taken a considerable booty. They laid the imperial carpet, and presented their presents to Timur, which consisted of nine pieces of each sort. Timur gave great largesses to these brave men; and particularly distinguished Mehemed Azal, to whom he presented a vest, a quiver, and a gold-belt. The greatest honor only sought to be favorable report of by our monarch.

The same day Timur order'd that all the Emirs of both wings, the colonels of regiments, and the captains of companies, should return home by the shortest roads mark'd out for 'em. Then he made presents to every one according to their rank and merit, beginning with the officers of the blood, the Emir, ~~son of~~ ~~the~~ ~~prince~~ call'd Narin; and then the Emirs of ~~the~~ ~~prince~~ the colonels of Hezars, and the captains.

The

Book III. The Minza Pir Mahomed, son of Gehanghir, had a present made him of a belt and crown set with precious stones.

He also honor'd with his liberalities the lords of India, the Emirs and Chierifs, who had the good fortune to accompany him; and giving 'em letters-patent for their principalities, he permitted 'em to return into their respective countries.

Timur assign'd the government of the city and province of Mestran to Keder Can, who having been arrested by order of Sarenk brother of Mal-lou Can, and laid in irons in a citadel, had escap'd thence, and fled to Biata, a place dependent on Deli, to the king Ahoudan a Mussulman; and who having heard of Timur's arrival in that country, had with a humble confidence fled for refuge to the foot of the throne, and had the honor to accompany his majesty from that time.

As in this country there was a plain, which for its vastness, and the great quantity of game in it, seem'd to invite challengers to the chase, (for there were stags, leopards, rhinoceroses, unicorns, blue stags, wild ponies, and other uncommon animals) Timur spent some time in that diversion. He sent several thousand of soldiers to form the great circles, and have first pursu'd the idolaters, he chas'd the beasts, and afterwards went a fowling. His falcons and hawks destroy'd all the spruce pheasants, parrots and ducks in this route. The soldiers took a great deal of game, a few several rhinoceroses with their sabres and pikes, tho' this animal is so strong, that it will beat down a horse and horseman with a single stroke of its horn; and has so thick a skin, that it cannot be pierc'd but by an extraordinary force.

The twenty eighth of Jumazinakher the ar- Chap. 31.
my march'd eight miles, and encamp'd at Geb-
han, a delightful residence on the frontiers of March 24.
Cachmir.

CH A P. XXXI.

*Description of the little kingdom of Cachmir,
or Kichmir.*

AS Cachmir is one of the most noted coun-
trys in the world, has so particular a
situation, and so few people ever see it, because
it is not the ordinary passage into any other
countrys; we will give a short description of it,
which we have receiv'd from the natives, and the
truth of which we are fully satisfy'd of.

Cachmir is a principality near Hac, in the
middle of the fourth climate, which according
to modern begins at 34 deg. 37 min. of lat. its
middle is at 36 deg. 22 min. and its end at 38
54. The latitude of Cachmir is 35 degrees;
and its longitude from the fortunate is 16.

The country is of an oval form, surrounded
with high mountains on all sides: it lies
southwards upon Den and the country of India
northwards on Bedakhan and Gocastan, west-
wards upon the borders of the Ougans, and east-
wards upon Tobbot or Thebet.

The waters of its province are ten thou-
sand strong villages, full of fountains and
green plains; but the common opinion is that
the whole principality of Cachmir consists
of a hundred thousand villages, as well as
the plains as mountains. The air and water are
very wholefom; and the beauty of the

Black, the women hath pass'd into a proverb among the Persian poets and orators. They have vast quantities of good fruit; but the climate is hurtful, because of the great abundance of snow which fall there. The summer-fruits, as dates, oranges and citrons, never come to maturity; but are brought thither from the warm neighboring countries. The country in the middle is twenty leagues in breadth from one mountain to the other.

The prince and court reside at the city of Nagaz, thro' the middle of which, as is said, runs a river as large as the Tigris; and, very surprising, this river is exceeding rapid, tho' it is form'd from a single fountain in the high country, call'd the Fountain of Vir. The inhabitants have built upon this river more than thirty bridges of boats, with chains, thro' the chief passages: seven of these bridges are in the city of Nagaz, which is the center and capital of the country. When this river hath pass'd the borders of Corassan, it takes different names, from the several countries to which, as Dindana and Jaxartes, above mentioned, is join'd. The Gihans and both together having pass'd these mountains, fall into the Slave, which runs by the town of Shiran: at length the river Bish joins on, and in the town of Oncha, they all fall into the Kid or Abfend, which disembogues into the sea Caspian*, at the end of the country of Eazus.

The mountains which surround this country serve as fortifications against the insults of enemy; the inhabitants being under no apprehensions of their being ruin'd, either by the rains or storms.

There are three roads into this country: that of Corassane is so very difficult, that the inhabitants, who are accusom'd to that sort of life,

* The Arabian Sea.

The History of Timur-Bec.

are oblig'd to carry Bales of merchandize and other burdens upon their backs, which the Beasts of Burriage are not able to do. The Coast of India is equally difficult. That of Tebbot or Thebet is easier. But for several days Journey passengers meet with Venomous Herbs, which poison the Beasts.

This has given this country natural Defences, so that the inhabitants have no occasion for arms or armies.

The twenty-ninth of Jumazilakhier, Timur departed from Geban, march'd four miles, and encamp'd on the bank of the River Dindana, which he cross'd on a bridge built by his order; and which was an ease to the fatigued soldiers, as well Turks as Tadjiks. The Emir's Chamelik and Gelalelislam had orders for conducting the army over this bridge.

~~the army march'd on the 30th of Jumazilakhier, and encamp'd on the bank of the River Dindana, which he cross'd on a bridge built by his order; and which was an ease to the fatigued soldiers, as well Turks as Tadjiks.~~

C H A P. XXXII.

Timur returns to the field of his labours.

ON the thirtieth of Jumazilakhier in the morning, Timur departed for ~~the field of his labours~~. Before the army, that he might see ~~the field of his labours~~ in time: he march'd twenty miles on the ~~field of his labours~~, and encamp'd at Sanbatta, a town in the Mountain of Joudis. The first of Regeb he encamp'd at the castle of Bernudee: he took horse after noon-prayer, and enter'd the dale of Gelah, from whence he came out in the evening.

The Turks are native Tartars: the Tadjiks are conquer'd cities and countrys.

Book IV. ing, and encamp'd in a cavern, where there yet remained some water of the Pecherals, or great rains of the last winter. This cavern is but three miles from Berouge.

The 2d of Regeb at ten in the morning, he came to the Indus, over which the Emirs Pir Ali Selduz, and others, who had the care of the frontiers of Nagar and Banou, and of the roads of those quarters, had caus'd a bridge of boats to be built.

Timur having cross'd the Indus, and set up camp on its banks; and then leaving the Emir Allahdad at the foot of the bridge, to take care of the baggage, and part of the army which was behind, to pass over, he departed in the afternoon, and march'd ten miles before he encamp'd.

March 29.

The third of Regeb he stop'd at Banou, where the Emirs Pir Alitaz, Hussein Couchig, and others, who had been left there to keep the Organs in obedience, had the honor to pay their respects to him: having not seen him for a month, they presented him with nine horses and a thousand oxen. Timur gave 'em back their horses, and order'd that the oxen should be restor'd to the right owners, and then he commanded Pir Alitaz to stay in that place till all the army had pass'd it.

April 2.

The 7th of Regeb, which is the first of Farvardin of the Gelalian epocha, as also the day of the spring, he took the road to Na, where he arriv'd next day.

The same day the officer of Mirza Miran Chah was sent back into Azerbaijan, with advice of the emperor's conquests, and the good condition of his troops. Mahmud, son of Berat Coja, and Hendoucha, were likewise sent to Cabul, to bring troops from thence, to destroy the

The History of Timur-Bec.

the Ottomans, against whom the Emir Soliman Chap. 10.
Chah had caus'd the castle of Nakh to be built
before the emperor's departure for India, to op-
pose their insults: which establish'd quiet and
security among the Mussulmans of that coun-
try.

On one side of the castle without the walls was
a delicious mountain, which Timur was desirous
should be within the enclosure of the castle,
for which reason, notwithstanding his great de-
sire to see the princes his dear children, he pre-
fer'd the good of the public before his private
satisfaction; and staid in that place till the top
of the castle and the building over the fountain
were finish'd. This lasted no longer than from
Tuesday till Monday evening, because every one
assist'd in it, and the Emirs themselves, to set an
example to others, carry'd the tiles to the ma-
sons. Then the emperor gave the government
of the castle of Nakh to Emir Comar, an
officer of the militia; Mir Mehemed, with three
hundred men of the regiment of Sama Agha,
whose Captain was Yarek Aghil; to whom he
join'd four hundred deserters of the Chinese. He
gave the government of Nakh and the mountain of
the Cheik Hassan, nephew of the Cheik Mourad-
din. Timur at length departed to encamp at the
door of the Cheik Mourad-din.

On the birth of Regeb he went to Samarkand, April 12.
where the Cheik Ahmed Ougan, prince of that
place, had the honor to kiss his hand, being in-
troduc'd by the great Emirs: but Timur was
not pleas'd with the entertainment he gave him;
for these mountaineers are neither acquainted
with civility, good-breeding, or even the laws
of hospitality.

In the evening they went to encamp at the
flea, where the Cheik Abdal gave the emperor

at having an entertainment as he was able, with which he was very much pleas'd.

April 5. The 10th of Regeb, Timur encamp'd in the dells of Rame, and the same day sent the doctor Nimet to prince Charoc to acquaint him with his arrival. The 11th they stopt at a town, from whence they departed the same day at nine in the morning for Cabul, where Timur left the eunuchs Icholpan, Balc Aga, with some troops, whose hories and men were exceedingly fatigued: he also left them there to conduct 'em leisurely. At night Timur arriv'd at the mouth of Joul Neri, a canal very full of fish, which he had caus'd to be dug. The 12th he went to encamp at Garban, where he built a great hospital of brick, because several roads meet at this place, which was soon finish'd.

April 8. The 13th the court pass'd the mountain and dells of Cheberto, and went to encamp in a plain at two leagues distance. The same day the emperor being struck by some evil eye*, or malign influence, fell sick, and had on his legs and hands painful ulcers, which hinder'd him taking any repose, and retarded his march: and because of this accident this place was call'd the dry and unfortunate camp. The night following an officer arriv'd from Hama from prince Charoc, with very agreeable news.

Timur departed from this place on the third day in a commodious litter carry'd by mules, he not being able to ride on horseback, and as his sickness yet encreas'd, the officers

* The Turks, as well as the Italians, are so superstitious, so believe that certain persons bring misfortune to every thing they look upon; and that their eyes are so venomous as to children. The Italians call this, *il cattivo occhio*, the evil eye.

of his chamber fasten'd leathern straps to the poles fix'd to the litter, and so carry'd him by the bottom of the river in a very narrow passage of the mountain Siapoutch, which they were oblig'd to pass. From the beginning of this defile to the mountain they cross'd the river twenty-six times, and twenty-two times from the mountain to the end of the defile.

The 15th of Regeb, the domestics of the Emperor, Serai Mulc Canum and Tooman Aga, and of the other ladys and children of the Emperor, arriv'd at Samarcand, where they made presents to his majesty, assuring him of the good wishes and pines health. Timur sent Gahar Jung, an officer of Tooman Aga, to the baggage, to bring from thence the elephants. In the mean while his majesty's indisposition disquieted the whole court, till the 17th of Regeb, when they cross'd the river of the defile, at which time it pleas'd God to restore him his health.

The 18th he went in a litter from Surab towards Bacalan, and encamp'd at the town of Aker, where he staid a little to refresh himself, and afterwards encamp'd at Kara Bostan. The ladys of the Mirza Pir Mehemet, and of the King Gahan Chah, with the Euxary and others of Bacalan, came to meet the Emperor, and make their presents.

The 19th at ten in the morning he arriv'd at Samarcand, whence he departed the same day, to encamp at Gaznic. The 20th he march'd to Culm, and setting out from thence at noon, he arriv'd at the Gihon before Termed at midnight.

C H A P. XXXIII

*Timur crosses the Oxus, and is met by the
princes and princesses of the blood.*

April 15.

At this time of day, at dawn of the morning, Timur having crossed the Oxus in a boat, met on the other side the Mirza Ismael-bek, the Mirza Ibrahim Sultan, the princess Beghis Sultan his daughter, with the empresses *Mutt Gannu*, *Tekil Gannu*, and *Tooman*, accompanied by all the princes, lords, lords, lords, and chiefs of Samarkand, with others who came to meet his majesty, who gave him a handsome reception. This charming company, and especially the ladies, congratulated him on his conquests, and sprinkled over him so great a quantity of gold and precious stones, that it seem'd as if the land had been transform'd into one.

The court staid at Termed two days, where they were entertain'd with a sumptuous banquet by the great Chief *Alact Mulk*, who made several handsome presents.

April 18.

The 23d of Regeb the court went to the *Kichik* of *Gehan Mule*; and the 25th to the bath of *Tarki*: the 27th they pass'd the bridge of *Coligz*, and encamp'd at the river of *Baric*. The 28th they encamp'd at *Echellie*; the 29th at *Cominondak*; and the 30th they arriv'd at *Dourbilgis*, where the *Mirza Charoc*, who was come from *Herat*, had the honor to kiss the emperor's hands: he congratulated him upon his victorys, made him presents, and sprinkled upon him, according
custo

custom, gold, and precious stones. The great Chap 34.
emperor most affectionately embrac'd his dear
son, whom he tenderly lov'd, and loaded him
with favors and honors.

At this place likewise the Mirza Omar, son
of Miran Shah, whom Timur at his departure
for the Indies war had left at Samarcand, had
the honor to kiss his majesty's feet, who gave
him a very kind reception, because of the love
and care he had always shewn to his people,
and the justice he had so exactly render'd.

On monday the 10th of Regeb, Timur went April 23.
to encamp on the bank of a little river * and
the 20th in the delicious fields of Kech. He
immediately went to pay his devotions at the
tombs of the great Santons, Chamfeddin Kelar,
and others, and at length at that of his illustri-
ous father, the Emir Tugai, of blessed memory,
and then he visited the rest of his noble children.
Here he spent seven days, giving alms to the
poor of that country.

He departed from this place the 14th of Scha-
ban, to encamp on the bank of the river of
Bouder. The 15th he arriv'd at the town
Rebat, or the town of pleasures: the 16th he
pass'd the mountain, and encamp'd at another
place. The 17th he went to his palace
which himself had built, and the 18th he ar-
riv'd at the Kiachk of Gheppanna. The 19th
he arriv'd at the pleasure-house of Doker-Abad:
and on monday the 20th, at nine in the morning,
he arriv'd at the Kiachk of the garden of Dilan
Chah: the palace of which had been lately
finish'd: and to consecrate that palace to joy
and pleasures, a royal banquet was prepar'd.

* Kiachk is a building in form of a copole.

which the empresses, the emperor's children, the princes of the blood, the Emirs or dukes, and the Nevians and foreign princes, assisted. They cast so much gold and precious stones upon his majesty, to congratulate him on his victories and happy arrival, that the earth seem'd sown with em, and all the officers were loaded with riches.

The 31st of Schabân, Timur made his entry into his capital city of Samarkand, where, after he had been at the baths, to make his ablution, he went to visit the tomb of the venerable San-ton Faradcatam, son of Abbas, to whom he gave presents to the officers belonging to his mausoleum: then he went to the hospital founded by the empress Toudman Aga. After noon-prayer he honour'd with his presence the garden of pleasure, and the palace of Tachidogetan, where he was diverted with feasts and plays. From thence he went to the delicious garden of Bagh Behicht, which is indeed a true paradise, as its name imports. Then he came to the palace of Bagh Bolend, at which place the elephants and baggage arriv'd. The inhabitants of Transoxiana, who had never before seen any elephants, were surpriz'd at these huge animals of such an extraordinary figure, and gave praise to the Almighty, whose works are incomprehensible.

The emperor distributed the curiosities and riches he had brought from India, among the princes of the blood, the Cherifs, and chief persons of the kingdom, according to their different rank and quality: among which were precious stones, gold, beautiful male and female Negroes.

Timur sent Sarenk, eldest brother of Melik Can prince of Moultan, with two chains of elephants, and other curiosities, to the Mirza Mehemed Sultan. He made other presents to the Emirs.

Emirs who had been left in Transoxiana, that every one might partake of the benefit of his conquests. Then he permitted his son prince Chuluc, to return to the seat of his kingdom of Corassana, after having loaded him with gifts.

C H A P. XXXIV.

Building of the great mosque of Samarcand.

TH E Alcoran expressly assures us, that the greatest proof of a prince's faith is his erecting temples to the honor of God: whereupon our conqueror, being persuaded that this work of piety won'd be the crown of the services he had acquir'd in his wars, and Gazis against the infidels, he had destroy'd the temples of the false gods, and exterminated the idolaters, resolv'd to build a great mosque in Samarcand, large enough to contain all the faithful of that capital city, when they shou'd assemble for their prayers; and to this effect he issu'd out the orders for the foundations to be laid.

The architects chose a happy moment to lay the stone, viz. on the 4th of Rabi-ul-Khatem, the 12th day of the year of the Hare, the moon being then in Leo, going out of the sextile aspect of Mars, and entering the sextile aspect of Venus. The masons, brought from foreign countrys, as mentioned before, gave the greatest proofs of their art and skill, as well in the solidity and beauty of the angles, as in the strength of the foundations of this noble edifice. In the making of the mosque were employ'd two hundred masons froms Azerbijana, Persia and India: five hun-

of IV. hundred men, likewise work'd in the mountain in cutting and hewing of stones, which were sent into the city. Several other artificers, of different trades, perform'd their parts with the utmost application. Ninety-five chains of elephants were made use of in drawing large stones with wheels and machines, according to the laws of mechanics. The princes of the blood and Eshiks were appointed to oversee the workmen, that not one moment might be lost in finishing this stupendous building.

In the mean while the Mirza Mehemet, who ordinarily resided at Andecow, on the frontiers of Persia, arriv'd with a great attendance of officers. He had also honours to pay his respects to the emperor in the hospital of Toman Aga, where he made his presents, and sprinkled gold and precious stones upon his majesty, according to the custom of the Tartars, Moguls, and indeed of almost all the nations of the Turks. Timur embrac'd this young prince with all the tenderness that could be expected from so good a father. He then went to visit the works, to animate the workmen by his presence; but he did not stir either from the college of Caman, which is near this mosque, or from the hospital of Toman Aga; at which places he distributed justice, sat in council, and decided the affairs of the empire and of the state.

At length, under his conduct, this great edifice was finish'd. It contain'd four hundred eighty pillars of hewn stone, each seven cubits high. The arch'd roof was cover'd with marble, neatly carr'd and polish'd: and from the architrave of the entablature to the top of the roof were nine cubits. At each of the four corners of the mosque without was a Minaret. The doors were of brass: and the walls, as well

* A kind of steeple.

with-

without as within, as also the arches of the
ceiling were adorn'd with writing in relievo,
among which is the chapter of the cavern, and
other parts of the Alcoran. The pulpit, and
reading-desk, where the prayers for the emperor
were read, were of the utmost magnificence:
and the front of the altar, cover'd with plates of
iron gilt, was likewise of perfect beauty.

After the month of Ramadan was past, and
the feast of Bairam come, Timur went to the
palace of Dilcu Shah, where he order'd prepa-
rations to be made for the most sumptuous ban-
quets, and all sorts of plays and diversions.
The empress Rokia Canica on this occasion gave
a noble entertainment, accompany'd with con-
sorts of music and fine dancing.

The end of the fourth book.

BOOK

and to reduce and gain the dominion of the
 eastern of Persia, after Timur-Bec's
 was retired to the north-east of the Caspian
 sea, and the Tartars, who were the
 conquerors of Persia, and of the whole
 of Asia, were now in the possession of
 the whole of Persia, and of the whole of Asia.

BOOK V.

The wars of Timur in Persia. The
 conquest of Syria and Mesopotamia.
 The famous war with Bajazet, the
 Turkish emperor, who after the loss of
 his battle is taken prisoner, and dies in
 the Tartars camp.

CHAP. I.

The cause which obliged Timur to make war in
 the country of Iran, that is, in the western
 parts of Asia, from the river Ganges to the
 Mediterranean sea.

An. Dom.
1399.

IN the autumn of the year of the Hegira
 801, which answers to that of the Moult,
 the Mirza Miran Chah, conducted by his
 evil destiny, went to take the diversion of hunt-
 ing in the neighborhood of Tauris, where the
 tomb of Pir Omar Naq Chirban is to be seen.

Son of Timur, and viceroy of Media, which is called by
 the Persians Azerbijana. The great Moguls of India de-
 scended from him.

He had a roe-buck, which he was desirous to kill with his hands: But as he was dooping down to that purpose, he fell from his horse, tho' he was one of the best horsemen of Asia; and the violence of his fall cast him into a swoon, in which he lay a long time. All the lords of his court were extremely concern'd at it, and got round him to comfort him: He continu'd senseless for three days and nights; and his physician, who was an ignorant fellow, or rather a knave, which has since been most suspected, fail'd in the application of remedies; by which means the prince was seiz'd with a grievous inflammation, which impair'd his senses. Thus this great man, who till that time had possess'd the throne of Persia, and of the kingdom of Azerbajana, with so much applause and glory, by the administration of justice and by his liberality, was surpris'd at his understanding. Upon a bare insurrection he fell a man; and miserably squander'd away his treasures, the life, destroy'd the most sacred buildings, and did many things contrary to the good sense and dignity of a prince.

One of his actions, which plainly discover'd the alteration of his judgement, was, that at the beginning of summer, he departed at the head of all his troops to besiege the city of Bagdad, and march'd day and night, going two days and twenty-four hours, imagining that the bare sight of his approach wou'd strike a terror in the heart of the Sulran, and make him abandon his city. But affairs took a quite different turn: For when Miran Chah was at the door of Ibrahim-Bek, he receiv'd advice from Tamerlane, that a great number of the principal men of the kingdom were confederated against him; nevertheless did not hinder his progress towards Bagdad. But the Sulran Ahmed, knowing it was not

not a proper season to besiege the place, because of the great dryness and heat of the weather, resolv'd to defend himself. In the mean while couriers came incessantly from Tauris with reiterated advice of the conspiracy, and even of the revolt of the principal inhabitants; so that the Mirza, two days after the arrival of the great standard before Bagdad, was constrain'd to return to Tauris with expedition: he was no sooner enter'd into that capital of Media, than he put all hands to the sword, who were accus'd of being in the conspiracy, of which number was the Cherif Ali, prince of Cacki, of the tribe of Eriz, who would revolt from his obedience; for which cause, without examining into the facts, he march'd into the field at the head of his army, and went to pillage his country.

When the Georgians, who by their acts of hostility had already drawn on themselves Timur's anger, were inform'd of the Mirza Miran Chah's small application to public affairs, they became so insolent, that during Timur's expedition in India they revolted. At the same time the Sultan Taher, son of the Sultan of Bagdad, was with his troops in the fortrefs of Bagdic, which had been besieg'd a long time, according to Timur's orders, by the Sultan Sengier, son of Hadgi, Seifeddin. The besiegers, the better to carry on the siege, had built a great wall round the place, so that no one cou'd get in or out. This conjuncture caus'd the Georgians to get together a great number of troops, and even the Cherif Ali, tho a good Mussulman,

* An old general of Timur's army, and his father-in-law, who had attended him ever since the beginning of his reign.

The history of Timur-Bec.

111

join'd these infidels, to revenge himself for the Chap. 1.
Khan Miran Chah's having pillag'd his country. The
Georgians came before Alengic with a
large army, being resolv'd to deliver the Sultan
Faher, who had been oppress'd, that his heart
as one may say, was in his mouth; and entering
Azerbaijan, pillag'd the country, pillag'd
the Mohammedan effects, and committed all ima-
ginable disorders.

Sultan Sendger, on advice of this, rais'd the
flag, and march'd to Tauris, to give an account
of this strange accident to Miran Chah, who
immediately order'd his son the Prince Ad-
becre to march with four or five ^{thousand} ~~thousand~~ ^{thousand} ~~thousand~~
Mongols, to revenge the Georgians, and put a
stop to their disorders, which they could not do
with so much expedition, but that the Georgi-
ans got first to the place, from whence having
made the Sultan Faher go out, they plac'd a
challenge in the hands of Hader Salih, and three
famous Ozmaours of Georgia, and then re-
turn'd home, their design being only to deliver
the Sultan Faher. Yet by chance they met the
army of Tauris, which being far less numerous
endeavor'd to avoid em, but that being impos-
sible, the Ozmaours resolutely advanc'd as if
 assur'd of the victory: at the first onset they
broke thro' the wings of the army of Tauris,
and the Cherif Ali, perceiving his danger,
turn'd upon him out of the main body sword in
hand, to revenge the ruin his father had brought
upon his country: but this young prince, who
was but fifteen years old, kept his ground,
and let fly an arrow of walnut-wood against the

The Ozmaours are the principal lords of Georgia. The
Khan and Miran are with the Russians and Tatars.

Cherif,

Cherif, with so much skill, that he struck him near the collar of his helmet of gold, which he pierc'd, and the arrow stuck in his neck; so that the rash Cherif fell down dead on a sudden. This vigorous action of the young prince did not hinder the Georgians gaining the victory; for they totally defeated the army of Tauris, and then return'd into their own country, while the Mirza Abonbacre sav'd himself by flight.

These melancholy events were the consequences of the Mirza Miran Chah's being immoderate in his excesses and debauches; for he spent almost all his time in drinking and gaming. And as one vice is always attended by another, he fell into greater extravagances. As he was one day in conversation with his wife the princess Canzade, he reproach'd her with a fact which wounded her honor, with which this chaste princess was so sensibly touch'd, that she us'd all her endeavors to discover the source of this calumny; in which search the lives of several men and women were sacrific'd; and even the Mirza's Vicer, Doler Coja Elnac, was oblig'd to fly with his wife to Beyan Cochin, at Reas, leaving all he had got during the time of his ministry to be plunder'd. The aversion of the Mirza and Canzade so far increas'd, that the princess, being highly incens'd, was oblig'd to go to Samarcand, where she arriv'd just as Timur return'd from the Indian war, and had begun to take some recreation after the fatigues of that expedition, and inform himself of the present affairs of the empire. This was a favorable time for the princess to be reveng'd; for Timur had been already inform'd of the many disorders committed in the kingdom of Iran, and especially in Azerbijana, thro the ill conduct of the Mirza.

Mirza Gaziade at her arrival had the honor to receive the imperial carpet in the castle of plane-tree, where she acquainted his majesty with her husband's distemper, assuring him that if he did not march towards that kingdom, the Mirza would not fail of happening, since he now made slight of the imperial mandates and prohibitions, and had squandered away the treasures of Azerbaijan in debauches and prodigality.

These reasons oblig'd Timur, before he had recover'd himself after the fatigues of the last campaign, from which he had not return'd above four months, to take up a resolution to carry his arms into the countrys of Iran, to put a stop to the disorders which had crept in there, to succour the weak, curb the insolent, and deliver those who were fallen under the weight of injustice and tyranny.

CHAP. II.

Timur's departure for a campaign of seven years.

TIMUR, to whom the universal empire of Asia was destin'd, was no sooner arriv'd from India, where he had suffer'd the fatigues of a tiresome war with the infidels for a while, than he resolv'd to march towards the western parts of Asia, for the reason given in the preceding chapter. The emperor immediately sent messengers into all the provinces, with orders for the officers of his army to assemble their troops, as well cavalry as infantry, for a campaign of seven years, and repair immediately to court to receive his

by the emperor's orders. Timur sent to Herat three Emirs of the court of the Mirza Charoc, to signify to that prince that he must march into Azerbaijan at the head of the troops of Corassan, and that the Emir Solyman Chah * should go before him at the head of the vanguard to Tauris.

The Mirza Charoc having learnt the emperor's will from the Emirs, employ'd himself in getting ready the army of Corassan; and the Emir Solyman Chah departed at the same time with the Seid Coja, whom Timur had sent on. As soon as the troops were assembled, the Mirza's head took the road to Bestam and Damagan. When he was arriv'd at Jadgeron, he met Toulkel Carcara, who was come from the imperial camp, which had already cross'd the Gihon, and who brought orders for the army of Corassan to take the road to Chafuman, Eftcrabad, and Sari, because the imperial army must pass by Bestam and Damagan. Whereupon the Mirza turn'd towards Chafuman; but many of his horses perish'd in their march, as well by reason of the difficulty of the ways, as for that the roads were full of poisonous herbs: and after a tedious journey he arriv'd at Firouzcuh. Timur before his departure gave the government of the country of Touran to the Mirza Maken Sultan, whom he left at Samarcand, the seat of this great empire. He fix'd several Emirs employments near the Mirza's person, whose business was to defend the frontiers; and he gave the government of Andecan to the Mirza Esau der, to whom he entrusted the care of the land of Turkestan. At length, recommending himself to God, he order'd the great imperial standard to be brought into the field; and at the beginning of autumn, the eighth of the month of Ror, which answers to the year of the

This great conqueror departed for a campaign of Chap. 2
 four years; the date of which day is found in
 the letters of Fatch Carib, which signifies, only
 conquest. Timur went directly to encamp at
 Caratoupa, which mountain he afterwards
 pass'd, and went down to Kech, where he vi-
 sited the tombs of the prince his father, and of
 the Chief Chamfeddin Ketar: here he distri-
 buted alms, and then went to Termid, where
 he visit the same in the tombs of the Cherifs, as
 well as in that of Coja Mehemed Ali, the great
 philosopher of Termid, and in that of the
 illustrious Aboubecr Verran, and other famous
 Sultans, imploring their intercession with God
 for the good success of his arms.

He cross'd the Gihon, and went down to
 Balc, where he encamp'd in a meadow situate
 at the foot of the fortress of Hendouan: he
 likewise visit the tomb of these holy
 men, Coja Chan Chan, Coja Romane, Sultan
 Abou Abdou, Fdailayaz, Sefian Thaouri,
 and others, whose assistance he besought: and
 he did the Emir Yadghiar Bertas, governor of
 Balc, the honor to lodge in his house. This
 Emir was not wanting in performing his devours,
 as well in sprinkling gold and precious stones
 at the Emperor's feet, as in preparing for him
 a magnificent banquet and presents, and giving
 him the marks of a profound respect and per-
 fect obedience. Timur departed from Balc, and
 after several days march, came to Sarek Camien
 Dagh, where he was join'd by the Mirza Cha-
 roc's household, and by the princesses Meher
 Aga *, and Camoher Chad Aga *, with their
 children, who came from Herat.

The emperor took pleasure in seeing them,
 and their presents, and the precious stones
 they sprinkled on him, with so much the more
 satisfaction;

Book V.

June
1399.

satisfaction, in that they presented to him the young Mirza Siorgatnich, who was born of Melik Aga but four months before, under the ascendant of Virgo, the eighth of Ramadan 801. The emperor was tenderly affected at the sight of the Mirza his grandson, whom he loaded with blessings.

The Emir Arbouga came to the same place to pay his respects to his majesty, making presents, and sprinkling precious stones at his feet. The emperor gave him a handsome reception, with a vest, and permitted him to remain at court. Then he went to visit the tomb of the celebrated Musti Ahmed Dgiam, where he distributed alms as usual, to implore the protection of this famous Saint; and from thence he sent the Mirza Roustem to his eldest brother the Mirza Pir Mehemed at Chiraz, with orders that these two brothers shou'd march together towards Bagdad; and he commanded the Emir Sevindgic to accompany him with a thousand horse. Timur then took the diversion of the chase in the plains of Khergherd and Feragherd, where two days they slew an excessive number of beasts; and afterwards he continued his march by Nichabour and Bestam, and distributed victuals and ammunition among the troops, and pass'd by the province of Rei and Khouiv; and being encamp'd at the town of Aivanic was join'd by the Mirza Charoc, who according to his instructions had march'd by the road of Mazendran.

CHAP. III.

The transactions of the Emir Solymán Chah.

THE Emir Solymán Chah, who had taken the road to Tauris with the vanguard, being arriv'd at Kel, heard from Beyan Coutechin, governor of that town, of the Mirza Miran Chah's being lunatic: whereupon, not trusting himself secure if he should go to wait upon this prince, he resolv'd to march to Hamadan. But the Mirza Aboubecre having held a council with his father's Emirs, they consented to write a letter to Solymán Chah, in which they invited him to come to Tauris, assuring him that he should receive all manner of satisfaction. And, in pursuance of this promise, the Emir went there, and with so much conduct wrought upon Miran Chah, that he perswaded him to set out two days after to meet the emperor, with a numerous retinue; while the Mirza Aboubecre gave the brave Emir a magnificent entertainment in the meadow of Gontoupa, without the city of Tauris. Honouring him with a vest and giving him a present of several fine horses, together with good will: as he did also Seid Coja, who accompanied the Emir Solymán Chah: and then they went together to Chelizar. When the Emir had pass'd by Chelizar, the Mirza Miran Chah arriv'd at the imperial camp; but he could not obtain audience till the next day. The third day a messenger, nam'd Aman, arriv'd at Chelizar, and offer'd presents to Timur from the Mirza Omar Cheik: he had a handsome reception, and the honor to kiss the imperial carpet. Next

The history of Timur-Bec.

day, the Mirza Miran Chah had also the honor to kiss the emperor's feet: he offer'd his presents on his knees; but he was not receiv'd by the emperor with any tokens of kindness, because of the faults he had committed. Then Timur sent to Tauris before the rest, Timur Coja son of Achouga, and Chahmud, to carry information of the deportment of Miran Chah. These two commissaries, at their arrival there, caused the principal officers and gentlemen of the Mirza to be seiz'd and bound, and the members of the Divan to be brought to em. And as the Mirza had squander'd away two parts of the revenues for four years belonging to the Sultan, these commissaries would not pass his accounts for the same. But an information was given the court, that the principal cause of the disorder of the province came from the Mirza's excesses, and he was buoy'd up in this evil passion by the instigation of certain profligate musicians, and others, who made it their business to excite him to dissipation and drunkenness; that these parasites never stir'd from his presence, but took care to furnish him with new subjects for debauches; the emperor gave an order that they should be all hang'd, excepting one man, to serve for an example to others. Thus all the Mirza's favorites were seiz'd, and even the most ingenious man, who was of that number, was not spared, but serv'd as a warning to others; as the incomparable Moulana Mehemed Combellani, so famous for all sciences, and so celebrated a person, whose conversation and agreeable wit had render'd him the wonder of his age.

Timur, at his arrival at Soltania, gave audience to Muzaffer of Nersuze.

* A town near Cachan.

Book IV By on the emperor's goodness, carry'd the Cherif to the foot of the throne, desiring to beg pardon for him, and procure him the honor to kiss the imperial carpet. In effect, Sidi Ahmed kiss'd the ground with a profound submission, and the Cherif Ibrahim ask'd pardon for his faults. The emperor full of clemency was willing to give him that mark of his affection; and not only pardon'd the Cherif on his account, but even gave him a handsome reception, and made over come with him in the principality of Candahar, which the Cherif All his father formerly posses'd. The Cherif Ibrahim, in quality of king of Candahar, paid also his particular devours, and to refresh his joy at the emperor's coming into his country, he prepar'd great banquets, and made so great a number of horses and sheep to be kill'd, that all the cooks in the court were not sufficient to dress 'em. Besides this banquet, he entertain'd the court with all other pleasures, which usually accompany any famous feasts; and afterwards he offer'd his presents, which consisted of curious animals, beautiful boys and girls, divers sorts of carriages and other amusements; lastly, six thousand horses of great price and beauty, and some Timur-Bec.

CHAPTER IV

The arrival of good news from several parts.

DURING these transactions, advices were brought from all parts, which were very advantageous to us: among the rest we were inform'd of the death of Timur-Codin-Agen, who

who having fled for refuge to Timur, after the defeat and ruin of Tocatinich Can, had thro the protection of Timur been establish'd on the throne of the Cans of Capchac; and the empire of Touchi; and yet forgetful of all the favors he had receiv'd from Timur, thro an unparallel'd ingratitude, had revolted, and declar'd war against him: they had advice, that of the death of this ungrateful prince, as also of the miserable state of the kingdom of Capchac from seditions and intestine wars.

Death of the grand Can of Capchac.

At the same time we also heard that Malek Ezzaher Barcoy, king of Egypt and Syria, had pass'd from this world into the other: that discord having crop'd among the Emirs and Mamluks, the affair had ended in a civil war, in which several of the principal Emirs had been massacred: that Barcoy, son of Barcoy, who was declar'd king and successor to the kingdom, had neither credit nor authority: and, that the kingdoms of Egypt and Syria were entirely fallen into disorder.

Death of the Sultan of Egypt.

There came also advice, that Tangon, Emperor of China, where he had reign'd a long time, professing idolatry, was dead: and that the Chinese, who had revolted, had caus'd great seditions in that empire.

They also learnt that Kezre Coja Aplo, King of Gese, had paid the tribute to the Mongols: and that after his death dissensions arose among his four sons, Chamadgehan, Mel, Chadgehan, and Chadghan, thro the seditious people.

The same day they also heard that Iskender, son of Omar Chenk, was from Andecan at the head of his Eunuymy; and had enter'd Mogolistan, who by Timur's good fortune, he had gain'd the advantage

face over the Moguls, whom he utterly de-
feated.

These advices, which were of so great impor-
tance to the designs of our conqueror, striking
the same day, fill'd the hearts of all the em-
peror's faithful servants with joy.

As the affair of the Mirza Eskender is of such
great consequence, we have thought proper to
give the reader a detail of it. Attention having
crept in among the people of China, after the
death of Kezeli Cois Aulen, the Mirza Eken-
der laid hold on this favorable opportunity, and
got together the troops of Andacani: and as
he was but fifteen years old, he put himself at
their head, accompany'd by the Emirs of his
court, and by those who in compliance with
Timur's orders, guarded the frontiers of China,
and boldly enter'd into the lands of the Moguls.

When he was come near to Cachgar*, and the
Emirs had join'd him, they advanc'd all toge-
ther to pillage and ravage the town of Yarkent,[†]
then they march'd on farther, and did the same
to Sarek Camich, Keshgoum, Aighoul, Tar
Courgag, Tcharrac, and Kairoum. At length arriv'd at the province of Samarkand in
Mogolistan, and almost all the people, and the
hords were in those quarters, came to meet him
with submission and obedience. They too
those prisoners who refus'd to obey, and carry
em with em towards the citadel of Aclou, which
they besieg'd, and with great difficulty made
themselves masters of it. This citadel consist

* The author seems to make no difference between the
Geres and the Moguls, either taking the name of Geres
or that the Moguls at that time inhabited the country of Geres.

† Capital of Turkestan.

• Town of Gues.

• All towns of Mogolistan.

these cities, which have a communication with China, one another, and is esteem'd so strong, that the inhabitants of all the neighbouring provinces consider it as a sure asylum in time of war. The Mirza soon encamp'd with his Emirs without the place; and being prepar'd to attack it vigorously with instruments for sapping the walls, scaling ladders, battering-rams, and other war-chiefs, he caus'd several assaults to be given immediately after one another, for near forty days, when the besieg'd were oblig'd to surrender; to which purpose they sent presents to the Mirza, and many several very rich Chinese merchants go out of the place, who had been staying there with their effects. Then the Mirza sent men to make inroads at Bai and Qashgar, the former of which is a confluence fit for the summer, and the latter a winter place for the winter. The Mirza sent also three thousand men, and brought away several of the princesses Hadgi Begum, wife of the Emir Kezre Chah, and her daughter Han Melik, with other ladies. At length they went to pillage the town of Tashkent, whence they brought the inhabitants away to Samarkand.

After these conquests the Mirza Embassy was sent from Samarkand for Cotan, and he arrived there seven days journey from Samarkand, and is the northern China, call'd Cotan, which is a flourishing and populous country, with many rivers: for we count from Cotan thirty-five days journey to Tashkent, frontier of China, thirty-nine days journey to Samarkand, and there is a wall between the mountains, in which wall is a great

several Yau-Gans, or men to lodge passengers, and several soldiers are always at this place to guard the frontiers and entrance of the wall. From hence to Ghendgian Fou, a city of China, is fifty-one days journey; and forty from that place to Cambzhe. It is also forty from Ghendgian Fou to Nannan; and we are assur'd there is another road, by which to go from Cotan to the frontiers of China, forty days; but there is not one dwelling place in it, the land is all very tiresome; and the water, which is taken out of the wells in its deserts, is easily taken up, and in several places it is venomous, and kills the animals which drink of it: and what is very surprising, out of six wells at a small distance from each other, the water of four is poisonous, and the other perfectly good. From Cotan to Cachgar is fifteen days journey, and from Cachgar to Samarcand twenty-five. In Cotan are two rivers, Oraccach, and Caracach, the stones of which being jasper, are carry'd to other countries. These two rivers have their source in the mountain of Carangoutar, one of the highest.

To return to our subject: at the Mirza Babur's arrival at Cotan, the inhabitants came out to salute him, and bring him presents; and he behav'd himself with so much prudence, that all the places and castles of this frontier province were reduc'd to the emperor's obedience. He at length departed from Cotan, and came to Carangoutar, a very steep and rugged mountain, into which the inhabitants of Cotan and the neighboring places fly for refuge in time of war. When the Mirza was fully inform'd of the strength and inaccessibility of Carangoutar, he did not judge it convenient to hazard his troops there, but chose rather to return, and spend the winter at Cachgar. He chose two

The history of Timur-Bec.

companies of Mogul young women, the most beautiful of Cotan, nine in each company, whom he sent as a present to the emperor by the Cheik Yezoul : he likewise sent by the same person nine young women and nine horses to the Mirza Mehemet Sultan, who being extremely incens'd against him, refus'd his presents.

The reason of this discord was as follows : the Mirza Mehemed Sultan was come into Turkestan with an army to join the Mirza Eskender, and go with him to the war against the Getes ; but Eskender, instead of waiting for him as he ought, went before, and march'd directly into Mogolistan, that he might not serve under Mehemed Sultan. This incens'd Mehemed's hatred, so that he wou'd not accept of his presents ; and he return'd to Samarcand with his army, without putting any designs in execution.

When spring was come, the Mirza Eskender return'd to Turkestan, from whence he took the road to Samarcand, to visit Mehemed Sultan ; but he turn'd at the mountain Ackiotch, the Mirza being highly incens'd against him, had a design to seize him. This advis'd Eskender jealous ; so he return'd to Andecan and enter'd the castle : but the Emirs, Pirmed, son of Tagh Bouga, and Pir Hadj Mechik, tax'd him with a design to revolt, and assembled the militia of Andecan, to besiege the castle, upon which the Mirza Esken-der, and went to lodge in a garden bordering on the city. Pir Cheik, after having confer'd with a deal of good-nature. Then seiz'd his domestics, and bound 'em ; they sent advice to the Mirza Mehemed at Samarcand, as also of Eskender's leaving the castle, and design to revolt. Mirza Esken-der dispatch'd an express to bring

Surround, with the officers of his household. They deliver'd this prince to him at the bank of the river of Couhec; and having bound him, they put to death his Arabet*, Beyan Timur, son of Bikhedek, with twenty-six of his domestics.

C. H. A. P. V.

Timur marches into Georgia, and to the South of Couheh.

TIMUR designing to carry his arms into Georgia, in obedience to the precept of the Alcoran, which teaches us to wage war on all who disbelieve the musliman religion, he began to make preparations from the winter of 801, being then encamp'd at Carabagh Arran. He gave a rest to the Cheik Ibrahim of Chirvan, and another to Sidi Ahmed of Cheki; and after having loaded him with his favors, he permitted him to return home. He chose three men out of every ten to serve as scouts, which he order'd to take victuals for ten days: he commanded the baggage and rest of the army to stay in this place. He went to join these leaders with the Mirzas his sons; and being arriv'd at the river of Cyrus*, he cross'd it with his troops on a bridge of boats. Soon after he was join'd by the Cheik Ibrahim of Chirvan, and Sidi Ahmed, prince of Cheki, who came to follow the court.

An. Dom.
1399.

* Abcor.

* Arabet is a place's governor.

The imperial army pass'd by Cheki[†], and took Chap. 5.
the road to the defile of Comcha[‡], where the
infidels dwelt: and as this defile was full of
thick woods, the trees of which were very close-
ly interwoven with one another, the soldiers had
orders to cut 'em down to facilitate their passage.
Accordingly they made a road with their axes
and saws ten days journey in length, and broad
enough for five or six companys to march in
front. At that time it snow'd exceedingly for
twenty days together; but that cou'd not hin-
der Timur from arriving with his army in
Georgia. Our men made the great cry, *Allah Ak-
bar*, and fell upon the enemy with so much fury,
that the surface of the mountain which the snows
had before render'd white, with the blood of these
infidels became as red as fields sown with tulips;
and no quarter was given to any of 'em. Com-
cha the chief of these infidels, who disbelieve
any farther progress, was oblig'd to abandon
his city and family, and fly. Our soldiers pur-
sued him as far as the defile of Acfou, and re-
turn'd with a great many oxen, sheep, and other
cattel. After Comcha's flight, and retreating
into the woods, they set fire to his houses, and
pillag'd and ruin'd all his villages. And as
wine was absolutely necessary for this people,
their men, women, and little children being so
addicted to it, that when they were on their
knees, they entreated that some might be
poured on their sepulchres with 'em, and order'd
that after their deaths their bodies
should be wash'd with wine, and their coffins
made with wine-tree: for this consideration

[†] A town on the side of the Caucasus of Georgia near the Persian border.

[‡] A town in Georgia, belonging to the Prince Comcha.

Book V. that they might do 'em the more damage, and entirely ruin 'em, the vine-trees were distributed among the troops, who rooted up all of 'em, which they had with so great difficulty cultivated; they also cut down the other trees, and peel'd several. They afterwards raz'd the great edifices of this country, and especially the temples, where they paid their adorations, which were so disagreeable to God. And what is remarkable is, that in the winter of the preceding year, which was that of the Leopard, Timur destroy'd the Guebros of India, and ruin'd their temples at Deli; and upon the Ganges; and that this winter, which was the year of the Horse, he was carrying on the same war or religion in Georgia, and razing the temples of the Georgians. The poet says, that he had one foot on the eastern frontiers of India, and the other upon the western limits of the country of Arran.

CHAP. VI.

Timur's return from the defile of Comcha.

TIMUR staid near a month in this defile and his soldiers had made themselves masters of all the mountains, after having slain infinite number of brave Oznacours, whose prince Comcha was retir'd to so great a distance, no advice cou'd be got of the place he was and the enemy's country was entirely ruin besides all this, the cold was very violent, and the ways were clog'd up with snow, so that horses had nothing to eat but the barks of trees and even several of 'em died with them.

Wh

The history of Timur-Bec.

Whereupon Timur resolv'd to return, he repair'd
the army of Cyrus, and came back with glory to
Caspah, where he enter'd his imperial tent
with the acclamations of all the lords and prin-
ces of his court. The joy at his presence was
augmented by the birth of a son to the Mirza
Calil Sultan; this young prince was nam'd Bak-
kul; and several days were spent in feasting
gold and precious stones upon him: the great
banquets and plays, accompany'd with music,
to celebrate this happy birth. Soon after a se-
vere order was issu'd out, for prosecuting those
in a council of war, who had not behav'd them-
selves as they ought in the battle fought by the
Mirza Miran Chah against the Georgians, in the
neighborhood of Alengie. The Mirza, Chahroc
was commission'd to see to the putting this or-
der in execution: who having examin'd all the
facts, in council with the Emirs of the Divan,
they presented a memorial to the emperor, with
the several interrogatories, informations, and
answers upon which Timur order'd the punish-
ment due by the laws of Genghiz Can to be ex-
ecuted. The bastinado was given to Abdalla
Abbas, and Mehemed Caglan: Timur
Hassani Aperi, who had fled first, was order'd
to be put to death; but the Chah Zadeh, the
emperor's children, obtain'd the same
reprieve'd after the bastinado had been
inflicted, and each of these three was fin'd
a sum of money. They also fin'd the
Mirza Miran Chah, for
some two hundred, and took away
horses, which horses were distributed
the foot-soldiers.

Timur bestow'd many favors on
the Mirza Aboubek, because of the
had shewn in the fight, when he

The history of Timur-Bec.

At the same time the prince Baglan Aglen was likewise put to death, for having committed some considerable fault, very unworthy of his birth, in several skirmishes. His son was treated in the same manner, and his regiment, officers, and domestics were given to Roustem Boulan.

C H A P. VII.

Continuation of the history of the Mirza Roustem, who was gone from Dgiann to Chiraz. A great crime committed by his eldest brother, the Mirza Pir Mehemed.

WE have said before that the emperor had sent the Mirza Roustem from Dgiann to Chiraz, and that he was accompany'd in his journey by the Emir Seyindgic at the head of two thousand horse. They happily arriv'd at Chiraz by the road of Yezd and Abreekan, where the Mirza Pir Mehemed gave him a handsome reception and a sumptuous banquet, in the garden of Sahagh, and presented him with a veil and a hundred thousand Dinars. Some time after the Mirza Roustem, accompany'd by Emir Seyindgic, his nephew Hassan Jai and Hassan Jagadaoui, who were at Chiraz, to the road to Bagdad, according to the emperor's order, and pass'd by Behbahan and Fousa.

* In Constantinople towards Bagdad: the same with Camich Dgiann.

† A royal garden at Chiraz, different from that at Tauris.

The history of Timur-Bec.

121

ing at Chiraz, to govern that city, the Emirs Chap, 7.
Said Mirza, and Alibek Aisa, a relation of the
Emir, at Timur had commanded him,
the Mirza Mehemed, who had the order or
duty to depart at the head of this army, delay'd
his departure, till a long time after, then pre-
tending sickness, he return'd to Chiraz by No-
bendgian to Choukistan.

This did not deter the Mirza Rouslem with
his Emirs from ravaging Lorasterec, in the coun-
try of Ramhermez, from whence he brought a
great quantity of booty: he made the same haste
in passing by the village of the bridge, call'd
Dexoi: he pillag'd in the plain of Dombar
all the subjects of the princes Saki and Eebli.
From thence he went to plunder Bad' and Bac-
fi, whence he brought away several slaves; and
in the month of Jumadul second, he arriv'd at
Mendeli. The Emir Ali Calander, the gover-
nor of the town of Bagdad, put himself
in a posture of defence, but he being repuls'd
at the first onset, they seiz'd on eleven of his
chiefest heads they cut off, and then per-
mitted the soldiers to pillage the place.

March
1400.

In the mean while the Mirza Pir Mahomed,
who under pretence of sickness had turn'd back
from Chiraz, where by the instigation of
some Tatars, who had lifted themselves in
rebellion, he fell into some dangerous snares, and
was made to swallow poisons and medicines,
of which he was utterly ignorant of.
The Emir Said Beriaz, governor of Chiraz, be-
ing inform'd of it by some of his young men,
Beriaz immediately made a swift march with

A town of Larchan, long. 86. lat. 31.

Town of Chiraz.

A town of Arabia, dependent on Bagdad.

The history of Timur-Bec.

the matter, and learnt from his very office the whole of it, even before the King's face. Upon these incontestable proofs the Emir Seid imprison'd Mir Mehemed, took the tower for treas, and lock'd himself in the castle, to guard him, leaving Akbar Kisa to the city to govern it in his stead; and he sent advice to court what had pass'd at Chiraz. The messengers the Emir Seid sent at court, on this to Timur in the winter quarters at Carabagh, who immediately sent the Emir Allahdad to Shiraz, to prosecute those wicked Tadjicks, who had lock'd the Mirza to make the poisons, that they might be put to death: he was likewise order'd to set the Mirza Boudism upon the throne of Persia in the room of his black brother, whom he was to bring bound to court. Accordingly the Emir Allahdad, at his arrival at Chiraz, put to death Moulana Mehemed Calife, Seid Dgerrab and Boudism Corasani, who were convicted, having taught the Mirza how to compose the poisons; he cut off Boudism's legs, and put in his arms to be cut off, and put in prison Moham Giza, Muzib Cherborder, and Chaharbadrid, who were accus'd of having been concern'd in the same crime. Allahdad then sent the petor's letters patent to the Mirza Boudism, Irat-Arabi, by which he was install'd in government of the kingdom of Syria: the prince receiv'd 'em at Mrodeli, after he gain'd the victory over Mir Ali Gahardan: soon as he had read the emperor's orders, he departed for Chiraz with the Emirs Hassan and Hassan Jagadaoul, who accompany'd return'd back; and the Emir Sevindgic took road to Chepchemal, for Carabagh. As the army lay then encamp'd

The history of Timur-Bec.

113

Mir-Ras Chander, who had fled from Men-
gus, arriv'd at Bagdad, gave an account
to the Sultan Ahmed of what pass'd: this prince
was into a great inquietude, and order'd the gates
to be shut, and the bridge of the city to be de-
stroy'd.

About that time there happen'd a very remark-
able affair, of great service to Timur. This
monarch having given the government of the
city to one nam'd Cherouan, this governor im-
mediately gave himself up to the getting of mo-
ney at any rate: he exacted great sums from
Chamfeddin Dehdar, and other principal men
of the country: he even tax'd the go-
vernors of Haviza, and which was worse than
all this, he revolted, and with a thousand horse
well equip'd went to Bagdad, where he offer'd
his services to Sultan Ahmed, who gave him
a handsome pension, and he stay'd there, but
afterwards he return'd to him the Sultan's prin-
cipal treasure, and to that purpose secretly gave
him considerable sums, from ten thousand to three
or hundred thousand Dinars of Bagdad. This
happen'd very unluckily to this prince, for the
extravagance of the sums paid to each of these
rebels, and the neglect of his officers, who
were put into the hands of Chander, who
was the Sultan's officers, who present
himself at a time when the Sultan's Sol-
diers were about the gates of the city, so that
the Sultan's army greatly increased his riches,
and he was a sum of ten thousand
Dinars, in the name of Rais, which
was immediately caus'd to be arrested.

114

A town in the province of Chander.

115

The history of Ezzou-Bec.

As he was with his own hand. In the mean while he had already sent Cherouan, with Goussou-Baderi, Mansour, and other lords, to ravage Oirat; he immediately dispatch'd Tadjah-Batchi, with orders to the Egipts to slay Cherouan: which was accordingly executed, and his head brought to Bagdad, where the Sultan in less than eight days had receiv'd near two thousand of his slaves. He then order'd the Egiptian soldiers, who had nurs'd him, to smother Cherouan from his infancy; which was done, and he was ther'd by a pillow laid over his face. He then slew with his own hand most part of the ladies and officers of his household, whom he order'd to be cast into the Egipts: and afterwards he shut himself up in the Seraglio, forbidding any one to come to him; and every day the Bavertchis, or stewards, brought him his dinner, they knock'd at the door, deliver'd it, and then return'd without entering. About seven days after this manner, and order'd six of his most faithful servants to convey secretly six horses out of his palace, on the other side the Egipts; which they did at night in a boat, and with them they went into the country subject to the Egipts of the Turcomans. In the mean while the Egipts, as usual, carry'd the king's dinner to the Seraglio, and deliver'd it to a eunuch who was in the secret, that he might have no knowledge of the Sultan's absence. This eunuch, Cara Yousef, and persuaded him to send with his troops to pillage the towns. When they were come there, he went on the other side of the water for of Cara Yousef: the Sultan cross'd in a boat, and came to his palace; and much ready money, stuffs, arms, Arabian

gold bells, and other riches, to Cara-Yousef and Chap. 7.
 those that those Turcomans were content
 with what they had got. The Sultan would by
 no means permit em to insult the city; but as
 he very much fear'd being attack'd by the army
 of Zagatai, he sent out spys on all sides, who
 gave him a true information of the condition of
 Timur's army.

In the month of Zilhadge 801, Timur being July 1400
 march'd to Sebalis, the Sultan of Bagdad
 order'd that if the formidable army of this
 conqueror should again enter Nacolia and Syria,
 all the passages were to be block'd up, which he
 must be oblig'd to favor, by force. He
 therefore order'd to leave 10000 men governor of
 the city of Bagdad, whence he design'd to go
 out with Cara-Yousef, his wives and children
 and his jewels, with whatever he could carry
 away from thence. As that was the com-
 mon opinion of the soldiers, they march'd to A-
 leppo, where they were commanded there
 to oppose his army to oppose his passag-
 e; but those of Aleppo had
 deserted to the Sultan and the rest, perceiving the
 road, and came to Nacolia. As they were
 march'd towards the city, they were met by a
 party of Timur's army, who were sent to
 oppose them.

ON A. P. VIII.
In the year 1391 in relation to the affair of Georgia

AFTER the winter was over, that is, in the beginning of the year of the Green Tiger, left the winter quarters of Carabagh, he assembled a diet, where to the princes, the Emirs, the lords and others, he did not fail of coming. He held his court in a place, in which it was unanimously resolv'd that the war against the infidels of Georgia was agreeable to all interests, and for the religion, which ought to be the principal object of war, as for the increase of the power of the Army, and the conjuncture of the present affairs. The usual feast was made after the diet; and the banquet, which was very sumptuous, was a company of wine, and lots of plays and Timur, erected by a thousand libes, divided the treasures among the Chahs, the Emirs, and all the soldiers, and gave horses to those who desired them. He afterwards inform'd him of the quarters of Georgia, where the prince had been, and had 'em very exactly let him know in writing, and then imploring the divine assistance departed from Carabagh, taking the road to Georgia, the country of Malek Ghori. Ten days he arriv'd at the plain of Herd; he encamp'd, and gave audience to the prince of Arzendgian upon the Empire had already gain'd his majesty's two good services. This prince kiss'd before Timur; made a discourse to

The history of Timur-Bec.

of his property and offered him
Timur being willing to distinguish
him by very particular favors, he gave him
a vest, a cap and a belt, but he further honored
him with a horse-tail, a standard and two
drums, which are the signs of sovereignty,
and then he permitted him to return to
Zendjibar, after having given him instructions
concerning the application and use of the
power in the government of the city in the present
conjuncture; and expressly recommended to him
to use circumspection to preserve his frontiers
from the inroads of the Ottomans, to which
purpose he ought to be vigilant and cautious, and al-
lial to his father, and neglect nothing to pro-
tect himself from his enemy's artifices, who are
very subtle and dangerous.

Timur-Bec, after having received these
orders, returned to his capital, and was
received with great honors, and an express to
his father, to send to the camp.

The son of Sultan Ahmed Ge-
lan, the challenger, acquitted himself of his
mission; but the king of Georgia

sent him a very beautiful gift, and
sent him back without obtaining any thing

in account to Timur-Bec, who
was very much surprised.

Timur-Bec, after having received
the baggage, he sent his

troops to enter the
country, and at the same
time the soldiers

ruined the houses of the
people, and

spoiled the things, and
upon this country,
and for relief

where

...at the forests of the Mountains ...
...into the deserts, and at a vast distance
...about the uninhabited mountains:
...the greater part of the Georgians of Georgia,
...feeling themselves reduced to the most ex-
...tremity, submitted: they came in a humble
...manner to the gate of the imperial pavilion,
...where they begged quarter and pardon of the
...emperor Timur, making divers excuses to avert
...his vengeance. When our troops had reduced
...this country, they razed the temples and mona-
...stirs, where the Christians had for a long time
...exercised their religion. They raised altars
...and mosques, in which they proclaimed the Faith,
...and read the prayers of the musulman religion
...with the usual ceremony, to the glory of Allah.

CHAP. IX.

Timur marches against prince Jan Beg of

THE Khan, the commander and ruler of

the country of ...

...the departed with

...of Mogran, and in

...the deserts, the deserts

...all the country, pillaged

a considerable booty

...Khan ...

...player.

his mountain and fortress; and with an entire
 multitude came before the emperor. In
 mean while our soldiers ravag'd the villages,
 burnt the houses, and slew every one they met;
 they carry'd away the Georgians' riches, and
 while they enrich'd themselves in this way,
 they were laying treasures of merit in
 other. Afterwards they return'd to join
 baggage, and Timur took by the way of Se
 the Seid Celi, son of the Khan Al Be
 to make incursions in other parts of Georgia;
 order'd the Emp Ghan Chan to go with
 with the troops of the left wing, and the
 body, commanded by Timur, march'd
 where it was join'd by all the troops
 out to make incursions, from
 whence they return'd, having winn
 ing away a great number of horses
 and, to mortify the Georgians the more,
 destroy'd all the standing corn, and ruin'd
 their temples and other edifices. At the mouth
 of the debile was a fortress nam'd Bil, which
 very high and difficult of access; nevertheless
 an army was no sooner arriv'd there than they
 order'd to besiege it; and the siege and conquest
 of the place were almost perform'd at the same
 time. Having taken it, they raz'd it, lest it should
 be of use to the enemy on another occasion;
 thence the army went to the camp in the
 north Georgia; and Timur sent the Emp
 all parts in search of king Ghourghin,
 like wolves and chacals, wander'd as a
 band in uninhabited woods and mountains,
 but not being able to find him, they re-
 join the imperial camp with a great
 spoils, and some of Ghourghin's officers
 they had taken. Timur at length
 cross'd the river of Cyrus, and di

camp on the other bank, loaded with good
 forage, and pleas'd with his success.

FROM THE HISTORY OF TIMUR-BEG.

1470. JULY 30. 1473. MONDAY.

C H A P. X.

The capture of the fort of Zerit, and the flight of Suanit.

DURING these transactions, the Queen
 brought advice that a great number of
 Ozbegs were retir'd into the castle of Zerit,
 situate on the ridge of a narrow mountain, which
 had never been taken by any conqueror. On
 this, Timur, to whom nothing appear'd impos-
 sible, march'd with resolution to the siege of
 that place, and order'd it to be block'd. His
 cannon and battering rams were got ready; and
 after several attacks necessary at a siege, a ge-
 neral assault was given seven days after Timur's
 arrival. The fort was taken sword in hand,
 and raz'd the same day. After putting all the
 Georgians to the sword, then they went out
 to make incursions, and brought a vast num-
 ber of prisoners bound, whom Timur
 order'd to be put to death. Amongst them were
 not few Mahometans. They then receiv'd
 advice that King George was in
 the town of Suanit. Timur order'd the roads
 to this town to be cutten down in writings;
 that the troops which were sent out on in-
 cursions, should return to the camp. He left
 half of the army with the baggage; and the
 fugitive display'd march'd with the rest.
 George, who had his spys about him,
 perceiv'd Timur's approach; he went out of
 Suanit,

The history of Timur Beg

and fled towards Abkhaze. The
troops, at their arrival at Samarkand, carry'd it
upon the first assault, and then went in pursuit of
Chingishin, several of whose officers they slew;
but this prince, reduc'd to the greatest misery,
cross'd the rivers of Aigar and Corlan, and had
the good fortune to save himself from the dangers
wherewith he was surrounded. Then seeing
himself, in a manner, ready for the slaughter,
he found it was not for so weak a prince as him-
self to protect the son of the Sultan of Bag-
dad, against the powerful emperor Timur;
whereupon he oblig'd Taber to seek an asylum
in the country of the Ottomans, whither he had
sent the Sultan Ahmed his father was likewise
sent. As length Chingishin sent to the court of
Timur an ambassador nam'd Khond, who was
known to him the great misery and calamity
wherewith his master was reduc'd; deplored the
loss of his state, and destruction of his coun-
try, and with his face turn'd towards the
emperor, he said to the emperor with all
humiliation, that he was reduc'd from a mi-
serable and vanquish'd prince. "I have seen
the evil success of the methods I have un-
fortunately taken; I have tasted the fruits of
my imprudence, and the bitterness of the pe-
nishment I have merited: but if the great
emperor, whose generosity and victory,
may venture to say, surpasses the fury of a
lion in battle, will take pity upon me, who
am his servant, and confess my fault, and
willing to pardon me for what is past, will
grant me my life, I will not only be int
obedient to him, but my life shall always

* A town of Georgia on the frontiers of Persia.
* Rivers of Caspian.

"I will take great care Chapter 23
"to instruct the Mussulmans in any manner;
"and moreover I consent to pay the annual tri-
"bute to the imperial treasury, likewise pro-
"mising to send what number of troops his ma-
"jesty shall require into his service, at the time
"appointed."

CHAP. XI

*Timur marches against the Georgian prince
Aivani.*

TIMUR, upon hearing this discourse of
Ghourghin's ambassador, was troubled
with the condition of this prince, and did not
doubt the truth of what he said; considering
the great misery and necessity to which he was
reduced, his sincere confession of his fault, and
his repentance for having dar'd to give protec-
tion to the Sultan Taher. These considerations
join'd with the promises he had made, and con-
firm'd with an oath, to be always ready in the
emperor's service, and punctually to pay the an-
nual tribute, caus'd Timur to grant him the
aid he demanded; who then went out of
Caspia, and march'd towards the lands in-
habited by Prince Aivani, one of the most power-
ful princes of Georgia. The soldiers having
entered the country, ravag'd and pillag'd all they
met; where there was no army to oppose, but
they dispos'd themselves up and down, razing
the towns and castles, and destroying every
thing with fire and sword. After they had
thus laid this country waste, they pass'd into
that of Cara Calcanic*, the inhabitants of which, given

History of Timur Beg

which arm'd with black bucklers, were skilful mountaineers, and good horsemen. They were not treated with more mildness than the others; for their country was ravag'd, and the places, good whither they were retir'd, their houses burnt, and themselves put to the sword; after our soldiers had got what spoils they cou'd from 'em, which were very considerable.

CHAPTER XII

Timur returns from Georgia.

TIMUR being satisfy'd with the conquests he had gain'd, and having reveng'd himself on the Georgians, gave orders for his return. After several days march he encamp'd at Yellac Mencoul; but having advice that the Georgians were again assembled in a place nam'd *Shirvan* in Georgia, he sent the Emir Chell *Shirvan* thither with his troops; and being willing to be in person at the execution of all important affairs, he decamp'd some days after, and leaving the baggage, march'd to *Parafcher*. In five days he made himself master of seven fortresses of the Georgians, which he caus'd to be raz'd, after having slain an infinite number of these infidels; and from thence he return'd with all his army to *Mencoul*, where he staid several days.

About this time there came ambassadors from an European prince, who brought with 'em the son of the Emir Amurat, the Chaghan emperor, whom they had taken prisoner: and by the intercession of the principal Emirs of *Tartary* they were admitted into Timur's camp, whom they made known the high

master of his actions, and his de-
fire to form an alliance with him, which
he thought would bring great honor. Timur re-
ceived the ambassadors with all manner of civi-
lity, granted what they desired, and after
having given them some presents, dismissed them; and
they returned by the way of Trebizond.
pleas'd with the honors they had receiv'd at
court. The army encamp'd two months in
the meadow of Noul, that the horses might
have some rest & their fatigue, and to wait
the arrival of thoirs and troops which were
dispers'd up and down the country.

C A P. XIII.

Reasons which mov'd Timur to attack the city of Ancyra, capital of Asia.

PHILLOSOPHERS tell us that the re-
lation betwixt a king and his kingdom is the
same as betwixt the soul and body; for when the
soul and body are in perfect health; but when
contrary happens, it is attack'd with
pests, and at length falls into corruption.
When a king neglects to do his duty, his
kingdom falls into decay. This moral may with
reason be apply'd to the case of the Ottoman
empire, under the Sultan of Egypt; for these
two princes, being in their power, committed
several misdeeds, which drew upon the

* Capital of the kingdom of the same name, in Asia.
See Memoirs of the Rich. King, Book 30. ch. 43.

The history of Timur-Bec.

Timur's anger, and caused the destruction of their country and the debilitation of their subjects. Timur being irritated at their proceedings, (tho' but newly returned from a toilsome campaign, and notwithstanding the great distance of these Saltan's dominions, did not fail of undertaking the conquest of their empires, which by the grace of God he brought into subjection: so that all the cities, towns and villages of these great countries were pillaged by his soldiers: which calamity was brought upon the poor innocent people through the bad conduct of their princes:

But to come to a particular detail of this history: we must know that Il-durum^{*} Bajazer, Sultan of the Ottomans, who was then emperor of the Ottomans, surpassed most of his predecessors in power, and the vastness of his dominions: he had brought into subjection a great part of the country of Roum^{*}, to wit, the provinces of Aidine, Mentecha, Kermian, and Caramania, which his ancestors had never been able to do: and he had likewise extended his dominions the space of four months journey to Europe. After he had taken prisoner Kara Osmán, son of the Cadi Burhaneddin, prince of Sebaste, and had put to death the Cadi, brought an army into the field, and having made himself master of Sebaste, he pushed his conquests towards Malatia, a town on the Euphrates, and bordering upon the province of Aleppo. He even besieged and took the city of Malatia, which had been long time dependent on Syria. He made

^{*} Il-durum signifies lightning or thunder.

Emir Malata governor of Schaste, to whose favour he gave the government of Malatia. At length, as if he cou'd find no one to dispute his conquests, he return'd victorious and loaded with spoils to the seat of his empire. He had a great number of troops and officers belonging to his household, and among the rest, near twelve hundred dog-keepers. His magnificence, riches, and power, render'd him so proud, that he forgot the sentence which teaches us, that God, the creator of the universe, hath made those who are superior to them who pride themselves in their strength. He had the boldness to send an ambassador to Taharten, to summon him to his court, and send the tributes of Arzendgan, Erzerum, and their dependences, to his treasury; which order was in such haughty terms, that it did not induce him to do. Taharten, however, advis'd him to report; and Timur was very much surpris'd at the designs of this ambitious prince who was not ignorant that Taharten was under his protection: whereupon he resolv'd to write a letter to him, to endeavour to bring him to a sensible sense of his faults, and friendship.

C H A P. XIV.

Timur's letter to the Cæsar Room, that is, the Ottoman emperor.

TIMUR commanded a secretary to be call'd to him, whom he order'd to write a letter to Begum Bajazet, mix'd with counsel and reproaches, hoping by that means to make him reflect upon what he had done. The secretary began the letter in an eloquent manner,

The history of Timur-Bec.

with praises to God, and blessings on Mahomet he made use of this passage of the Alcoran for the subject of his letter, *God blest those princes who know what use they shou'd make of their power, and go not beyond the bounds prescrib'd 'em*; and he continu'd it with expressions which were as daggers to the heart of Bajazet, and ought to have shewn him his duty. The letter was as follows.

To the emperor of Roum, Bajazet the younger.

“ **A**FTER the usual compliments, *Know, that by the infinite grace of God, the greatest part of Asia is in subjection to our officers, which we conquer'd by our strength, and the terror of our arms. Know likewise that the most powerful Sultans of the earth are obedient to our commands; that we govern our dominions by our self, and have even constrain'd fortune to take care of our empire; that our armys are extended from one sea to the other, and our guard consists of sovereign kings, who form a hedge before our gate. Where is the monarch who dares resist us? Where is the potentate who does not glory in being of the number of our courtiers? But for thee, whose true origin terminates in a Turcoman sailor, as every one knows, it wou'd be well, since the ship of thy unfathomable ambition has suffer'd shipwreck in the abyss of self-love, if thou wou'dst lower the sails of thy rashness, and cast the anchor of repentance in the port of sincerity, which is*

* This metaphorical way of expression is very usual among the Orientals: but it sounds more proper in this because of the race of Bajazet being related to sailors.

" the port of safety : left by the tempest of our
 " tempest, you shou'd perish in the sea of the
 " punishment which you merit. But as we have
 " command, that in obedience to the precept of
 " the Alcoran, which orders us to wage war
 " with the enemies of the Mussulman laws, you
 " have undertaken a vigorous war with the Eu-
 " ropeans; this consideration hath hinder'd us
 " from sending any insults in the lands which
 " are subject to you : and the reflection that
 " your country is the bulwark of the Mussul-
 " mans, hath oblig'd us to leave it in a flour-
 " ishing condition ; for fear the passage of our
 " armies into it shou'd raise a division among
 " the inhabitants, and cause the Mussulmans
 " to be disquieted, and the infidels to rejoice.
 " Then take care of your self, and endeavor by
 " your good conduct to preserve the dominions
 " of your ancestors, nor suffering for the future
 " your ambitious feet, to wander out of the li-
 " mits of your power, which is but small.
 " Check your proud extravagances, lest the cold
 " wind of hatred shou'd extinguish the flam-
 " bean of peace. You may remember the pre-
 " cept of Mahomer, to let the Turks remain in
 " peace, while they are quiet : don't seek to
 " wage war with us, which no one ever dar'd
 " to do, and prosper'd. The devil certainly
 " inspires you to ruin your self. Tho you
 " have been in some considerable battles in the
 " mountains of Natolia, and have gain'd advan-
 " tages upon the Europeans ; it was only thro
 " the prayers of the prophet, and the blessings
 " of the Mahometan religion of which you
 " make profession : don't be proud at these
 " advantages, nor attribute 'em to your own
 " valor. Believe me, you are but a pismire :
 " don't seek to fight against the elephants ; for
 " they'll

they'll crush you under their feet. The dove which rises up against the eagle destroys it self. Shall a petty prince, such as you are, contend with us? But your rodomontades are not extraordinary; for a Turcoman never spake with judgment. If you don't follow our counsels, you will repent it. These are the advices we have to give you: do you behave your self as you think fit."

This letter was seal'd with the imperial signet, and deliver'd to Bajazet by eunuchs who knew how to carry on the intrigues of princes. When they were come to Bajazet, they presented him the letter, acquainting him with the reasons of their coming, and their master's pretensions: but pride had taken too deep root in the breast of the Ottoman, for a letter, or the words of an ambassador, to have any effect upon him: he gave 'em therefore a very haughty answer. "It is a long time, said he, since we have been desirous of carrying on a war with you. God be thank'd, our desire has had its effect, and we have taken up a resolution to march against you at the head of a formidable army. If you don't advance against us, we will come to seek you; and pursue you as far as Tauris and Sultania. We shall then see in whose favor heaven will declare; who of us will be rais'd by victory, and who abas'd by a shameful defeat."

CHAP. XV.

Timur marches to Sebaste, and takes that city.

THE envoys, at their return from Natolia, gave an account to the emperor's officers of Bajazet's haughty answer. Whereupon Timur, being incens'd against this Turcoman, caus'd his ensigns to be display'd, in order to make war on him; and he immediately march'd towards Natolia. Being arriv'd at Avenic, he met the Emir Allandad, who had been sent to Chiraz to bring from thence the Mirza Pir Mehemed bound like a criminal; which he accordingly did. Timur order'd that the Mirza should be interrogated by the council of war; and that after his prosecution, he should be punish'd according to his deserts. Accordingly, after judgment was given, he receiv'd the blows of the battinado, order'd by the laws call'd Yafaz, after which his chains were taken off, and himself set at liberty. In pursuante of the same laws, the Cheik Zade Berid, and Mobarec Coja, who were then in irons, were put to death, for having corrupted the Mirza, and taught him magic. Then the emperor sent to Sultania the empress Sarai Mulk Canum, Ganzade, and the wives of the princes his sons, with the Mirza Oloucbek, and the other young princes of the imperial household, under the care of the Mirza Omat, and some Euns. After that he caus'd the great imperial standard to be display'd, and march'd at the head of his army. At his arrival at Erzeron, he was saluted by Taharten prince of Arzendgian. Two days after he decamp'd, and march'd

He march'd beyond Arzendgian, to enter the frontiers of the country of Roum, or Natolia, which was then subject to the Ottomans.

Sept. 1.
1400.

The first of Muharrem 803, Timur enter'd the country of the Ottomans, and march'd against Sebaste. When he was come before the city, he encamp'd upon an eminence, to view its condition and situation; and the troops encamp'd round about it. He saw the place full of men lifting up their heads to heaven, and singing and rejoicing with musical instruments in their hands: the walls, whose marble foundations were at the bottom of a ditch full of water, lifted up their battlements to the very clouds: and the soldiers in garison, arm'd with charaxes, rais'd a great cry towards heaven. Then advice was brought that the vanguard of Bajazet's army, commanded by his son Kerichtchi, and Temourtach, one of the greatest Emirs of the Ottoman empire, who had been sent to Sebaste, having learnt the march of Timur's army towards that city, were fled, and retir'd into the very heart of Natolia. The Emirs Solyman Chah, Geban Chah, and others, were order'd to pursue 'em with expedition; which they did, and came up with 'em beyond Casarea in Cappadocia, where they bravely attack'd 'em, and cut 'em in pieces. After which, they made inroads, pillaging all the places near Cappadocia. They then retir'd to the imperial camp before Sebaste, laden with the spoils of the Ottomans.

The city of Sebaste had walls of an extraordinary strength, being built of free-stone from the battlements to the very foundations, and each stone was three cubits long, and one thick. The wall was twenty cubits in height, ten in depth at the foot, and six at the top. There were seven gates, and those which open'd were

The Siege of Timor-Bec.

193

Chapter

of iron, it was built by Aladin Kiecobade, and surrounded on the east, north and south sides, with a great ditch full of water; so that it was impossible to sap the walls on those sides, for they had no stones sapp'd a cubit than the water enter'd: but it was not difficult to sap on the west side. The place was commanded by Mustafa, with four thousand horse, who prepared to make a vigorous defence, being furnished with all sorts of arms and machines for war. The besiegers rais'd a platform higher than the town, over-against the gate of Irac, upon which they planted their machines to shoot stones. There were Arades, Mangenios, and Sifens: they likewise prepar'd battering rams to beat down the walls. On the west side the sappers kept continually at work; while arrows were discharg'd from both sides, which did great deal of damage. After the siege had continu'd eighteen days, the violence of the battering rams, and the great stones which were shot, began to shake the walls, and make breaches. On the other hand, the sappers had work'd with so much diligence, that the towers were propt only by rails, which Timur order'd should be set on fire; and so the towers fell. This awak'n'd terror into the hearts of the besieg'd, who perceiv'd that the troops would soon enter the city, and take it by assault. chas'd Mustafa the governor out of it;

* A Mahometan king.

* The Arabian history of M. Vazir says, that Solymen, son of an Arab, of the emperor of Bagdad, was governor of Sebaste; which is chab. a mistake.

* Machines to cast fire.

* Machines to beat stones.

* A kind of battering ram.

and

and the Cherijs, Cadis, and doctors, full of
 hope, came to cast themselves at the emperor's
 feet, begging quarter and pardon for them and
 the gailons. Their prayers mingled with the
 cries of the women and children, soften'd Tami-
 nur's heart; he granted quarter to all the Mus-
 limans of the city, on paying the right of am-
 gessy; but order'd that all the Armenians and
 other Christians, shou'd be made slaves. And as
 the major part of the castle, which had so
 stubbornly defended the place for Bajazet, were
 Armenians, he gave orders that some of the
 horse shou'd be divided among the Tatars of
 the army, and flung into pits, and then cover'd
 with earth, to serve as an example to those
 who shou'd follow their steps. He afterwards
 caus'd the walls of Sebastea to be raz'd down.

During the siege, advice was brought that
 Sultan Ahmed Gelair had fled from Bagdad
 with Cara Yousef, prince of the Turcomans, in-
 to Natolia. This oblig'd Timur to order some
 squadrons of horse to go in pursuit of 'em; which
 they accordingly did, and overtook their bag-
 gage, which they pillag'd, and brought away
 the Sultane's Dilchads, eldest son of
 Cara Yousef, with his wife and daughter. But
 he sav'd himself from our hands, and being come
 safe before Bajazet, our troops return'd to the
 imperial camp.

It is to be observ'd, that Timur-Lar's

The History of Timur-Bec.

CHAP. XVI.

Timur marches to Abulestan.

WHILE Timur was employ'd in the siege of Sebaste, some robbers of Abulestan, which is the country of Zalcaderia, were fondling as to come and steal away the horses of our soldiers, who were then busy'd in the siege. For which reason, after the taking of the city, Timur march'd to Abulestan, to revenge himself on these robbers. He then sent the lord Taharten to Arzendgian to guard his frontiers: and the Mirza Charoc set out in quality of chief of the scouts, accompanied by the amir Solyman Chah, and a select troop, which compos'd the vanguard. The name of the soldiers were register'd: and they had orders not to abandon the Mirza one moment. They soon arriv'd at Abulestan, from whence, on advice of their march, a great number of Turcomans fled into the mountains and deserts. The Mirza pursu'd 'em so briskly, that he overtook 'em: these miserable people seeing themselves closely press'd, endeavor'd to save their lives by fighting: but after a weak defence, they were all routed and slain, as a punishment for their rash enterprizes. The Mirza return'd to the imperial camp laden with spoils, and a great many horses, mules, oxen and sheep. Afterwards Timur sent a courier to Melaria, to summon the inhabitants to submit to him. Mustafa's son, who was governor of it, blinded with ignorance, which is an inseparable quality of the Turcomans, and especially of those of Natolia, imprison'd the messenger,

messenger. Timur on this was incens'd against the
 traitor, and march'd towards that place. On
 the first advice these cowards had of the march
 of the imperial standard, Multala's son fled out
 of the place with all his party. Timur at his ar-
 rival at Malatia, carry'd it the same day. The
 Georgians and Armenians were made slaves;
 but quarter was given to the Mussulmans, after
 they had paid the tribute for an amnesty, which
 money was distributed among the soldiers. Ti-
 mur order'd the Emir Goman Chah to go, with
 other Emirs, to make incursions into the country of
 Malatia: he harangu'd 'em, and with the most
 charming eloquence set before 'em the excellence
 of good warriors above other men; he told
 'em that they ought never to surrender to the
 enemy, to take from 'em all chance of recovering
 the war; and he spoke with a great display of
 force of the punishment they ought to expect
 upon those who after pardon us'd hostilities. Af-
 ter this discourse, he chose out of each Roman
 some good soldiers, whom he gave to the Emirs
 to strengthen their bands of the army; and then
 he dismiss'd 'em. According to these orders they
 departed, and ravag'd the country on all sides,
 not stopping in one place: they gave no quarter
 to any one, and left no one labouring unmil-
 lag'd; so that from Malatia to the castle of
 Kakhta, they made themselves masters of a
 great many places, some by fair means, and o-
 thers by force; and after having constrain'd the
 natural princes of the country to submit to Ti-
 mur, they return'd with a great quantity of
 riches, and join'd the imperial camp at Malatia,
 the government of which Timur gave to Goman

The History of Timur-Bec.

Of a Turcoman. Thus the frontiers of the two kingdoms of Natolia and Syria were in a short time brought to subjection to Timur, whose fame spread it self thro all parts of the world: so that there was not one prince who was not struck with terror at the rumor of his conquests.

CHAP. XVII.

The reasons of Timur's carrying his arms into Syria and Mesopotamia.

MAHOMET has told us, that when God resolves to destroy any one, he deprives him of his strength, sends from him the method he should pursue, to protect himself from his destiny: and permits him to commit negligent actions, which become the causes of his destruction, that the will of God may not fail of an accomplishment. The truth of these words was apparent in the fate of the country of Syria; for the governors of the cities of this kingdom, being blinded with excessive pride, turned from the ways of peace and justice, and committed actions as infamous as extraordinary, violating the rights of nations, and trampling upon the laws. Thus in the year 795, Timur, having made himself master of Bagdad, and conquering the Irak Arabi, sent to the Sultan Beybars a Koutab, or ambassador, a doctor of Laws, whole learning, birth and genius distinguished him from the chief persons of the empire, as we have said before. This Cheik being arrived at Cairo,

As. Dom.
1395

*Book III.
Chap. 2

The History of Timur-Bec.

son Farrudge was the crooked branch of an old tree. He mounted his father's throne, but a child, no one having taught him how ought to live: he had neither tender'd heat nor cold; and was ignorant of policy and the war. In short, the father was of an ill character, and the son without merit.

Timur being informed of Farrudge's rashness, was transported with anger, and the fire of vengeance, which had lain smother'd in his heart since the crimes committed by Barac, did so far exasperate him, that he immediately resolv'd to enter the Sultan's kingdom, and destroy every thing with fire and sword: which resolution he the more easily took up, in that Bajazet, with all his pride and menaces, had not dar'd to appear in the field of battle; and this proud Ottoman quietly saw our army besiege, take, burn, and pillage Sobaste and Malatia, and all the cities and towns of his kingdoms, as far as *Malatia*, without making the least defence. But these are all the hidden decrees of providence.

CHAP. XVIII

Timur marches into the kingdoms of Syria and Egypt.

TH E heroes who are destin'd to execute great affairs, are also endu'd with a certain spirit, which makes them enter appear easy on 'em; and with resolution, ry on on with all the strength and power are possess'd of: so that they easily execute those designs, which every one else accounts impossible. In short, the Sultan of

Syrus was added to his father's crimes, by the arresting and imprisoning of Timur's ambassador; on advice of it, the wrath of our emperor was kindled, so that he resolv'd forthwith to chastise him for his fault: and tho' the execution of this project appear'd impossible to the eyes of all politicians, or at least exceeding dangerous and difficult; yet the boundless zeal of Timur made this great and perillous enterprize appear easy to him. The Emirs and principal lords of the state on their knees remonstrated to him, that it being but a short time since the troops return'd from the long campaign in India, they had repos'd themselves, before they march'd to the Georgian war, where they had been extremely fatigu'd, after re-iterated inroads in the mountains and rocks, and the conquest of the towns of that country; that after this they had march'd to Natolia, and conquer'd Sivas, and all the cities and towns between that and Aleppo, where they had perform'd actions of the greatest valor; that therefore at present the expedition into Syria and Egypt appear'd very toilsom and difficult, as well in that the country was full of castles and fortresses, with lofty walls and impregnable castles, as in that the army of the Syrians was very numerous, good warriors, and provided with arms and every thing necessary to a vigorous defence: for which reasons they besought his majesty to have the goodness to disband the troops, and send back the soldiers into their own countries, to repose themselves for some time; and that afterwards fresh preparations might be made for the greatness of this undertaking.

Timur answer'd them, that victory was a gift of heaven; that liberality beflow'd on the princes was his duty; that the great number of soldiers that he had nothing to do with victory, while he

Timur had often prov'd: he put 'em in mind of the conquests he had gain'd with 'em, and the difficult enterprizes they had gone thro, tho they had believ'd 'em impossible; that it was requisite they shou'd have the greatest ambition; and then he wou'd answer for the success, provided they trusted in God. The Emirs perceiving the emperor firm in his resolution, loaded him with praises and applause; resolving to follow him, and thinking only of the expedition into Syria, and the means of making themselves masters of that kingdom.

Then Timur put his army in order; and causing the brass-drum to be beat, which is a sign of his departure, all the soldiers began their march, every one in his proper post; and they took their road towards Syria.

C H A P. XIX.

The taking of the castles of Bebesna and Antapl.

TIMUR order'd the Mirza Charoc to depart with several great Emirs, as chief of the scouts. Being arriv'd at Behesna*, they camp'd there, where they were soon join'd Timur with the whole army; who encamp'd on an eminence near the castle, to view the situation of the place, which is in a defile where several torrents flow: its walls were high and strong, being built on the ridge of a steep mount. The troops soon made themselves masters of the lower town, which they entirely ravag'd.

* A fortress of Syria, between Aleppo and Malab.

The History of Timur-Bec.

governor of the castle for the Syrians was nam'd Moabek, who relying upon the strength of the castle, put himself in a posture of defence. While Timur was examining the condition of the place, the besieg'd discharg'd a great stone from their machines against the emperor's person, which fell upon the ground near his tent, and roll'd into the very tent. This stir'd up Timur's wrath, who immediately order'd the siege to be form'd, and shar'd the walls among the Tomans of the army, about which they erected twenty machines, and one of 'em upon the very spot where the stone fell. The first stone-cast from this machine struck that of the besieg'd, and broke it to pieces, which was reckon'd as a good omen. Then the Mirza Roustem arriv'd from Chiraz with the Persian army, and join'd the imperial camp. The siege was continu'd, and the sappers follow'd their work close, while the Emirs and other brave men attack'd the place on all sides, and soon made breaches in several parts of the walls, dropping the foundations with stakes. Moabek seeing himself reduc'd thus low, was seiz'd with fear, and resolv'd to surrender: he sent messengers several times to the emperor, to acquaint him with his weakness and want of power; and alledg'd as an excuse for not coming before him, the dread he had of his imperial majesty; beseeching Timur to grant him quarter, which cou'd not in the least prejudice him or his officers. Timur made answer, that he wou'd grant him his liberty, but not till after the taking of the place; because as this castle was esteem'd impregnable, if the army shou'd raise the siege, those who had but little insight into things, would imagine that our soldiers were not able to take it by force; and that a conqueror should be thought to have spar'd his enemy.

The history of Timur-Bec.

The 7th of Sefer 803, they were order'd to set fire to the breaches; and in the towers began to fall: which the besieg'd seeing, they were struck with fear, and Mochel lost all hopes. He sent the Cadi, the Imams and the Cherifs, with all the pearls and curiosities he had, as a present to Timur. They address'd themselves to the Mirza Charoc, whom they besought to be their advocate and protector. These doctors let the emperor know that Mochel was the meanest of his majesty's servants, that he sincerely repented of his fault, humbly demanded pardon for it, and that the emperor wou'd not refuse him the favor of sparing his life. Timur, at Charoc's intercession, pardon'd not only Mochel, but even all the garrison: and the emissaries immediately return'd back, praising the emperor, and making vows for the prince Charoc. As soon as this good news was brought to the city, new gold and silver money was coin'd, and friday prayers read in the name of the invincible Timur.

After this, the army decamp'd and march'd towards Antapa. The walls of this city were exceeding strong, being built of brick and surrounded with a ditch thirty fathoms deep and near seventy broad, with a draw-bridge the counterescarp, which is of stone, has no cover'd way, broad enough for a man to on horseback; which post was assign'd the archers. The Tartar army on their arrival at this place

* A town of Syria near Aleppo.

A Note taken from Arab Chah.

Timur left Calat-Erroum without attacking it; would not do, because this place was very strong, and med, son of Moussa, son of Sahan, made some sallies upon Timur's army, and very

found the principal persons gone out², and only Chap. 25.
a few other citizens left, who had shut the gates
upon him; but the city was full of goods and
ammunition. When Timur came before the
place, the gates were open'd, and the keys
brought out to him: he fix'd a governor over it,
and join'd it to his dominions.

CHAP. XX.

The siege and taking of the city of Aleppo.

MAHOMET tells us, that the sole terror
of his name made his conquests extend a
month's journey: and we may with reason say, that
Timur had the honor to resemble him in that,
since the terror of his name was so great, that upon
advice of the approach of his troops³, kings and
princes were so terrify'd, that they abandon'd
their dominions; fear blinded their eyes, and
darken'd their understanding, so that all their
actions tended to their destruction.

While the army was in the quarters of Behe-
ra and Antapa, Temourrach, governor of A-
lep⁴ for the Sultan of Egypt, dispatch'd a son-

¹ The Arabian of M. Vauier says, that the governor of Antapa,
being surpris'd, fly'd out to defend himself; and being a-
bandoned and wounded, he fled to Aleppo, but was not persua-
ded to return.

² A city of Syria in the province of Canaaserin; it is the
ancient Beris; long. 72. 29. lat. 34. 35.

³ The Arabian says, that according to the comparison of
him, Timur's comprouler, his army consisted of eight
hundred thousand men.

⁴ Arab Chas says, that Temourrach had agreed with Timur
for the Sultan of Egypt.

rier to Grand-Cairo to give advice of it to his master. Whereupon the Sultan sent orders to the troops of all the towns and countries of Syria, to march towards Aleppo, with all the arms and ammunition necessary for a vigorous defence. According to these orders, Chadoun*, chief of the Emirs of Damascus, march'd to Aleppo at the head of a great army. The governors and generals of Hemsé†, Hama, Antioch, Tripoli, Nappolos-Samaria, Balbec, Canaan, Gaza, Rama or Rama, Jerusalem, Kerek, Celat-Erroum, and all the other countrys and fortresses of the kingdoms of Syria, came to the same place, well equip'd and arm'd cap-a-pie: and in a short time there were got together a very numerous army. Temour-tash, governor of Aleppo, who was esteem'd one of the most considerable lords, assembled the chiefs of all those troops, and made the following speech to 'em, in order to know their opinions of the matter: " We ought not,"
 " first, said he, to regard this affair which is
 " coming upon us as a slight thing; and it is
 " requisite we shou'd reflect seriously upon it be-
 " fore it happens. The prince who is this day
 " come against us, is exceeding powerful; he
 " and his officers have perform'd such extraor-
 " dinary actions, as are no where recorded in
 " antiquity. Wheresoever he hath march'd, he
 " hath always conquer'd the towns and fortres-
 " ses: and who ever attempted to resist him,
 " always repented in the end, and suffer'd the

* M. Vazier calls him my lord Sudon.

† Principal cities of Syria.

* The Arabian tells us, that Timur sent an ambassador herald to Aleppo, to summon the inhabitants to sue for peace, and that this herald was immediately put to death by the order.

History of Timur-Bec.

“ most rigorous chastisement. Consider, first, ~~Chang~~
“ how in a very short time he has reduc'd many
“ vast and flourishing empires; as those of Ca-
“ rezem, Turkestan, Corassiana, Zabulestan, and
“ India, as far as the great river of Ganges; the
“ kingdoms of Tabarestan, the two Iracs, Per-
“ sia, Couchistan, Georgia, Azarbijana, and
“ Diarbekir, with all their dependences, which
“ he has wrested out of the hands of the most
“ powerful Sultans, and the most illustrious em-
“ perors of the universe. He has establish'd
“ himself in those places with such an absolute
“ authority, that one of his lieutenants, with a
“ few officers, maintains a whole city under
“ his obedience; so that in the vast extent of
“ the countrys of Iran and Touran, there is not
“ a soul who dares act the least thing against his
“ orders. It seems as if the great rise of this
“ prince was owing to the peculiar protection
“ of Heaven; if so, we ought not to tempt God.
“ My advice therefore, in this conjuncture, is to
“ treat with him by the ways of submission and
“ obedience; to coin our mony, and to say the
“ public prayers in his name; and to make use
“ of the Cherifs, Imams, and doctors, as our
“ mediators with him; seeing there are none but
“ men vers'd in the law, and pious persons, who
“ have any access to him, or whom he in the
“ least regards. At the same time we'll send
“ him presents and jewels, the most sut-
“ able to his grandure; that we may endeavour
“ to keep him from coming near us, and by that
“ means preserve the repose of the city, and per-
“ haps of the whole kingdom. He is a prince
“ favor'd by fortune, powerful, active, glorious
“ and ambitious: his wrath burns and consumes
“ a thousand times fiercer than fire; and if
“ it is kindled, the sea it self won't be able to
“ quench

quench it. Therefore now conclude upon something: chuse either peace or war, quiet or misery."

Temourtach having finish'd his speech, those who had most experience applauded his sentiments, and agreed that it was the best method they cou'd take: but the majority, and especially Chadoun governor of Damascus, were of a contrary opinion. Pride and presumption were rooted in their hearts, and ignorance had so stupify'd 'em, that they gave no heed to what Temourtach had said; and were so far from applauding him, that they made use of some haughty expressions, and tax'd him with cowardice, saying, that he who is afraid, is already frustrated of his desires. "What comparison," say they, "is there between this kingdom and all those you have mention'd? Their towns were built only of mud and brick; but ours are all of solid stone, cut out of the almost impenrenable rock; they are fill'd with good garisons, and furnish'd with plenty of ammunitions of war and victuals; so that it wou'd require a whole year's siege to force a single one. Why therefore has fear got possession of your hearts? Is it the great number of their cavalry and infantry, or of their arms and equipages, which terrifys you? Only view ours, and you'll see the difference: our bows are of Damascus, our swords of Egypt, our lances of Arabia, and our bucklers of Aleppo. In the registers of this kingdom are sixty thousand villages; out of each of which taking but a few brave men, we shall complete an army which our vast plains won't be able to feed. The houses and walls of these Tartars are made of cords and canvas; while we live in castles and fortresses, which are of hewn stone."

“the very foundations.” Thus fate, depending upon the destruction of these un-
lucky Syrians, inspir’d sentiments of pride
in ‘em: and these obstinate people persisted in
their error, notwithstanding what Temourtach,
and other men of sense, cou’d say to divert ‘em
from the evil steps they had resolv’d to take; who
represented to ‘em that the way of peace was al-
ways the most secure, considering the inconsis-
tency of fortune, and the small hopes they cou’d rea-
sonably expect of gaining the advantage over
their powerful enemy. The others on the con-
trary said, they need only have courage and re-
solution; which if they had not, all sorts of
disorders and losses wou’d happen among ‘em.
After a great struggle on both sides, the latter
carry’d it by a plurality of voices; and it was
resolv’d and concluded, that no one shou’d go out
of the city, but that they shou’d fortify it with
intrenchments, and with arrows and stones hin-
der the enemy from approaching the walls.

Timur departed from Antapa with joy, and
made two days journey of six or seven leagues
each: he afterwards gave orders that they shou’d
march but half a league a day, and at each en-
campment dig a trench round the army, and
make a kind of rampart with their bucklers: so
that in a whole week they march’d but one day’s
journey, and that with extraordinary precautions.
The Syrians, ignorant of the art of war, attri-
buted the slowness of their march to fear, believ-
ing the Tartars mistrusted their own strength;
at which they became haughty and insolent; for
abandoning their first resolution of not going
out of the city, and which indeed was the least
dangerous, they rang’d themselves in order of
battal, and pitch’d their tents in the open plain.

The 9th of Rabiulevel 803, which answers to the year of the Serpent, the army of Timur arriv'd in the neighborhood of Aleppo; and the Mirza Sultan Hussein, with some great officers, met the enemy's scouts: he fell upon 'em, tho' superior to him in number, and at the first onset unhors'd a cavalier, whom he collar'd, and carry'd prisoner out of the field of battel. His officers also perform'd some glorious actions, and took two prisoners: the rest of the Syrian army fled into the city.

The same day the Mirza Aboubecre advanc'd with sixty men; and a great number of the enemy made a sally to repulse him. After a sharp skirmish, the two partys return'd to their several camps. The next day some brave Tartars advanc'd to skirmish; and having shewn themselves to the enemy, not one dar'd to attack 'em. The third day at sun-rising, Timur order'd the whole army to take horse, and with ensigns display'd, and at the sound of drums and kettledrums, to march towards the enemy's camp. Every one having on a coat of mail, a cuirass, and a helmet, they advanc'd in order of battel. The right wing was commanded by the Mirzas Miran Chah and Charoc, accompany'd by several great Emirs, as Solyman Chah and others: and the vanguard of this wing was led by the Mirza Aboubecre. The Sultan Mahmoud, whose lieutenant was the Emir Gohan Chah, had the command of the left wing; and his vanguard was brought up by the Sultan Hussein. The main body was commanded by Timur himself, who had before him a rank of bulky elephants, who had been taken in India, equip'd and furnish'd in the most magnificent manner. serv'd as a rampart to this body of the army, the towers on their backs were fill'd with

and the wild-fire, and these animals had their
in their snouts like serpents. When the
was rang'd in order of battel; a Toman
the best horse of the army was order'd to post
themselves on an eminence on the right side
of the field of battel, and to keep their ground
there, when the Syrians shou'd be put to the
ront, and fly.

The Syrian army was likewise rang'd in or-
der: it was compos'd of a right and left wing,
and a main-body; and advanc'd with its ensigs
display'd. The kettle-drums and trumpets were
the signal to begin, and both partys made the
great cry of Allah Echer *. The battel began
by the skirmishers, who rush'd furiously out of
their squadrons into the midst of the enemy,
and who after some brave action, as either the
slaughter of some noted person, or the taking a
prisoner from the midst of the opposite batallion,
remain'd glorious to their post. Our right wing
immediately fell upon the enemy's left with so
much vigor, that it was routed, thro the valor
of the Mirza Aboubecre, who enter'd the field
of battel like a lion, and forc'd many of the en-
emy to fling away their arms, and abandon their
ensigs; while others were slain, and the ground
soon cover'd with helmets, head-pieces, and
sabres, mix'd promiscuously among the dead car-
cases. Our left wing likewise defeated the Sy-
rian right, and entirely dispers'd 'em, some
travelling out for quarter, and others saving them-
selves by flight. Our main-body did not in the
least yield to the other; and the elephants enter'd
into the midst, and with their trunks toss'd some
up into the air, and trampled others under their
feet, no one being able to stop them.

Chadour and Temonrtach having seen the
strange manner of our soldiers fighting, quitted
their

The History of Tinnit-Bec.

their former fierceness: they trembled at the sight of the dreadful slaughter which was made in so short a time; and seeing no other remedy, they fled, and enter'd the city by the gate of Mancoufa. The soldiers, perceiving their generals measures, likewise fled and dispers'd themselves: the major part took the road of Damascus, and were pursu'd by our men, who slew a great number, taking their arms and horses from em; so that out of this prodigious number of Syrians there escap'd but one horseman, who fled to Damascus to carry the news of the defeat.

After the rout of this army, part of 'em enter'd the city. The disorder was so great in the chief street of Aleppo, and the gates so crowded, that one cou'd hardly pass. Here was the greatest slaughter ever mention'd; for to avoid the fury of the sword, they flung themselves upon one another into the ditches, which were soon fill'd with men and horses. On the other hand, our men with a single pike often run three or four of the enemy thro at a time, in the throng at the gate; so that the dead bodies were pi'd upon one another to the very plumb of the walls; and at length a passage was made over the ditch upon those bodies, level with the draw-bridge. There one might see the horses and their riders mix'd promiscuously together, and cover'd with blood and dirt; some pierc'd with arrows, and others with their brains dash'd out; one with a coat of mail, his head bending beneath the blow of a war-club; another falling without his head, with his sword fast clasp'd in hand.

During this horrible slaughter, a body of our army was sent to pillage the Syrians, wherein they found the governor's palace, his tents, furniture, arms, and several

horses, and the spoils of which there were great abundance. At length all the army marched with so much vigor to the general assault, that they entered the city the same day, which was the 11th of Rabi-ul-hisab 804. Timur permitted 'em to pillage the city of Aleppo, and they found neither the markets nor any of the houses: they carry'd away the women and children, the horses, mules, and all the cattle; besides a prodigious quantity of gold and silver, arms, curious furniture, precious stones, pearls, vessels of gold, the women's robes and ornaments. All these were taken by the soldiers, who rendered no account of 'em to any one.

Nov. 11.
1400.

CHAP. XXI.

Of the castle of Aleppo attack'd and taken.

CHADOUN and Temour-Bec, having gining themselves secure in the city, entered the castle; which was a fortress upon the ridge of a high steep rock, surrounded with a ditch thirty cubits wide, and in which there is a sufficient quantity of water to carry a boat. From the surface of the wall to the bottom of the walls of the castle, which is the inclining of the mountain, is about

The castle of Aleppo is not built on a rock, but on a mountain of sand covered with fine stone.

The author does not so have seen the ditch surrounding the castle; for if the ditch was full of water, a small boat

a hundred cubits; and it is so smooth and steep, that 'tis impossible to ascend upon foot, because this shelving is cover'd with free stone and flat polish'd bricks. The strength of this place render'd these two governors insolent; they undertook to make a vigorous defence, resolving to die rather than surrender: they made great crys in token of their resolution; and ran upon the walls and towers to give orders to the garison. They caus'd the great and little kettle-drums to be beat, and in good earnest began to insult the besiegers: they cast a great quantity of wild-fire, and pots fill'd with sulphur, which in their effects resembled a thunder-bolt; as likewise stones and arrows: by which they let us know that they were in a condition to defend themselves.

Timur having enter'd the city as a conqueror, encamp'd over-against the castle, ordering his troops to range themselves round about the ditch; for the out-parts consist'd only of a single key unguarded: then there were nothing to be seen but showers of arrows, which the besiegers incessantly discharg'd with so much vigor, that none of the besieg'd dar'd to get upon the walls. In the mean while the ladders went down into the ditch, and favor'd by the archers, cross'd the water upon floats; and being come to the other side, they began to work upon the bottom of the mountain, and to shake the stones of the walls: but the besieg'd having perceiv'd their design, five of their bravest men went out by the great gate, and being resolv'd either to lose their lives or succeed in the design, they ty'd a cord to their waste, the end of which others held from the top of the walls, that they might descend and get up again, notwithstanding the steepness of the shelving, without

of falling, while five men accordingly went Chap. 27.
down, and an sword in hand upon the sappers,
the Tartars, who had orders to break the sap-
pers, fell d out of their tents, and flew em
with their arrows. The besieg'd on this were
aid, and drew up again the five dead bodies
with the cords. From that time no one dar'd
so much as look thro the loop-holes of the walls,
so far were they from making sallies. Then
Timur, whose advantages were consider'd ra-
ther as the scourge of God, than as an effect of
human power, sent by an ambassador the follow-
ing letter to the besieg'd, who now began to
conclude that obstinately resisting him would
in the end produce repentance: "The Almight-
y, having reduc'd under my command the
"greatest part of the kingdoms of Asia, my
"armys can't be stop'd either by walls or for-
"tresses: the great number of soldiers or arms
"are not able to oppose the just effects of my
"wrath, nor ward off the deadly blows of my
"vengeance. I believe the best way you can
"now take, is to have pity on your own lives;
"otherwise you'll be the murderers of your
"selves, your wives and children, and must
"answer for the crime of having shed their
"blood."

The besieg'd seeing no other refuge, were
constrain'd to give way to force. Chagou
and Temourtach took the keys of the castle,
treasures, and magazines; and being accompa-
ny'd by the Cherifs, Cadis, Imams and nobles of
the country, open'd the gate, and in an hum-
ble manner came to cast themselves at Timur's
feet. Chagou, Temourtach, and other chiefs,
with a thousand soldiers, were shar'd among the
Tomans, and put in irons. Soldiers were sent
to the castle, who brake down the battlements.

The History of Timur-Beg.

of the wall. Timur sent in embassy to Grand-Khan, to the son of Barak, Efen Dougai Daudat, whom they had seized in the castle, with advice that he had laid Chadoon and Temour-tash in irons, by way of reprisal for Atilmich, and that he would not set 'em at liberty till he should come back to him; that he must send Atilmich immediately, if he was willing to preserve the lives and liberties of these two persons, and of all the other slaves he had detained. Timur fix'd the place where Efen Dougai was to meet him at his return. Then he went to the castle of Aleppo, to take the direction of a very beautiful prospect, and also to view the situation of the city and country; and he staid there two days. He order'd the Emir Gehan Chah to guard the gate of the castle and the riches within it, which consisted of the treasures which several kings had amass'd there, and an infinite number of jewels and furniture which the citizens had carry'd into it to preserve 'em from pillage. The whole amounted to immense sums, part of which he distributed among the Emirs and soldiers. He afterwards left the baggage and cumbersome things belonging to the army, with his treasure, in the castle of Aleppo; and he nam'd eight considerable Emirs for governors of this strong place, and as guardians of the treasures he left there. Then, after fifteen days residence at Aleppo, he began his march, to continue his conquests in the rest of Syria.

CHAP.

A note taken out of the history of Timur-Beg.

During the fifteen days that Timur staid at Aleppo, he order'd the doctors to come before him, to ask hard questions, and from thence got an opportunity to death. He said to Ahmed Ben Arab Chah



CHAP. XII.

The taking of the towns and castles of Emessa and Hama.

WHEN Timur lay encamp'd without the city of Aleppo, he sent the Mirzas Pir Adahemed and Aboubecre, with the Emirs Solyman Chah, Serindgie and others, as scouts, towards Hama. These lords soon made themselves masters of the lower town; but they could not take the castle, because it was exceeding

Arabian history of M. Varier) There have lately been such times of our men, and some of yours; which of the two are the worst? This question, said Arab Chah, was formerly proposed to Mahomet by an Arabian peasant; and I'll return the same answer he did. Timur demanded what answer he gave. The peasant answer'd Arab Chah, said to Mahomet, Lord, apostle of God, some fight thro shame, others thro valor, others thro a zeal for religion: who is the martyr? He who fights for religion, answer'd Mahomet, and for the honor and advantage of the word of God. Very well, says Timur, you too shall have a better answer: and then he related to 'em all his vision. I have one foot, says he, in the grave; but yet I have employ'd my life to a good purpose; for I have conquer'd Occident. Arab Chah then said, In gratitude for the favor you have receiv'd from heaven, pardon those men of learning: I never thought you to death, answer'd Timur, purposely: you are the authors of your own deaths: but thro God I grant you quarter. From that time one had liberty of speaking, and endeavor'd to satisfy their minds in the college.

When Timur, says the Arabian, design'd harm to any one, he did it by a slow delay; but when good, he remitted the execution of it to a farther day.

Timur had several heads to erect a trophy.

A town of Syria, of which the geographer Strabo has written; long. 76. lat. 35.

The history of Timur-Bec.

strong. After the affair of Aleppo was finish'd to Timur's satisfaction, he went to Hama, and in his way took three or four castles. At the arrival of the great imperial standard before Hama, those who were in the castle, seeing this innumerable multitude of troops from the top of their walls, imagin'd it wou'd be best for 'em to go out immediately with what presents they had, to offer the keys of the place, and submit to Timur. They accordingly did so, and addressing themselves to the Mirzas who were come before as scouts, they besought 'em to intercede and obtain quarter for 'em. The Mirzas promis'd 'em this favor, and quarter was granted 'em; but their spoils were given to their scouts. Timur staid twenty days at Hama, for the refreshment of his troops and horses; during which time he had pavilions built for himself, the Mirzas, and principal Emirs of his court, and a magnificent Divan-House, where the councils of the state were held: so that this place in less than two or three weeks became a second city.

In the mean while the Emirs made another attempt, to persuade the emperor to stay at this place, representing, that for two years past the troops had been either on the march, or employ'd in a battel; that the enemy had a great number of cavalry, whose horses were fresh and not fatigu'd, and being in their own country, had vast advantages over us; and that if his majesty approv'd of it, they wou'd go and repose themselves on the sea-shore at Tripoli in Syria, where they wou'd take up their winter quarters; so that the horses might have some rest of their fatigues, and at the beginning of spring they might march with vigor to encounter the enemy. Timur wou'd not listen to their

their reason, tho they were plausible; but another reason that they ought to make dispatch, that the enemy might have no time to recover themselves. When he order'd them to take horse, and march towards Emessa. One of our great Eminent chieftains first as a scout; and had the good nature to advise the inhabitants, telling them that their resistance wou'd serve only to ruin 'em; and it wou'd be pity so many should be destroy'd; that if they wou'd go meet the emperor, and submit to him, he wou'd answer for the streets, and their lives and even their estates shou'd be spar'd. These words which he had caus'd fear, and on the occasion, in the people of Emessa, made an impression upon 'em; so that the principal men of the city took up a resolution to obey Timur; they came out loaded with presents, and ran to meet him; they cast themselves at his feet, kissing the earth, which they cover'd with gold and precious stones: they presented him with the keys of the town; upon which Timur had the goodness to prohibit any one's insulting either in their persons or goods. He gave him for their governor Ali Erber, whom he order'd to have a singular regard to 'em, and to be their protector on all occasions.

Chap. 22.
578

Emessa, a town of Syria near Hama.

The history of Timur-Bec.

C H A P. XXIII

Conquest of the town of Balbec.

TIMUR, decamp'd from Emesse; continuing his road towards Balbec, he march'd a day's journey, and encamp'd near a fair place from whence he sent out a body of the army to make inroads towards Soir, and to pillage the country along the front of the Mediterranean. When the Imperial standard was arriv'd at Balbec, all the army admir'd the beauty of the walls of this town, and the tower of a prodigious size, and situation, near the corner of the castle, which look'd towards the gardens, twenty-eight cubits long, sixteen broad, and seven high. This town is very famous, as well for the beauty of the walls, as for the height of its buildings; and it's believ'd to have been built by Solomon under the direction of magicians and genii, over whom he had an absolute command. Notwithstanding these advantages, it was reduc'd by our troops as soon as they appear'd before it. There were in it so great a quantity of fruits, pulse, and goods, that our soldiers were furnish'd with all manner of necessaries for a long time. Then Timur order'd the Emirs Cheik Noureddin, Chamelik, Serindigic, and others, to advance towards Damascus at the head of thirty thousand horse.

C H A P.

CHAP. XXI.

Timur marches to Damascus, capital of Syria.

TIMUR did not long at Balbec, because it was situated near a mountain, which rendered the air exceeding cold; and it being the beginning of winter, there fell abundance of snow and rain.

Jan. 3.
1400.

The 3d of Jumaziulevel, the sun being in the first degree of Capricorn, Timur departed from Balbec; and after having march'd a day's journey, he halted to visit the tomb of the prophet Noah, whose blessings having besought, he set out for the conquest of Damascus. The body of the army, which had been sent out to make inroads towards Seid and Barut, return'd, after having ravag'd all the maritim country of Syria; and join'd the imperial camp, loaded with the spoils of that country. As Syria was at that time under the dominion of the Sultans of Egypt, the Syrians were continually sending couriers to carry the news of our army's march, to the prince son of Barcoc, their king; whom they continued to press so assiduously to come to see Timur, that at their persuasion he rais'd an army, which he equip'd with great expence and diligence, and above all, the cavalry, which was the best in the world. In this condition he took the road to Damascus; which he was no longer enter'd, than he us'd all his precautions to examine the fortifications, to post guards and sentinels every where, to put the walls in good order, and to augment the entrenchments as well as the city as of the castle.

In

In fine, he took all needful precautions: and using policy with strength, he sent to Timur, in quality of ambassador, an eloquent and perfect villain, who the better to cover his intentions took the habit of a poor religious. He order'd him for his companions two young anans, to each of whom he gave a poison'd dagger, with orders to use their endeavours to murder Timur during the audience of the ambassador. At Timur's arrival near Damascus, these villains join'd the court, and came to the foot of the imperial throne to pay their compliments. They had several times the honor to approach his majesty, and very favorable opportunitys to execute their designs: but the Almighty, who was always Timur's guardian and protector, wou'd not suffer 'em ever to come to perfection. Coja Masaoud Semhani, one of the great secretaries of the council, imagin'd by the proceedings of these rask fellows that they had some evil intention: wherefore he communicated his thoughts to some, who related 'em to the emperor, who order'd 'em to be searched, and they found in their boots poison'd daggers. The chief of the villains perceiving himself and his companions discover'd, declar'd the truth, and the resolution they had taken to assassinate Timur. The emperor return'd thanks to his sovereign protector; and said, "It is not the maxim of kings to murder ambassadors; yet it wou'd be a crime to suffer this rascal, or his comrades, to live, who tho' cloth'd in the habit of a religious, is a monster of corruption and perfidy." Then he order'd, that according to the passage which tells us that treason lies upon the head of the traitor, he shou'd be slain with the same dagger with which he wou'd have committed

mitted the dishonourable action; and his infamous example to be followed in example to others. His two allies had their nose and ears cut off; but were not put to death, because Timur would send em back with a letter to the Sultan of Egypt.

Timur took horse; and having fix'd his troops in good order, march'd towards Damascus, near which he encamp'd at the foot of a hill near Cobbei Seiar: a trench was dug for precaution round the army, and fortify'd with bucklers and pallisados. Then Timur ascended the hill to examine the situation of Damascus, and its outposts. He sent scouts to skirmish with the enemy, and to keep 'em in play: the Emirs Sevindigic, Sainte Manre, and others, advanc'd, and were back'd by the Seid Coja of the right wing, and the Mirza Roustem of the left, at the noise of kettle drums, hautboys and flutes, mix'd with the soldiers crys. By next morning they attack'd the enemy's scouts, whom they put to flight, after having slain several, and taken others prisoners. Then Timur, to revenge himself for the scandalous action of the Sultan of Egypt, order'd Chadom and the other prisoners brought from Aleppo, to be put to death.

The same night there happen'd an affair as extraordinary as extraordinary. The Mirza Sultan Hussein, after a debauch, was excited by some seditionous Persians to revolt against the emperor his grandfather; and he accordingly went to the city of Damascus, and lifted himself into the Syrian service, which adventure gave the Syrians a great deal of satisfaction, imagining it would produce to 'em considerable advantages. They conducted the prince into the city with a great

deal of pomp and ceremony. Farrudge, miragining the union with the prince would deliver him from all troubles, and cause a calm after the storm was over, treated him with all possible respect. The officers of this Miraz, Adone, and Hussein son of Barat Coja, gave advice of what had pass'd to the Miraz Chamelik, who inform'd the emperor thereof. At break of day they decamp'd, and after a tedious march towards the south-side of Damascus, which looks upon the country of Canzan, Egypt, and the desert of Arabia, they encamp'd again, and built a wall about the height of a man round the camp, and dug a trench round the wall. The soldiers went out to ravage the country in the neighborhood of Damascus: and Timur plac'd both infantry and cavalry round the walls of the camp to guard them in the night.

Two days after Timur sent Padi Chah Baouran ambassador to the Sultan of Egypt, with the following letter. "You are not ignorant of the effects which circumspection and exactness produce; and know that emulation and jealousy, mix'd with ambition, are the motives which oblige conquerors to take arms, undertake the most dangerous wars, and make themselves masters of countrys and kingdoms; and that by this means they preserve the honor of their crown, and acquire eternal fame. All this great noise of the world is not so much to heap up riches, as to acquire honor; for half a loaf every day is sufficient for

* The Arabian remarks, that the Mirza Sultan Hussein had a handsome head of hair, which they shav'd off; and having honor'd him with a robe, dress'd him after the fashion of that country: and that he had quitt'd Timur, being weary of him with his army in so miserable a condition.

"the advancement of a man. We have several Climates
 "demanded Assistance of you, and you
 "have not once offer'd to send him to us.
 "But have always started some difficultys,
 "and delay'd an affair of such consequence.
 "This hath oblig'd us to make war in your
 "country, which will bring ruin and desolation
 "upon your subjects. If rocks cou'd speak;
 "they wou'd tell you that this action of yours
 "portends no good to you. Yet, notwithstanding
 "your unreasonable proceedings, if you'll
 "cause the money to be coin'd, and the public
 "prayers to be read in our name, that shall stop
 "our fury. This you ought to do, if you have
 "any compassion for your self or subjects.
 "Our soldiers are like roaring lions, which
 "want their prey; they seek to kill their ene-
 "my, pillage his effects, take his towns, and
 "overturn his edifices to the very foundations.
 "There are but two ways to chuse: either
 "peace, the consequences of which are quiet
 "and joy; or war, which produces disorder
 "and desolation. I have set both before you, it
 "is your part to follow one or other. Leave it
 "your prudence, and make your choice.
 "well."

The ambassador having carry'd this letter,
 they receiv'd him with very particular respect,
 contrary to their usual customs: at which re-
 ception they practis'd all the ceremonies us'd
 towards the most illustrious men. And as fire-
 works are very often made in this country, they
 assembled a great many persons of this trade,
 who pass'd in review before the ambassador, to
 shew their strength and power: but they were
 not ignorant that these were no more than toys
 in comparison of the court of Timor. After
 they had endeavor'd to please the ambassador by
 abun-

abundance of civil treatment, and several honors bestow'd on him, they sent him back; and he was follow'd by several lords of the court of the Sultan of Egypt, who came to cast themselves at the foot of the imperial throne, and spoke to Timur in these words: "Most excellent and formidable emperor, we know that we appear before your majesty as your meanest servants; yet we are full of respect and submission. We have resolv'd to send Atimich to your august court within five days: and if after that you should pardon our faults, we'll omit no occasion of giving you marks of a perfect obedience; and as far as depends on the power of the Sultan, and the capacity of his subjects, they shall endeavor to merit by their services the good-will of your majesty, and the friendship of the illustrious lords and officers of your imperial court." The emperor, being touch'd with their discourse, which was color'd over with an appearance of sincerity, gave 'em a kind reception, worthy of his clemency: he made 'em presents of vests, and with very obliging expressions assur'd 'em of the generosity of his heart; he afterwards sent 'em back very well contented and pleas'd with having succeeded so well in their embassy. And this appearance of an accommodation occasion'd joy to the inhabitants of Damascus.



C H A P. XXV.

Timur gives battle to the Sultan of Egypt, and gains the victory.

AFTER ten days encampment, an account was taken of the state of the army: upon which Timur order'd they shou'd depart from thence directly to encamp at Gouta, that the horses might feed in that delicious place. The army had no sooner began this motion, than thro' their ill-fortune, the inhabitants of this country imagin'd that this march proceeded from weakness, and that our troops were fled towards the Levant. They likewise thought that so numerous an army cou'd not decamp without falling into some disorder, and that if they laid hold on this opportunity to attack the rear of the Tartar army, they cou'd not fail of defeating 'em; that the surprize wou'd so embarrass the soldiers, that they must be constrain'd to surrender and fly; and that this action wou'd be a great honor to 'em in all future ages. In this hope the whole army of Syria took horse, and made a sally out of Damascus: the populace join'd with the soldiers, some having swords, and others sticks and stones in their hands; and as there were prodigious numbers of 'em, they had the rashness to fall on our rear. There came so great a multitude out of the city, that the whole plain was cover'd with horse and foot. The cavalry were arm'd with cuirasses, and were perfectly well equip'd; the infantry were arm'd with bows and arrows, swords, bucklers and darts, presuming in victory: and there were ne-

The history of Timur-Bec.

Book V

ver seen before so great a multitude assembled together.

Timur being inform'd of this ridiculous rash action, knew what fate had resolv'd on the Syrians destruction: he implor'd the assistance of God, and reflected seriously upon the conduct he ought to use in this conjuncture. He gave orders that the whole army shou'd face upon the enemy, and that all the cavalry shou'd dismount to encamp: he caus'd a kind of wall to be made with the bales of the baggage, propos'd up with great stones; and being thus entrench'd, they erected their tents and standards. Then Timur got upon an eminence with fifty of his favorites, and according to custom, on his knees address'd himself to God in prayer: he order'd his musketeers and other arms to be brought him, and then he took horse full of confidence, commanding the drums to be beat, and the great cry made. In the mean while the troops of our left wing arriv'd all in good order; and as the Syrians were already very near us, Timur sent instructions to the Mirzas Miran Chah, Cheroc, and Abou-beccre, who commanded the right wing, to attack the enemy on one side; while the Emirs of the left wing shou'd fall upon 'em on the other. In this order they advanc'd against the enemy, and gave 'em battel. The Emirs Sevimagis, Chamelik, Seid Coja, Sainte Maure, and others, as well of the vanguard as of the rear, began the fight; being back'd by the main-body. And as the two wings fell furiously upon the unfortunate Syrians, there was so great a slaughter, that the whole plain was cover'd with blood. After an obstinate battel, victory inclin'd to Timur: the Syrians were defeated, and expuls'd as far as to the gates of Damascus, where above half their soldiers slain, and the rest dispers'd.

disputed; but this part was afterwards over-
taken by the Tartars, who saw vast numbers of
bodies there were nothing to be seen but heaps
of dead bodies, and dividers of blood, among
the standards, mixed together. Scarcely any escaped
the fury of our soldiers, except those who sur-
render'd the city. This signal victory was gained
the 19th of January 1803, which answers to Jan. 19.
the year of the Crocodile. During the heat of 1400.
the battle, the Mirza Sultan Husain, who com-
manded the Syrians lost wing, was sent against
the Mirzas Milan Ghah and Charco, and Talar
Courshan, an officer of the Mirza Charco, fell
upon him, and having seiz'd his horse's bridle,
beat him with his staff, who gave advice of
it to Tishur. His majesty being accus'd, gave
orders that Husain should be put in prison, and
loaded with chains, as a punishment for his crime;
but he was shortly after set at liberty, thro the
intervention of the Mirza Charco, yet not till
they had given him the bastinado, as order'd by
the law of Tifac. This was not so much a pun-
ishment to him, as the shame and continual re-
proaches he receiv'd from the whole court: and
he was never permitted to enter the emperor's
hall.

CHAP. XXVI.

Attack of the city of Diapalcas.

ON the next day our army camp'd, and
went to erect the standard near the city at
the foot of a hill, while the news of the last
victory spread it self every where; and length
they departed at the noise of drums and trumpets
and.

Begs, and Timur order'd that the army shou'd march in
 order of battel, and place before 'em a great
 rank of elephants, as well as augment the mag-
 nificence of the army, as to strike terror into
 those who had never seen such things, it is re-
 markable, that from one end of the right wing
 to the extremity of the left, the Tartar army
 took up between three and four leagues of ground.
 Then having their elephants in their head, the
 army got upon a rising ground, from whence
 there was a prospect of the city, that the army
 might see their power, and the distance, by
 this means all the inhabitants of the country, as
 well soldiers as others, were satisfy'd of the num-
 ber of this army, of which before they had
 had but an imperfect knowledge. All the ca-
 valry being upon this hill, the drums were beat,
 and the whole army made the most great cry,
 and then they advanc'd nearer the city, to en-
 camp on the bank of a deep rivulet, which serv'd
 them for a trench, and with their great and ter-
 rible battalions they made a fort of campers round
 the camp. After their precautions, both the
 cavalry and infantry cross'd the rivulet, and
 the army, according to custom, dispos'd them-
 selves in order of battel in sight of the enemy.
 There was a vast number of Syrians, but the
 disadvantages they had had the preceding day
 had so discourag'd 'em, that they dar'd not ad-
 vance. The Sultan of Egypt held a council with
 his great Emirs, as Nerouz Hafezi, Yach Bec,
 Chacountz, Cheiki Hajeki, and others, upon
 what they shou'd do in this conjuncture. Some,
 who were attach'd to the inhabitants, and more
 than to the Sultan, said, that the city
 had receiv'd a great shock, the city and suburbs
 were entire; that there yet remain'd a great num-
 ber of soldiers, who were dispos'd to fight, that

the best way would be to make a second rally, and send troops to defend the city and fortresses. The soldiers who had greater experience and were more attach'd to the Sultan's interest, were of another mind. They thought that now of itself should not be possess'd with chimeras, that when the Empire was disorder'd by a disappointment, without precaution, or being upon their guard, and not in the least expecting a battle, the Turks with their great numbers, and in good order, went to surprize 'em, and attack their rear, with all possible diligence and artifice; yet every one knows what the success was: from whence they concluded, that the best remedy would be for them to take the road of Egypt in the night, under favor of the darkness, according to the proverb, which tells us, That he who gains his life, gains all; that in the town and castle there was a great number of soldiers as well as civilians, who were capable of defending themselves, and would use all their efforts to prefer their lives, their wives and families; that if fortune favor'd 'em, and they sav'd the city, the king would always continue a mortal enemy; but on the contrary, if the Turks took it, and burnt and destroy'd every thing, the king and court at Constantinople would be secur'd from the public debts.

The whole Egyptian council was of this opinion. At which Farrudge sent an ambassador with presents to Timar, and a letter in these terms. "The affair which happened yesterday was a popular sedition, in which we had no hand: neither of our officers nor young fellows of the common sort, had the smallest concern of the city, nor their'd the punishment they merited. For our part, we have no other design than to keep our posts, as we should be fore :

Book IV. "fore, and if your highness is willing to grant
 "a respite of arms for this day only, to mor-
 "row we will execute whatever you shall or-
 "der, and endeavor to repair the fault com-
 "mitted against our will, and obtain pardon
 "for it."

The ambassador acquainted himself of his in-
 structions: and after he had made known to the
 emperor the subject of his coming, he order'd
 the army to return, and encamp a second time.

When night was come, the Sultan of Egypt
 took horse, accompanied by the principal lords
 of his court: and having dispos'd every thing
 in a proper order for his departure, he went out
 of Jerusalem at midnight, and took the road to
 Jerusalem.

Timur, desirous to know the success of
 Charee, to whom he gave an account of all that
 had pass'd. This Mirza ran to inform Timur of
 his carrying Thacmae with him. He order'd

the commanders of the right wing, under the
 command of the Mirza Aboubecre, should in-
 vest the city on one side, and those of the left

wing, commanded by the Mirza Ismael, on the
 other, that no one might escape.

At the same time Timur sent some of the most famous
 Emirs of his army, with a great body of cavalry,

in pursuit of the Sultan. These brave men
 search'd with so much diligence, that they over-

took him: they slew several of his men, and
 oblig'd the others to abandon their horses, mules,

camels, and all their equipage, to save their lives;
 so that the ways were cover'd with goods which

they had cast away to fly the better. On the break
 of day, Timur took horse, and order'd the

suburbs of Damascus to be pillag'd. On the same day,
 Jan. 23. the 23d of January, after the Sultan, the

whole army was order'd to march in order
 of

Book II. Timur, and only grant 'em quarters for themselves, and for their family. They made several presents to the officers, and after having submitted to pay the tribute for themselves and their lives, they return'd home. Timur gave a commission to the Emirs for receiving the tax, and sent 'em into the city. These Emirs were Nouredin, Chahalgir, and Allahabad, accompanied by the comptrollers, Ghalib, and Saman, and Ghalibistan, who enter'd the Damascus, and according to custom wall'd up some parts of the city, leaving open only the gate towards the foradis, without which they kept their watch. The conquerors having drawn from the city the sum of 100,000 pieces of silver, brought 'em to the king. The day following the Conqueror's march, for the king, was read in the famous mosque of the Ommiades Califs, in the name and cities of the august emperor Timur.

CHAP. XXV

Taking of the castle of Damascus

TH O the condition of the city was as bad as we have represented; yet Tadar Coust, governor of the castle, confiding in the strength of this place, which was one of the most noted fortresses in the world, resolv'd to defend himself. Its walls were of great piece of rock, very high and regularly built. It had round it a ditch of about twenty cubits, and

Timur caus'd them to be filled with
having us'd violence after the peace

the place was supply'd with all sorts of ammunition, as the garison began first, to cast stones out of their machines, as also arrows, and pots full of sulphur and wild-fire, to hinder our approach. Nevertheless orders were given to all the generals of Tomen and Hezars to advance towards the castle, and besiege it in form. The necessary preparations were made, and the battering-rams and machines to cast stones were got ready; and the soldiers rais'd three platforms of such a height, that they commanded the castle. They afterwards entirely drain'd the ditch: then the sappers advanc'd to the foot of the wall, and began to work with all imaginable diligence, notwithstanding the great stones the besieg'd continually shower'd on 'em; which were answer'd by those from the machines erected on the platforms, and which hinder'd the besieg'd from going to their machines. From these machines were likewise cast pots full of wild-fire like theirs, besides the arrows which constantly fell upon the place for bail. The siege being divided among the Emirs, every one shook the walls on his side with battering-rams and other machines.

During these transactions Timur order'd the Mirzas Miran Chah and Charoc, and the Emirs Salym Chah, Gahan Chah and others, to go out into their winter quarters near Camin, that their soldiers might refresh themselves, and their horses might get some pasture. The rest of the army continu'd in the siege with a great deal of labour: they heap'd great pieces of the rock by battering from underneath, and adding vinegar to it, and then with their hammers they broke 'em, and put 'em on one of the walls: and when the wall and besiegers were ready to fall, they prov'd out up with great stakes, lest they should fall as a sudden. In this manner they soon

first d'apping the bastion of Tarma, which was the largest of any! and the place which Al-toun-Bacchi inspected was soonest finish'd. This being done, orders were given to set fire to 'em; and at the same time this high and famous tower fell, and made a vast breach by its fall. The soldiers ran with their bucklers on their heads to enter by this breach! but on a sudden another part of the wall fell, which was a prodigious wall, and crush'd to death eighty men of the troops of Corassan and Sistan. This accident stop'd the ardor of our men, who went no farther: and the besieg'd laying hold on the occasion, clos'd up the breach, and fortify'd themselves behind. These breaches struck terror into 'em, and they had willingly surrend'rd, if they had not despair'd of pardon. The other props were then order'd to be set on fire, and great part of the castle soon fell. This accident entirely taking away all hopes from the besieg'd, Yezdar-governor of the place caus'd the gate to be open'd; and being constrain'd to go out, he came full of grief to deliver up the keys of the castle, and of the treasury and magazines within it. The other sides of the castle, which had been prop'd up with stakes, were not set on fire.

Timur gave orders that the governor Yezdar should be put to death, because he had waited too long before he surrend'rd. They found in the castle great quantities of riches, jewels, curious stuffs, and rarities which had been kept there for many ages. There was a famous granary full of corn, being the revenues of the two renown'd cities of Mecca and Medina. Timur, who was sincere in his religion, prohibited any one from touching 'em; and Hemu, one of the Tavatchis, having taken a hundred thousand

of barley, he was basted both before and behind, and the money he had receiv'd for em taken from him. Timur order'd the intendant of this magazine to sell him some corn at the price of three Dinars Colighis for each Barman or pound, because the war had render'd provisions extremely dear. This intendant got a great sum of money for the corn; and the whole sum was distributed among the officers of the army, who were sent back to Jerusalem, after having receiv'd a great deal of civil treatment from Timur.

The garrison were made slaves, and distributed among the Emirs and Emirs; it was mostly composed of Christians, Mamelukes, Ethiopian slaves, and Zanghebars: all the women, children and old men had the same fate. The tradesmen were separated from the rest, and sent to Samarkand. Those who had been taken out of the city, to be conducted to Samarkand, Maulana Jumaeddin, and Moulana Bakhman, two celebrated physicians, were also carry'd with 'em. Then Timur went from the palace of Ghazalas to lodge in the house of Bouterach, one of the great Emirs of Syria, which house was the most charming and noble of any in that country. At the sight of all this magnificence, Timur cry'd out, "Is it not strange that in a kingdom of so large an extent, they give themselves up only to pleasures, that they should build all these fine edifices to please their senses; and not have the charity to erect a single mausoleum of four walls for the holy wives of Mahomet, who lie underneath these tombs?" Whereupon he immediately order'd that two magnificent domes should be built over the sepulchres of these holy ladies. The commission was given to the

Book IV. Mirzas Aboubecre and Cali Sultan, and to the Emirs Cheik Nouredin, Ali Sultan, and Mengheli Coja, who made the workmen proceed with so much diligence, that the whole was finish'd in twenty-five days. These two domes were of white marble, full of sculptures and chisel-work.

As the Syrian money was of a bad alloy, Timur caus'd new money to be coin'd both of gold and silver, which was refin'd by the coopers; there were pieces of a hundred, of fifty, and of twenty Medicales, which were all honor'd with the name and titles of the great emperor Timur. The money was so common among the soldiers, that the Divan got about six hundred thousand Dinars. Coopers made of the new money many monys.

Timur commanded the principal secretaries of state to prepare letters of conquest, to send to Samarcand, and all the capital cities of the kingdoms of Iran and Touran, which were subject to his empire, with a view to the reduction of Syria; and to command the governors to make public rejoicings for his victory. Orders were dispatch'd by couriers, with letters carry'd with 'em several of these new coin'd pieces of gold and silver, to be distributed among the empresses, the princes of the blood, and chief lords of the kingdoms of Iran and Touran.

Timur sent Coja Hassan to the Mirzas Miran-cha and Charoc, that they might order the Emirs Soliman Chah and Gellan Chah to make inroads along the coast of the Mediterranean, as far as the town of Akkia. These Emirs having departed according to order, made havock in all this country, from whence they brought a great quantity of booty, and return'd to Samarcand.

During

During these transactions, Timur was attack'd Chap. 27.
 with an ill-temper, which proceeded from a flux
 of humors which fell upon his back, and turn'd
 into an imposthume. He was very bad with it:
 and one of the Emirs who attended his person,
 nam'd Arghun, was sent into Canaan, to order
 the princes of the blood and the Emirs to return
 with expedition; but at their arrival the dis-
 ease went off, and the emperor recover'd.
 Timur reflecting upon the history of Syria,
 assembled his privy-council to communicate his
 sentiments to 'em. "I have heard, says he,
 "that in the wars which the Meronidian Em-
 "perors call'd against the children of
 "Mahomet, and particularly with Ali, his son-
 "in-law, nephew, and lawful heir, where they
 "exercis'd all the massacres and crueltys they
 "could invent, the Syrians kept an intelligence
 "with them, and assist'd them in all their abomi-
 "nable actions. Nothing shou'd be more won-
 "derful at than this: for how can a nation be
 "thought to be of the sect of a prophet, and
 "be drawn from the abyss of error and infi-
 "delity by the light he has afforded 'em, when
 "it becomes so for the enemy of his family as
 "to unite with its most cruel adversaries, and
 "offer all sorts of cruelty and injustice to be
 "done towards 'em? This is what I can't com-
 "prehend. We ought not to disbelieve this
 "tradition: for if it were false, so vigorous a
 "tradition would not have come from the tribu-
 "nal of God's justice, in consequence of which
 "they shou'd be punish'd at this
 "time, notwithstanding all their strength and
 "power."
 Timur having related this piece of history,
 with which he was perfectly acquainted, they
 explain'd his highest thoughts among one ano-
 ther;

Book 10. then; and the officers of his household were constantly reasoning on it. It was so insinuated into the minds of the warriors, that on the first March 28, of the moon of Schaban the troops furiously enter'd the city without orders, and made a terrible slaughter, committing all manner of violences: they made both men and women slaves, took from 'em their jewels, and pillag'd their goods, which consisted of an infinite quantity of gold, precious stones, curious merchandizes, rich stuffs, and all sorts of rarities. They got so much riches, that all the horses, mules, and camels, which they had taken from Sebaste, as far as Damascus, were not able to carry 'em away: so the soldiers were oblig'd to fling away a great part, and especially several pieces of gold and silver stuffs, and curious toys of Egypt, Cyprus and Russia, which they had pillag'd at the beginning of the campaign. This circumstance I have heard from several credible persons who were eyewitnesses of it.

The first floor of the houses of Damascus are built of stone, and the two upper ones of wood; and most of the cieling and even of the walls of 'em are varnish'd; which renders 'em combustible: so that when any place here takes fire, the judges and governors, notwithstanding all their precautions, are not able to stop it; and it commonly burns a great way. This often happens in time of peace.

March 29. The 12th of Schaban, the city took fire by an accident; and every one strove in vain to quench it: it increas'd so much, that no place was free from the scent occasion'd by the stench and sandarac, of which the varnish was compos'd; and the houses became exceeding black.

Timur, whose regard for religion was unparalleled, sent the Emir Chamelik to inquire the



201
1001

the famous mosque of Ommeides from the fire: but tho' the roof was made of wood cover'd with lead, instead of being varnish'd, God made his wrath appear against these people; for notwithstanding the soldiers endeavors to quench it, they cou'd not hinder the eastern Minaret of this mosque's being reduc'd to ashes, tho' it was built of stone: whereas the Minaret of Agha, otherwise nam'd Mounar Beiza, remain'd safe, as much the Mussulmans believe, that the lord Mahan Jesus, on whom, as on our prophet, may blessings and salvation be shower'd, will descend from heaven, when he shall come to judge both the living, and the dead. And what was most miraculous is, that this latter Minaret, tho' built of wood, and plaster'd over with lime on the out-side, remain'd intire, while all Damascus was burnt down, and the immense riches within spoil'd and laid out, as well as the rest of the city.

Timur took up a resolution to return back; and to give the inhabitants of Syria some marks of his clemency, after having made 'em feel the effects of his wrath, he order'd that all the slaves of Damascus and the rest of Syria, men, women and children, shou'd be set at liberty. Gelaleffars had the command in executing this order, and conducting all the slaves to the city of Damascus; which was exactly observ'd.

CHAP.

The history of Timur-Bec.

C H A P. XXVIII.

Timur returns out of Syria.

March 31.
1401.

THE fourth of Schibabhoz, which answers to the beginning of the sign of the Serpent, the sun entering Aries; Timur decamp'd from Coubaibay, and march'd to G... where he encamp'd. He there caus'd two orders to be drawn up; the one to the Mirza Melimet Sultan, to leave the government of the frontiers of Mogulistan, to the Emirs Godabad Hussein, Birdi Bei, Sarbanga, and others, and to come forthwith to the foot of the throne, to receive the crown and investiture of the empire of Ilakou Can, which was granted him in consideration of his merits and services. The second order was, that the august empress Touman Aga, and the young prince, his grandson, shou'd come to meet the emperor. These two orders were seal'd, and sent by Dané Coja.

Timur being departed from Coubaibay, arriv'd at Carzoun Bec; and in three days he arriv'd at Emessa, the inhabitants of which had continu'd firm in their obedience, for which reason the troops did not molest em in their passage. Then a council was held, and Timur order'd the Mirzas Roustem and Aboubecre, with the Emirs Soliman Chah and Cheik Nouredin of the right wing, to march with ten thousand horse to the town of Tedmir, built by the prophet Solomon, the houses of which were of free-stone; and to pillage the subjects of Zulcader, who were in the territorys of this town. He caus'd also the Mirza Sultan Hussein, and the Emir B...
dae

dad of the left wing, to march to Antioch at the head of five thousand horse: and he sent the Mirza Calil Sultan, the Emir Roustem Tagi Berka Berlas, Temosh Coja, Achouga, and others, with fifteen thousand horse of the main body, against the Turcomans of Conbec, who were encamp'd on the banks of the Euphrates.

Those of the right wing soon arriv'd at Temir, from whence they brought away about two hundred thousand sheep belonging to the Zulca-derians, who were constrain'd to fly into the deserts of Arabia with their horres and camels. After this the troops return'd, pass'd the desert, and came to the banks of the Euphrates, along which they advanc'd.

Those of the left wing being arriv'd near Antioch, cou'd scarcely enter it, becaus of the great waters, floods, and marshes. They pillag'd the city and country, and then turn'd towards Antioch, where they join'd the troops selected out of the main-body, and commanded by the Mirza Calil Sultan: with these they march'd into the neighborhood of Calat-Erroun, towards the Euphrates. Here they met the Turcomans, who had the boldness to wait their coming, and prepare for battel: they were briskly attack'd, and courageously defended themselves, but the Emir Hussein, son of Conbec, their leader, Berka Berlas, his brother, and the rest of the chiefs were constrain'd to fly to the desert. Several of em were kill'd: and abundance of horres, camels, sheep and other spoils taken, which being join'd to the other booty of our soldiers, they counted above eight hundred thousand sheep; and the soldiers were so fatig'd, that they cou'd not carry away the rest of the spoils.

When Timur was arriv'd in the neighborhood of Hama, the evil destiny of the inhabitants excited 'em to commit acts of hostility against our men: they destroy'd the edifices our soldiers had built when they were there the first time. This action inflam'd Timur's wrath, who permitted 'em to be pillag'd: the inhabitants were made slaves, and their houses set on fire, after they had taken from 'em their best effects.

The army march'd from Hama to Aleppo, from whence to Damalcus are several distances. After some days journey they came near Aleppo, and the Emirs Seid Azeddin, Hezaregher, Chah Chahan, and Monir Tui Bonga, who were in the castle belonging to that city, rais'd the walls, burnt the houses, as well as the suburbs of the town, and join'd the imperial camp. After four days journey the army arriv'd at the banks of the Euphrates; and the Mirzas Roustem and Aboubecre, with the Emirs of the right wing, arriv'd there at the same time, coming from the lower part of the river. The Mirza Seid Sultan and Husein Sultan, with the Emirs of the main body, came there also by water: and they had all the honor to kiss the imperial carpets, and other presents of the booty they had taken in their inroads. There was so great a number of cattle in the camp, that a sheep was sold for a Dinar. As the Mirza Sultan Husein had perform'd several brave actions, and done the duty of a good subject in the last inroads, he obtain'd a pardon for his former fault, and kiss'd the emperor's hand, who promis'd to restore him his best favors, and take care of his advancement.

CHAPTER XXIX

Timur crosses the Euphrates, and camps in Mesopotamia.

AFTER all the Mirzas and Emirs had joined the imperial camp, orders were given to repass the Euphrates: and accordingly two boats were brought from the town of Bire, on the east side of this river, to transport the emperor's baggage. The Mirzas, Emirs and soldiers swam over, and encamp'd near Bire, the governor of which came out to salute the emperor, bringing him presents: and in acknowledgment of his services, his highness confirm'd him in his government, and the inhabitants receiv'd no damage from our troops. Cara Osman arriv'd at this place, and kissing the imperial carpet, made his presents; and he had a handsom reception.

The army being departed thence, Timur had a desire to hunt in Mesopotamia: the soldiers of the right and left wing form'd the great circle of five days journey in circumference: and the circle growing less and less, they found so much game of all sorts near the mountain of Rafelain, that they took the beasts with their hands. After the chase, tables were erected for a general banquet to eat the game which had been taken, wherein the most delicious wines were serv'd up: and as an incentive to drinking, they eat roe-bucks and antilopes, whose flesh is very tender, and the best-tasted of any creatures of the desert.

Then

Then they decamp'd from Bire; and when they were come to the town of Edessa, the principal persons came out with presents to salute Timur, who treated 'em handsomely, assur'd 'em of their lives, and sent 'em back contented. Passing farther, they found a castle inhabited by Armenian robbers. Timur gave orders for their being exterminated; and they were accordingly put to death, their goods seiz'd on, and the place sack'd. During these transactions Mendon Chah Candegi arriv'd from Samarcand; he had an audience of the emperor, to whom he gave an account of the good state of affairs in Tranfoxiana. There also came an officer from the empresses Tonkel Canur and Tugman Aina, and another from Salcan, from the town of Serai Mulk Canur, with presents of gold and jewels: and all these messengers inform'd the emperor of the good health of the princes his sons.

CHAP. XXX.

Timur marches to the town of Samarcand.

THEN the army march'd towards Mendin. Timur sent back Mendon Chah Candegi, and the officers of the empresses, giving 'em presents, and letters full of affection for the princes his children. To the same place came the Salcan of Hufai Keifa*, and the

* The same as Raha and Orpha.

* Corruptly call'd Hufai Keif, a town on the bank of the Tigris between Samc and Mendin.

ran off with the other princes and Chap-
lains to their quarters. They brought presents
and precious stones today before the emperor,
and they had the honor to kiss the imperial
cassock.

As to the Sultan of Ispahan, we have already
remark'd, that he being reduc'd to obedience,
had been imprison'd by the emperor's order
in the castle of Sultania; that Timur in com-
passion to him had pardon'd him, and given
him a vest, with much civil treatment; and
that he had promis'd to become a faithful servant
as long as he liv'd, and let slip no opportunity
of giving marks of it, that so he might render
himself agreeable to the emperor, and merit
his favors. After this it became him to follow
our army into Syria with his troops; or if thro'
the nearness of the enemies, there was any dif-
ficulty in that, he might at least so have sent
one of his sons or brothers. But as he had fail'd
in this particular, he was conscious of his fault;
and dur'd not come to meet his highness. Ne-
vertheless Timur, being arriv'd near his fron-
tiers, had the goodness to ask after him, or-
dering him to come before him in very oblig-
ing terms: but this unhappy prince, giving
way to his evil destiny, had the insolence to
refuse to come, and dream'd of depending on
his own strength, persuading that it was not to
be conquer'd by force. In effect, as a long siege
was necessary to the carrying it, and in the
neighbourhood were abundance of fertile plains
full of forage, and proper to encamp
in; Timur was contented with ruining and

Timur took the castle of Ispahan, which was
situate upon an inaccessible rock, large enough to contain
much

burning all the houses of the lower town, as well as the markets; and he ordered Kara Osmán, governor of Malatya, after having honored him with a vest, to form the blockade of Merdin, and shut the inhabitants up so close, that no one might be able to escape.

Timur used abundant civility to the Sultans of Hamah, Kena, Arzina, and the other neighboring places, who were come to pay their devours to him at his arrival. He gave to each a robe wove with gold, a belt set with precious stones, and a sabre with a gold handle; and he permitted em to return to their own countrys. Then Timur sent the Emir Alandad to Samarcand, with orders to march afterwards to Herat, to take care of the frontiers of Geter.

CHAP. XXXI.

Timur sends troops into Georgia, and to Bagdad.

THE army being departed from Samarcand, Timur ordered the Mirzas Salim, Baskin, Pir Mehmed, Omar Chah, and Aboubekr, as also the Emirs Gehan Omar, Fendur Coja, Said Coja, and others, to march with a great body of the army to Aleucie by the way of Anatolia.

much ploughed lands. Here are great springs of water; and the garrison stand in no need of the our-pans of the country.

The Arabian says, that to be desirous of taking a sign to seek the friendship of an envious man, is as sign to the blind.

to make themselves masters of Alengic, and Chagatai
 from thence to pass into Georgia. The Mirzas
 and Emirs departed according to order; but as
 Alengic had been besieged already two years
 by others of our troops, (for when the army
 march'd towards it, the Chahs Mohamed
 Derog, with the troops of the Mirza Miran
 Chah, Buzurg Chah, and the Mirza Chah,
 went to besiege it, and press'd it so closely,
 that half of the inhabitants died of hunger;
 they being in so great want of victuals, as to
 be oblig'd to eat old leather, skins and such like
 things, to appease their hunger; and when these
 things fail'd, 'em at last, constrain'd 'em to go
 out and collect up the pieces) Alengic, I say,
 having been besieged two years, when the Mir-
 zas and Emirs came near Avenic, and heard of
 the reduction of Alengic, instead of marching
 to it, they turn'd towards the neighbouring Geor-
 gia, where they made great havoc, to surprize the
 Georgians, whose country they ravag'd. This
 exceedingly disturb'd Malek Gourghin, who
 sent an ambassador to the Mirzas, to acquaint
 'em with the great surprise he was in at their
 coming into his country, telling he was one of
 the emperor's most faithful servants, and to assure
 'em that as soon as his highness shou'd come into
 those quarters, he wou'd not fail of paying his
 obedience to him. The Mirzas fear'd no longer
 to march, with advice of Ghourghin's submission;
 they pass'd ravaging his country, and staid at
 Mendon, which is a place proper to pass the sum-
 mer in, to wait the answer of the court; and
 know whether the emperor wou'd grant quar-
 ter to Ghourghin. The same day an order was
 issu'd out for the Sultan Mahmoud Can, the
 Mirza Roustem, the Emir Solymen Chah, and
 other Emirs, to march at the head of their

Book IV. ~~Book IV.~~ ~~These~~ ~~lords~~ ~~set~~ ~~out~~ ~~immediately~~, and after several days march arriv'd at Bagdad, and encamp'd on the south-side. Farrudge, of the Mogul hord of Gelair, was governor for the Sultan Ahmed. The vast multitudes of Turks and Arabians, who were assembled in this city, render'd Farrudge insolent; and confiding in the strength of his walls, and the number of his soldiers, he even dar'd to ~~set~~ ~~out~~ to oppose the Tartar army, and rang'd his men in order of battel in the view of ours.

* In Cour-
restan.

As soon as the rumor of the arrival of our army was spread, the Emirs Ali Calander of Mendeli*, and Dgian Ahmed of Bacou*, began their march against us, and pass'd the Tigris at Medaine. On the other hand, Fering Chah of Hille, and Micail of Sib, also departed with the same design, and join'd together at Serler; and with three thousand men well arm'd advanc'd to fight. The Mirza Roustem, the Emir Soliman Chah, and others, immediately took horse with their troops, and surrounded the enemy. They repuls'd 'em as far as the Tigris, and a bloody battel ensu'd near the castle of the Emir Ahmed. Dgian Ahmed was there slain, with a great number of his bravest soldiers: many cast themselves into the river and were drown'd, while the rest escap'd with a great deal of difficulty. After the defeat, one wou'd have thought Farrudge shou'd not have held out any longer; but this peasant, who had never before been master of a government, and had attain'd this only by cowardly intrigues, cou'd not resolve to quit his new dignity of governor, but found a pretence to excuse himself. "The Sultan Ahmed my master, says he, made me swear, that if Timur shou'd come in person,

8. I will surrender the city for fear of bringing the people into misery: But he that enters a town should not come in person, whatever number of troops approach'd, I should make a stout defence, and not deliver up the place: and I must obey my master's orders."

Under this false pretence, he gain'd over the inhabitants and militia, whom he posted upon the walls to defend the city. There he us'd all his efforts; for he excited the soldiers upon the walls, and advanc'd upon the water in a boat, discharging a shower of arrows on our men in the rear.

In the mean while Timur advanc'd towards *Tharise*; he pass'd by *Nassibon*^a, a strong place, which he gave orders to besiege and raze; but the inhabitants coming out with presents, and bringing the keys of the fortress, Timur gave out quarters, and sent them away with a charge from the palace of the emperor. The army being arriv'd at *Moussat*^b, they built a bridge over the *Tigris*, which all the troops cross'd in a week.

CHAP. XXXII.

Timur besieges and takes Bagdad.

THE Emirs who were before Bagdad, sent an express to the emperor, to acquaint him with Farrudge's sentiment, and the pretence with which he color'd over his obstinacy in defending the city. On this advice Timur

^a A town of *Courassan*, long. 76. 30. lat. 37.

^b A town of *Mesopotamia*, long. 77. lat. 36. 30.

chose the bravest men of his army, and leaving the empress Tchelpam Mule Agda, with the rest of the troops and baggage, under the care of the Mirza Charoc, accompany'd by the Emir Chamelik, whom he order'd to march to Tauris by Tchinaran and Galaghi, he departed in person for Bagdad, by the way of Altoun Cuprud²; where being arriv'd, he encamp'd at the lower part of the river, over against the gate of Carriet Ulacab; and all the troops camp'd round the city. He immediately order'd the sappers to begin to work. The Mirzas and generals of the Tomans, Hezares and Couchons, had the sappers each before his post, and some bodys of the troops to sustain 'em. Farrudge being desirous to know whether Timur was there in person, sent one to him whom he had confidence in, in quality of ambassador, because this person knew him, having had the honor to see him before. The ambassador met with a handsom reception; and after his audience was honor'd with a vest, and at length dismiss'd. At his return he gave Farrudge an exact account of what had pass'd; but this governor, tho' he well knew he spoke the truth, accus'd him of dissembling, and put him in prison, lest others shou'd likewise know the truth from him: and then giving out that Timur was not there in person, he continu'd to defend himself, and committed hostilities, not considering what the consequence wou'd be. Then the Cojas Mafatod Semani, and Mengheli, who were employ'd in building a platform, which might have a prospect upon the city of Bagdad, were wounded with arrows, and soon after expir'd.

² A bridge on the river of Altoun Souj near Mosul.

Timur sent Loeman Pavachi to the Mirza Chaghatay, to order him to return to Bagdad with the baggage and the rest of the army. Loeman found the Mirza at Calagh, and accompany'd him in his way to Bagdad. When this great army was assembled together, Timur review'd it: and the astonish'd inhabitants no longer look'd upon their city as the house of peace, but as the palace of hell and discord. The troops encamp'd on both sides the river, and surrounded the city, tho it was more than two leagues in circumference. A bridge of boats was built over the Tigris below Carret Uchi: and several skilful archers were laid in ambuscade down the river, to hinder any from flying. The care of the upper part of the river, was given to the Mirzas Miran Chah and Charoc, who encamp'd over against Sons Eshkan. On the other side of the Tigris were Mehemed Arad, and Timur Baruch Goy, to guard the forepart of the city, that no one might get out that way. In fine, it was so block'd up and environ'd on all sides, that tho the Tigris pass'd thro the middle of it, and there was a great number of boats, yet it was impossible to get out. During these transactions, Ahmed Ogoulchay, governor of the castle of Alengik, who was seiz'd after the taking of the place, was brought to Timur, who order'd that he shou'd be put to death, and the castle committed to the care of Malik Mehemed Aoubekhi. The execution of this order was given to him who had brought Sidi Ahmed to court.

At the same time the Emir Moufiz arriv'd from the Sultan Mehemed Sultan at Transoxi-

* Bagdad is call'd Daresselem, that is to say, the house of peace.

ana, and gave the emperor an account of the good state of affairs in that kingdom. He presented him with a piece of a balas ruby, weighing one hundred and twenty Medicales, dug out of the mine of Bedakchan.

In the mean while Farrudge and the inhabitants of Bagdad were struck with fear; so that they fought not so much out of bravery as from despair: they perform'd actions, of the greatest rashness, which almost exceeded human power; for as soon as the Tartars having made a breach, had set fire to it, and a side of the wall was about to fall, the besieg'd immediately repair'd the breach with mortar and brick, and entrench'd themselves behind. It was then summer, the sun being in Cancer; and as Bagdad was situate in a country near the tropic, the violence of the heat was so great, that the birds fell down dead; and as the soldiers had on their cuirasses, one may say they even melted like wax: nevertheless they rais'd a high platform, which commanded the city, from whence they incessantly cast great stones out of their machines. The Mirzas and Emirs fell several times on their knees before the emperor, begging leave to make a general assault, that they might take the city sword in hand: but Timur wou'd not consent to it, saying, perhaps the besieg'd may come to a sense of their fault, beg pardon, and deliver up the place, that they may save themselves from being slain or made slaves, and that the kingdom may not be entirely ruin'd. But fate had fix'd it otherwise; for these unfortunate people continu'd in their stubbornness, notwithstanding the dearth and scarcity of provisions, the siege having already lasted forty days.

The night of Zilcade 803, at noon, when the inhabitants by reason of the heat of the sun, not being able to stay upon the walls, had retired into their houses, and fix'd their helmets upon sticks which they had erected in their places, our army undertook to give a general assault. The Mirzas and Emirs furiously advanc'd, and having fix'd their scaling-ladders against the walls, the Emir Cheik Nouredin mounted first, and erected his horse-tail upon the wall, crown'd with a half-moon. He caus'd the trumpet to be sounded, and the drums and kettle-drums beat: immediately all the captains in their respective posts mounted the walls, and then cast them down into the ditch: the troops enter'd the city sword in hand, and Timur advanc'd to the foot of the bridge which had been built below Bagdad. The soldiers being in the place, the inhabitants endeavour'd to get out by all the ways they could, but in vain: so they were constrained to cast themselves into the Tigris, where escaping the swords of the Tartars, they became the prey of the fishes. Several got into boats, and others swam, to gain the lower part of the river; but they were no sooner come to the bridge than they were shot by the soldiers arrows, who lay in ambuscade. Farrudge embark'd with his daughter, and found means, notwithstanding all Timur's precautions, to escape by water. He was pursu'd along the banks of the Tigris by our soldiers, who discharged upon him a vast number of arrows; whom not being able to resist, he was constrain'd to cast himself and daughter into the water, where they were both drown'd, and the boat sunk to the bottom. The boatmen had orders to fish up Farrudge; and having drawn him up out of the water, they cast his unfortunate

Chap. 32.
July 23.
1401.

Book V. nate carcase upon the bank. As there had been several Tartar soldiers slain in the general assault, each soldier was order'd to bring one head^a of the men of Bagdad; which they accordingly did, and spar'd neither old men of fourscore, nor children of eight years of age. No quarter was given either to rich or poor; and the number of the dead was so great, that no one cou'd count 'em up, tho the Tavachis had orders to register it. Towers were made of these heads, to serve as an example to posterity. Some learned men found means to cast themselves at the feet of the emperor, who granted 'em pardon and quarter, and even gave 'em vests and horses, with a convoy to conduct 'em to what place of security they desir'd: all the rest of the inhabitants were exterminated. Afterwards Timur gave orders that there shou'd not remain one single house in the city unrav'd; but that the mosques, colleges and hospitals shou'd be spar'd. Accordingly they ruin'd the markets, caravanseras, hermitages, cells, monasterys, palaces, and other edifices. Thus, says the Alcoran, *The houses of the impious are overthrown by the order of God.*

^a Arabischah says two; and that there were fifty thousand inhabitants of Bagdad slain in cold blood. They hung away the bodies, and made trophies of the heads pil'd together. There were one hundred and twenty towers made of the heads for trophies.

C H A P. XXXIII.

Timur's return from Bagdad, and march towards Tauris.

AFTER the Tigris was grown red with the blood of the inhabitants of Bagdad, and the air began to be infected by the dead bodys, Timur decamp'd from that city the beginning of Zilhadge, and march'd a league towards the upper part of the river. He encamp'd near the tomb of the great Imam Abou Hanifa, chief of one of the four orthodox sects among the Mahometans, to implore the intercession of this saint. Then he sent a messenger with letters and orders to Moufike, who was come from Transoxiana; which messenger he order'd to be accompany'd by Nemedee, Deroga^{*} of Khivak[†], that this Nemedee might have the care of the government of Carazem in the absence of Moufike, and till his return to the Mirza Mehomed Sultan.

Timur order'd the Sultan Mahmoud Can, and the Mirza Caleb Sultan, accompany'd by several great Emirs and a good number of troops, to make inroads in the neighbouring places. They hasten'd to obey this order, pass'd by Hiss, and went as far as Mechad Nedgef[‡];

^{*} Deroga is the particular governor of a town.

[†] A town south of the Gihon, in the kingdom of Caracum.

[‡] A place in Irac Arabi near the Euphrates, where Hussein, grandson of the false prophet Mahomet, was slain by the soldiers of Yazide, son of Marwan. To this place they go in pilgrimage from all parts of Asia.

But instead of attacking that holy place, they paid their devotions there: then they ravag'd Hille and Vaset, and return'd to court laden with booty.

Timur took the road to Chehrezour and Calghi; and leaving the care of the baggage and main of the army to the great Emirs, he order'd 'em to march slowly behind, while no one should separate from his Train or company. The emperor made haste, accompany'd by the Mirzas Miran Ghah, Charoc, and Cail Sultan: But while they were on their march, the Guardes were so rash as to attack those who were separated, tho' at ever so small a distance from the army, and rob 'em. Timur being inform'd of their boldness, plac'd soldiers in ambuscade round the roads; and as soon as these villains appear'd, our men sallying out of their ambuscades, seiz'd 'em, and hang'd 'em upon the spot on the chesnut trees which grew in the roads. As to these chesnut-trees, I have heard it reported by very credible persons, that one year they produce chesnuts, and the next gall-nuts*; which appearing so very extraordinary, I thought fit to mention it. Timur being arriv'd at the river of Jaxartes, the empress Serai Mulk Canum, Canzade, and the other wives of the Mirzas, with their children, among whom was the Mirza Oulouc-Bec, came to meet his highness, and kiss'd his feet at Sinaper, congratulating him on his conquests, and sprinkling upon him precious stones and pieces of mony. After having offer'd their presents,

* I believe the author is mistaken, supposing the Oaks which produce gall-nuts alternately with acorns, to be chesnut-trees, which are very uncommon in Syria.

they arriv'd, and being arriv'd at Acziaret; encamp'd there. The Cherifs, doctors and principal lords of the empire of Iran, cloth'd with scarfs of Ihhrane which they wear in the mosques, came as far as this place to meet Timur, who gave 'em a handsome reception. They staid twenty days at this place; and the baggage and remainder of the army soon arriv'd. And as the most learned Imams, and doctors were assembled in this place, Timur, who was extremely desirous of being enlighten'd upon any questions of religion, invited 'em to dispute upon some point of doctrine, for the better clearing up of the truth: he employ'd himself in this exercise as long as he continu'd at Acziaret. Afterwards he gave leave to the Mirza Roustem to return to Chiraz, with order, as soon as he shou'd arrive there, to send to court Hassan Yander, and Isfan Iseddoul.

C H A P. XXXIV.

Timur sends the Mirza Chares to Arzendgian.

DURING Timur's stay in Syria, Bajazet, surnamed Idurum or the Thunder, the Ottoman emperor, thro the instigation of Selan Ahmed Gelair and Cara Yousef Turcoman, who had fled for refuge to his court, brought an army into the field; and to revenge himself for the ruin of Sebaste, he march'd to besiege Arzendgian, which he made himself master of, having routed Taharten. Mobei, Taharten's lieutenant, was kill'd in the battle; and Bajazet sent the disconsolate wives and children of Taharten to Broussa; and then re-

turn'd

turned himself. When Timur was departed from Acziaret, had pass'd by Oudgian, and was encamp'd at Hechtroou, that is to say, the eight rivers, he receiv'd advice that Bajazet was again marching towards the east, upon which he order'd the Mirza Charoc forthwith to fall upon the Ottoman, and make him repent of his boldness; he appointed the Emirs Sopyman Ghay, Chamchik, and other chiefs of Tatars, and colonels of Hezars, to accompany the Mirza. He then sent orders by the Emir Mezrab, to the Mirzas and Emirs who were gone out to make inroads in Georgia, and had stop'd in Mencoûl, to depart directly to join the Mirza Charoc, which they accordingly did. The Mirza being far out from Avenic, and arriv'd at Nevine, met the Cheik Ali, nephew of Taharten, who brought advice that Bajazet, fearing the success of his bold undertaking, had besought Taharten to intercede for him with Timur, that he might obtain pardon for his hostilities, on condition of his future obedience; that he would send ambassadors with letters to make a treaty of peace, and a sincere alliance between the two empires, that so the Tatars might live quietly; and that he promis'd that if the peace should be concluded by the intercession of Taharten, he would send back his wives and children, whom he had carry'd to Broussa. The Mirza Charoc sent the Cheik Ali to the emperor, to give him an account of this affair; and staid himself some time where he was. Timur having decamp'd from the eight rivers, went to Oudgian, and staid some days in the Kiochik of Argoun.

* A town of Azerbaijan near Tauris.

CHAPTER XXXV

Arrival of the second empress Touman Aga,
and the ~~young~~ princes, from Samarcand.

What I have said before, that when the king
 decamp'd from Damascus, orders were
 sent to the empress Touman Aga to repair to
 court with her children. As soon as the prin-
 cess receiv'd that letter, she hasten'd forth.
 When she arriv'd at Bexma, she went to visit the
 tombs of the saints, and among others that of
 the Ghiek Seifeddin Bagrezi, whose intercession
 she besought. She cross'd the Gihon at Amou-
 ye, and passing the desert, came to Herat,
 and then enter'd the city. As she enter'd the
 gate, she went to the tomb of Ali, where she visited
 the tomb of the great Ali, making vows, and
 distributing alms. When she was arriv'd near
 Oudgian, Timur went to meet her, and had the
 pleasure of seeing and embracing his dear chil-
 dren the Mirzas Ibrahim Sultan and Sad Vat-
 cas. He return'd thanks to God for his favors,
 and afterwards gave audience to the empress
 Touman Aga, and his daughter, the princess
 Begum Sultan, as also his cousin Sad Sultan Aga,
 who paid their respects to him. After having
 staid several days at Oudgian, Timur took the
 road to Samarkand, hunting in his way. When he
 was arriv'd there, he went into his imperial pa-
 lace, where he inform'd himself of the affairs of
 all his people, and did justice to those who had
 been oppress'd by his officers. Then the Coss
 Ali Semnani arriv'd from Herat, and the Coss
 Seifeddin from Selznar; they saluted the em-
 peror,

Book V. peror, and made their presents. Timur gave
~~em~~ a place in the Divan, in consideration of
 their services.

CH A P. XXXVI.

*Timur marches into Georgia, and to Carabagh
 Asia.*

TIMUR having staid some days at Taur-
 ris, resolv'd to march into Georgia: he
 went to encamp at Comtoun, where he order'd
 the Coja Hmaet Cavasi to be hang'd before the
 market place of the camp, to punish him for the
 tyrannys he had exercis'd upon the people. He
 afterwards cross'd the river Araxes, and went to
 encamp with all the army at Nakchivan. And
 as the castle of Alengic was near Nakchivan, he
 was desirous to see that strong place, which had
 been taken by his foldiers in so short a time, and
 carrying with him ~~his~~ ^{his} ~~camp~~ ^{camp}, with the
 princes his sons, and his favorite Emirs, he care-
 fully examin'd the place, and remain'd in that
 camp.

About this time Taharter arriv'd at court,
 where on his knees he presented Bajazer's letter,
 gave an account of his repentance, and begg'd
 pardon for him; which he did with so much elo-
 quence, that he appeas'd the emperor's wrath,
 and obtain'd his desire. Timur staid some days
 at this place, during which time he sent an
 ambassador into Georgia, to Malek Ghourghin,
 to demand the tribute of him. Then the
 Mirzas, Pir Mehemed son of Omar Cheik,
 Sultan Husein and Aboubecre, with the E-
 mirs who had been sent to Meneoul, to join

the Mirza Charoc, arriv'd at court, and saluted the emperor. The army decamp'd from the meadow of Nakchivan, went to the defile of Chabboz, and enter'd into the mountains. Timur being arriv'd at Ghentcheytonkez, had a desire to take the diversion of hunting; and when the day began to close, as usual, they took a very great number of fags. After this chase, he encamp'd, and the Mirza Charoc came with his Emirs, and had the honor to salute the emperor at that place. Afterwards they departed; and when they were encamp'd at Chemkour, which is a delicious place, Idemson of Coja Seifeddin Berlas, arriv'd there from Kerman; he kiss'd the imperial carpet, and made his presents. The commiffary, whom Timur had sent into Georgia to receive the tribute, impos'd on Malek Ghourghin, likewise return'd to the same place. That prince sent with him his own brother, together with various presents, among which were horses and animals proper for the chase; he also sent the tribute impos'd on him. He had an audience of the emperor, by the intercession of the great Emirs, and having offer'd his presents, related the subject of his embassy. He said that the king his brother had resolv'd to continue obedient to the laws of the emperor of the Mussulmans; that if he had committed any fault, he sincerely repented of it; and if his highness wou'd pardon him, he wou'd not let one opportunity slip of rendering him his services; that he wou'd faithfully pay his annual tribute, and always keep troops ready to march where his highness shou'd please to order 'em.

Timur pardon'd Malek Choughrin; he look'd upon his brother with a favorable eye, and giving him a vest, permitted him to return home. He order'd him to acquaint his brother that he forgave him; and wou'd quit his country, on condition that he kept within the bounds of his duty; that he treated the Mussulmans of Georgia civilly, and protect'd em from all insults and oppressions; and that he rais'd an army, which he shou'd send directly to the Imperial camp.

Then Timur sent to Samarcand Temur, son of Acbonga, with other Emirs, to serve under the Mirza Omar, in quality of lieutenant-general in the government of Transoxiana. The army departed from this place, and went to encamp at Caraultopa, where they receiv'd advice that the Mirza Mehemet Sultan, who had orders to return from Samarcand to court, was dead at Nichabour, and that the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin, his lieutenant-general, was dead. Timur was sensibly touch'd with this news, and melted into tears, for all the good services he had always receiv'd from that faithful servant.

C H A P. XXXVII.

Timur passes the winter at Carabagh. Arrival of the Mirza Mehemet Sultan from Samarcand.

AFTER a month's stay at Caraultopa, Timur departed; and having pass'd by Ghendge and Berdaa, went to encamp at Carabagh Arran the 22d of Rabiulather 804, which answers to the year of the Serpent, the sun being

in the sign of Sagittarius. They built houses of reeds for Timur and the Mirzas his sons; and within the inclosures they erected tents and pavilions. And as Timur's intention was to make war in Capchac in the spring, the face of the pavilions was turn'd towards Derbead; and every one took up his winter-quarters, after Timur had distributed the money in his treasury among the soldiers and Emirs. But at this time ambassadors arriv'd from Capchac: they obtain'd an audience by the intercession of the great Emirs, and on their knees assur'd the emperor of their Can's submission and perfect obedience. The respectful terms they us'd appeas'd his anger, who granted 'em pardon, and assur'd 'em of his friendship.

Then advice was brought that the Mirza Mehemed Sultan had pass'd by Ardebil, and was arriv'd at Agam, at the head of his army. The Mirza, Beglar Khan, Chahar, and others, as commanded by all the great Emirs, hasten'd to meet him: they cross'd the bridge of the Araxes, and join'd the Mirza on the bank of the river Agilouc. The Mirzas embrac'd their brother with tenderness and affection, reliev'd their joy, and congratulated him on his happy arrival. The Mirza Mehemed Sultan went to cast himself at the emperor's feet, with the ordinary ceremony; Timur embrac'd him, discours'd with him of the fatigues and length of his journey, and gave him a thousand benedictions. The Mirza offer'd his presents, as did also the Emirs of his court. For joy of this happy arrival the emperor made a great feast for several days, where the emperors and ladies appear'd with extraordinary splendour. Timur particularly distinguish'd the Mirza Mehemed Sultan: he plac'd a crown of gold on his head, and gave him a belt of the same metal.

tal, with nine sets of Arabian horses, with saddles of gold. When the feast was over, Timur again took upon him the care of the public affairs; and the first thing he did was to finish the process against the Mirza Eskender, whom the Mirza Mehemed Sultan had bound for a fault he had committed: he was interrogated in a full Divan, and being cast, receiv'd the bastinado appointed by the laws of Yafa; but at length his chains were taken off, and he set at liberty.

C H A P. XXXVIII.

Timur sends troops to make incursions in divers places.

WE have before remark'd, that the Sultan Ahmed Gelair, for fear of Timur's troops, had fled from his city of Bagdad for refuge into Natolia to Bajazet. Upon the rumor of Timur's march, the same Sultan departed from Bajazet in the neighborhood of Cæsarea in Cappadocia, and went towards Chaldea, which is call'd the Arabi: he pass'd by Calat-Erroun, and along the banks of the Euphrates; he went to Hit, and thence to Bagdad, which city he endeavor'd to rebuild, tho entirely ruin'd; and he got together all those of his party who were dispers'd, and wander'd about as vagabonds in the deserts. Timur being inform'd of this, resolv'd to exterminate 'em before they shou'd be able to gather to a head: to which purpose he held a council with the Mirzas and Emirs, and order'd four bodys of the cavalry to march each a different route. The Mirza Fir Mehemed, son of Omar Cheik,

his orders to go towards Lorestan, Couzel-
tan and Valet; the Mirza Aboubecre, with se-
veral Emirs of Tomans, was to depart for Bag-
dad: the Mirza Sultan Hussein and Caim Sultan
were order'd to go with several Emirs into cer-
tain places of Chaldeea; and the Emir Befendar
was order'd to march with a good troop, to pil-
lage Bezire, and endeavor to exterminate the
robbers. And as the Courdes had dar'd to com-
mit insults against our army, on its return from
Bagdad, and had rob'd some of our soldiers who
were scatter'd; the emperor order'd that the first
of these robbers they met should be destroy'd
without mercy.

Tho it was winter, and the cold exceeding
violent, because of the snow, so that it was im-
possible to pass without laying felts before one;
yet the Emirs readily obey'd their instruc-
tions. The execution was begun upon the
Gourdes robbers, who, forc'd by the snow and
violence of the cold, were come down from their
mountains, and had encamp'd in the plains of
Derbend Tachi Catoun: an infinite number were
put to the sword, some would have fled into the
mountains, but were hinder'd by the snow and
cold, and constrain'd to submit and beg quarter,
which was not granted, because their own wicked-
ness had brought upon 'em the wrath of Ti-
mour.

The Mirza Aboubecre, having the Emir Ge-
hancha for his lieutenant-general, took the road
to Bagdad, and blocking up the ways on all
sides, arriv'd there in the evening, when the
Sultan Ahmed least expected him. The Sultan
was so surpris'd and press'd, that he cast himself
into a boat in his shirt, pass'd the Tigris, and
accompany'd by his son the Sultan Tahar, and
some

Some officers of his household, took the road to Hille. Our troops repos'd themselves that night at Bagdad; and next morning, when they were assur'd of the Sultan's being gone to Hille, the Emir Gehan Chah was detach'd in pursuit of him, and went as far as Hille; but as the Sultan, who had caus'd the bridge to be broken, was gone towards the lower part of the Euphrates, into the isles of Khaled and Malek, Gehan Chah would not march so far, but staid at Hille, and sent a horseman to give advice of it to the court.

The Mirzas Sultan Hussein and Calil Sultan pass'd by Chépchemal, and pillag'd Mendeli, from whence the Emir Ali Calander, who was governor of it, for the Sultan, Ahmed, had pass'd the river, and having got together some fugitive troops, posted himself on the bank of the Tigris. The Mirza Calil Sultan, sent by the upper part of the river the son of Gehanghir Berlas, at the head of five hundred brave men, with orders to swim over the river, and attack 'em in the rear, while himself, with his army, lay in their view to amuse 'em. This detachment cross'd the Tigris, attack'd the enemy in the rear, while the Mirza's troops swam over the river, charg'd the enemy on both sides, and having defeated 'em, pillag'd and brought 'em away prisoners of war, after having burnt alive their commander, who had had the boldness to defend himself.

The Mirza Pir Mehemed, with his lieutenant-general the Emir Solyman Chah, pillag'd a Doubendar the hords of Saki and Fili. He was join'd by the Mirza Roustem, who, according to his instructions, was come from Chiraz to pass the winter at Chuchro; and they went toge-

ther towards Abada and Vafet. The Cheik
 Courde, offer'd himself to be their
 guide, and advis'd 'em to ford the Tigris at Cou-
 peler; they afterwards march'd all night, and
 came to Mabedia, where they rais'd Sidi Ah-
 med Kebir. From thence they march'd two
 days, to plunder the Arabians of Abada,
 from whom they brought away great spoils of
 horses and camels. They went no farther, but
 crossing the Tigris, return'd to Chuchter, the
 government of which the Emir Solyman Chah
 confirm'd to Doucom, and that of Dezfoul to
 Mehemed Adjab Chir, as likewise that of Ha-
 viza to Temour Coja, and that of Conzeran with
 its finances to Chamleddin Dendar; but by
 way of retaliation he exacted of 'em great sums
 of money. Then the Mirza Roustem departed,
 in order to return to Chiraz.

All the Mirzas and Emirs, who were gone to
 make incursions into divers parts, raid the whole
 of Chaldea, where they several times
 beat the enemy, and brought away a great
 quantity of booty: and in the spring they took
 the road to the imperial camp, and being all
 join'd at the bridge of Gals near the mountain
 Dgebelhamri, twelve leagues from Bagdad, and
 four from the dome of Ibrahim Lic, they march'd
 together to court, to give an account of what
 they had done.

A town in Arabia, frontier of Chaldea, on the Persian
 Gulf, and Bayra or Baffora.

C H A P. XXXIX.

The causes which oblig'd Timur to return to make war on Bajazet the Ottoman emperor.

AS Cara Yousef, prince of the Turcomans, had begun afresh to commit disorders in the Mussulman country, robbing all passengers of whatever quality, and even insulting the great caravan which goes yearly to Hio-giaz and Mecca^{*}; and afterwards fearing the just indignation of our monarch, was fled for refuge to the country of the Ottomans, which was a sure asylum to all the robbers of Asia: Timur, who made it a point of conscience to quell the disorders which affected the Mussulmans, resolv'd to make war upon Bajazet. This prince receiv'd the news with indignation; and all the people of Natolia were so seiz'd with fear, that the principal men of the state, as well lawyers as Clerics, waited upon him, and gave him the following advice.

The Ottoman
counsel to
Bajazet.

"The prince who designs to march upon our country, is so formidable and powerful, that he has destroy'd all who have refus'd to obey him. Whatever his armys undertake, they easily accomplish: and they have never yet attack'd a province, city or fortress, which they have not soon reduc'd. It is impossible, mighty emperor, to execute so great designs without the favor of God; which makes us presume that to wage war with such an enemy,

* Every Mahometan kingdom sends yearly a caravan for the pilgrims to Mecca.

“ is against the rules of prudence. We believe it
 “ best to act with him in the ways of peace and
 “ mildness; and that your highness shou’d use
 “ all your efforts to do what he desires of you,
 “ and to maintain a good correspondence with
 “ him.” Chap. 19.

The fear which had possess’d Bajazet made
 all this appear reasonable to him. He wrote
 a letter to Timur, full of submission and obe-
 dience, which he sent by a Cadi of the law,
 accompany’d by an eloquent Emir skilful in ne-
 gotiations, who went in quality of ambassadors
 to our conqueror. They arriv’d in the imper-
 rial camp at Carabagh Arran; and by the inter-
 cession of the Mirzas and great Emirs were ad-
 mitted to an audience: they fell on their knees,
 and having kiss’d the imperial carpet, presented
 their letter, and gave an account of the subject
 of their embassy. The letter import’d, “ That
 “ since by the infinite favor of the great ruler
 “ of heaven and earth, your highness has been
 “ rais’d to the throne of the empire of Asia,
 “ we willingly resolve to be entirely obedient
 “ to you: and if for the time past, we have
 “ acted contrary to our duty, we assure your
 “ highness that we will repair the fault by our
 “ zeal in embracing all opportunitys of paying
 “ our homage and services.”

Bajazet’s
 letter to
 Timur.

Timur having heard the ambassadors harangue,
 and read Bajazet’s letter, answer’d ’em in these
 terms. “ Inasmuch as we have been inform’d,
 “ that your master wages war with the infidels
 “ of Europe, we have always cast off all de-
 “ signs of marching into his country with our
 “ army, not being willing to consent to the
 “ destruction of a Mahometan country, which
 “ will cause a great deal of joy to the infidels.
 “ But there can be nothing more disagreeable to
 “ us,

Timur’s
 answer to
 Bajazet’s
 ambassa-
 dors.

" us, than to hear that he grants a protection
 " to Garz-Yonfesi Tarcoman, the greatest rob-
 " ber and villain in the whole earth, who pil-
 " lages the merchants, murders passengers on the
 " high-ways, and commits a thousand other in-
 " fufferable disorders: and what is most dange-
 " rous is, that this wretch resides in the midst
 " of the Mussulman country, where he is as a
 " wolf among the sheep; and the evil he does
 " is a thousand times worse than what a stran-
 " ger could do, tho' he was the most powerful
 " monarch in the world. If your master has
 " a real desire to remove the causes of our quar-
 " rel, and keep a good correspondence with
 " us, he must resolve upon one of these three
 " things; either first, to put Garz-Yonfesi to
 " death as a criminal, after a legal process;
 " or secondly, to send him to us bound in
 " chains, that being convicted of his crimes,
 " he may receive the punishment due to 'em;
 " or thirdly, that he at least expel him out
 " of his dominions. On these conditions we
 " will maintain a friendship with your master
 " as far as possible; and give him proofs of it
 " by the powerful succours we shall send him
 " to carry on the war against the infidels more
 " vigorously."

The ambassadors receiv'd the emperor's an-
 swer with all possible marks of respect. Then
 his highness took horse to follow the diversion
 of the chase; he pass'd the river Araxes, and
 the plain of Actam was chosen for the place
 to hunt in. This vast country was surrounded
 as usual; and the circle growing less, the em-
 peror and the Mirzas enter'd; and with their
 lances slew what game they pleas'd. Timur
 permitted Taharten and the Ottoman ambassa-
 dors to enter the circle with the Mirzas: Seve-

ral officers of the household, as Mehemed Azad, Chap 39. Duplest Baourtchi, and others, had the same honor; and they slew a prodigious number of beasts. In the mean while the circle press'd closer, and there were five or six ranks of soldiers behind one another: and then the Mirzas and Emirs came out of the circle, and order'd the beatings to be sounded. The beasts, surpris'd at this noise, fell upon one another in such great numbers, that they form'd a kind of mountains. Then all the cavalry were permitted to kill and bind the beasts; and the chace was so great, that every one took five or six with his own hands.

After this hunting, Timur return'd to the camp; and in few days made a most magnificent feast, in which he did particular honor to the Ottoman ambassadors, gave 'em caps of gold, and belts; and said 'em that he wou'd take up his winter quarters in this place, and at the spring let out for the frontiers of Natolia, where he wou'd wait the arrival of the ambassador whom he shou'd send to their master; that if he brought a reasonable answer, he shou'd be glad; if the contrary, the sword shou'd determine who was in the right. Then Timur sent with 'em, in quality of ambassador, Bayazid Tchempai-Eitchikede, with a letter to Bajazet: he gave 'em a numerous attendance; and then dismissed 'em all. The tenor of the letter was as follows.

"After the usual compliments, we declare
 "to you, that if what your ambassadors have
 "said be sincere and true, it is requisite that
 "what we have propos'd concerning Carr You-
 "sef Turcoman shou'd be immediately put in
 "execution; and that you send to us forthwith
 "one of your Emirs you can most advise in,
 "to

Timur's
 letter to
 Bajazet.

to confirm with an oath the articles of a treaty of peace between us. After that, by ambassadors and letters a good correspondence shall be maintain'd between us; so that the Mussulmans shall no longer fear any insults from either of us: otherwise you may expect to see our army enter your country, and ruin your monarchy. Safety be to him who follows the right way."

CHAP. XL.

Timur digs the river of Baxas.

IT is a common observation, that the grandeur of princes is known by the monuments which remain of 'em after their death. Never any potentate left so many of these marks of power as Timur. Some antient prince had dug a canal into which the Araxes was brought; but this canal was at length overflown, and its banks demolish'd. While Timur was hunting in these quarters, he by chance cast his eyes upon this beautiful relique of antiquity; and at the same time his ambition, and the desire he had to immortalize himself, excited him to repair this canal. To this purpose, he cross'd the Araxes, and regulated the manner in which this project shou'd be executed: the Tavatchis distributed the work among the Emirs, who were to take care that the soldiers wrought at it. This was carry'd on with so much vigor, that in a month two entire leagues of the canal deep enough for a boat to swim in, were dug. The place where it discharges it self into the Araxes is call'd Kiochke Tchenghichi; and the spring

head is at a place nam'd Surcapit. Timur gave it the name of Nehri Berles, that is, the river of Berles: and on its banks have since been built several towns, villages, mills, vineyards, gardens and pleasure-houses. The Timur employ'd almost all his time in war, with design to render himself master of Asia, using all the means of policy, which seconded by fortune, hath facilitated to him the conquests of this great empire, by a chain of almost incredible victorys; yet this prince, the better to transmit his memory to posterity, has erected so many stately edifices and other famous monuments, that this canal, with all its beauty, ought to be accounted one of his least undertakings, since if compar'd with the others, 'tis but as a rivulet to the ocean.

C H A P. XII.

Timur departs from Carabagh for the plains of Chemkour.

THE sun was now in Pisces, and the spring was advancing, when the emperor was as much resolv'd upon marching into the Ottoman country, the prince whereof was his enemy, as he was set against it by the consideration of the religious war which Bajazet at that time so zealously maintain'd against the infidels. His heart being agitated by two different motives, he remain'd in suspense. The vast extent of the Ottoman empire, the number and valor of its troops, who were perfectly skill'd in war, and prepar'd to defend themselves, did not a little contribute to keep up his hesitation. Moreover, our troops, having been employ'd

History of Timur-Bec.

employed for three years in attacking places fighting battels, and making inroads upon several enemies; were so fatigued, that the Emirs and generals fear'd they would be dishearten'd by this new enterprize; yet they dur'd not discover their sentiments, for fear of being thought guilty of cowardice or weakness. They judg'd it most proper to reveal their mind to Chamfeddin Ammoghli, who for his great wit, eloquence and strength of thought, had obtain'd so much access to Timur, that he cou'd declare his sentiments at any time, without being imagin'd thought ill of. The Emirs hereupon address'd themselves to him; and unanimously besought him to lay hold on some favorable opportunity to make known to his highness their thoughts of his march into the Ottoman country; they conjur'd him to let him know the consequence of it, and advise him to think seriously on it, before he began it; and they even engag'd him to apprise Timur of the astrologers opinion, that in the campaign against the Ottomans, there appear'd in the heavens an inevitable misfortune attending the Zagataian army. Chamfeddin willingly undertook this commission, and declar'd the Emirs sentiments to Timur, which were confirm'd by the prediction of the stars. Timur having heard him, order'd Moulana Abdalla Lefan, one of the most famous astrologers of the court, to be call'd before him: and to take away all fear from the Emirs, he interrogated him in public, and order'd him to declare freely the different aspects of the planets, and the judgment which might be form'd from them. Abdalla hereupon deliver'd the following prediction: "It appears by the Ephemerides

Admirable prediction of an astrologer.

"the present year, that the ascendancy of empire is in the highest degree of strength."

and that of the enemy in the lowest degree of Chap 41
weakness. A comet will appear in Aries;
and an army which comes from the east, will
make an entire conquest of Narok, the prince
of which will be taken prisoner.

The 13th of Rabe 804, Timur departed
from his winter quarters, and went to encamp
in a meadow dependent of Carabagh, Arran.

April 3.
1402.

The 21st of Schaban 804, which answers to
the year of the Horse, and is the first day of
the Gelalian year, he departed from Carabagh

April 27.

Arran for Chemkour; and in the mean while the
Mirza Mehemed Sultan cross'd the river of Cy-
rus, and advanc'd along its banks. Then Ti-
mur sent Moulana Obaid Allah Sedre to Ispa-
han to guard the imperial treasure there; he
sent to Chiraz Moulana Cotobeddin Garing,
to regulate the expences of the Divan, and the
revenues of the kingdom of Fars; and this mo-
nach having pass'd by Berda and Ghendge,
went down to the plains of Chemkour. They
staid here some days, that the cartel might
graze, and then they march'd towards Alatac.

Timur
C. 1000
1402

When the army was encamp'd at Tabadar,
which is on the frontiers of Georgia, on the
24th of Ramadan 804 which answers to the
18th of the month Qurdibehicht 324 of the
Gehali epocha, a son was born to the Mirza
Charok under the horoscope of Cancer. The em-
peror assur'd thanks to God, and nam'd the
prince Mehemed Djouk: the eunuchs, Mir-
zas, and other Emissaries congratulated his highness
and the Mirza Charok on this happy birth, and
the prince's Cardale was appointed his gover-
ness. The Mirza Mehemed Sultan, who had
pass'd the river of Cyrus, arriv'd the inhabitants
of the mountain Alatac, and then arriv'd
at Tabadar.

June 13.

Birth of
Mehemed
Djouk.

which

The history of Timur-Bec.

Timur's
letter to
Bajazet.

When the army was on their march, Timur order'd the empresses, and the Mirza's wives to return home with the young princes; and the were conducted by Cohlugadgi. They staid Tauris the rest of the summer, and towards autumn they went to Sultania. Timur at his arrival at Mencoûl, not being willing to do an thing against the rules of policy, sent a second ambassador to Bajazet, with a letter in these ter

“After the usual compliments, we give
“advice, that tho we are on our march to me
“you, yet our word is the same as we have
“fore declar'd: if you consent to what we
“fire, and put into the hands of our lieutenant
“the fortrels of Kemac, which has been al
“ways subject to the countrys under our obed
“ence, we will let you peaceably enjoy the king
“dom of Natolia, that you may continue the
“war against the enemys of the Mussulmans;
“and we will not refuse the succour which you
“may expect on that account. Do what you
“think best for your good.”

CHAP. XLII.

Taking of the castle of Tartoum.

TIMUR having been inform'd that there was a strong place in those quarters, nam'd Tartoum, in which were two hundred Georgians who refus'd to pay tribute, and insulted the Mussulmans and passengers; and that the prince who commanded 'em was absent, and had left in his place a lieutenant nam'd Ghirdgibec, his highness commanded the Emirs Chanchik Cheik Noureddin, and others, to go to that place, and take it at any rate. They accord

ing

ing to surrender before it; and sent to acquaint the emperor, that if they would willingly surrender, and pay the tribute, they should have quarter; but they refused so to do, and trusting in the strength of the castle, prepar'd to defend themselves. Our soldiers made the great cry, *Alla Eker*, and *Salli Alla Mohammed*; and having invested the place, they gave several volleys, discharging infinite showers of arrows. The besieg'd vigorously defended themselves for five days; and the sixth the place was taken: our men put all the Georgians to the sword, and having overthrow'n the walls, they raz'd the place, even to the very foundations. The governor, who escap'd, came to the foot of the throne to beg pardon; and obtain'd quarter for his life.

Timur staid at Avenic till the return of the ambassadors he had sent to Bajazet. When two months beyond the time agreed on were past, and he had no news from the ambassadors, he grew impatient. "In truth, said he, extradition is a strange thing. Whatever mischief we use with regard to Bajazet, in order to preserve Natolia, as being the frontiers of the Musfulman country, and hinder as far as we are able its being destroy'd by our troops; yet the Turcoman blood of this ignoble person won't permit him to deal civilly with us, and preserve peace and friendship between us. He does not send back our ambassadors, but carries his hatred and hostility so far, that we are constrain'd to enter his country with an army, tho we have no desire to seize by force on his dominions and effects. But this is the

* That is to say, God is the most great, and God like Mahomet.

result

The history of Timur-Bec.

“ result of providence, whose depths we are not
 “ able to fathom; and we know not whether
 “ the effects are design'd for good or evil till
 “ they happen.”

Timur sent back to Sultania the second em-
 press Touman Aga, with the Mirza Sadvarcas,
 son of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan; and he after-
 wards continu'd his march towards Natolia.
 When he was arriv'd at Erzerom, he was join'd
 by the Mirzas and Emirs who had pass'd the
 winter in Courdisan and Chaldea, where they
 had pillag'd and exterminated the enemy, as we
 said before, and had departed thence in the
 spring, with great quantity of booty, by the
 road of Conitah, and the mountain of Sou-
 mata.

C H A P. XLIII.

*Taking of the castle of Kemac. Arrival of
 ambassadors from Bajazet.*

THE castle of Kemac is noted in Asia; it is built upon a high
 steep rock, and is surrounded with a defile in
 form of a labyrinth. At the bottom of its
 walls are gardens and parterres of flowers on the
 bank of the Euphrates; and no prince has ever
 taken it by force. Several poets have compar'd
 it to the terrestrial paradise, because yearly
 for three days together, little birds, as big as
 sparrows, and unfledg'd, fall out of the air; the
 inhabitants gather 'em up, salt 'em, and use
 to serve 'em in pots. If they don't take 'em in
 three days, their wings grow large enough to
 fly away.

[illegible]

After having enter'd the place, of which they were to make a fortress, making a small fort, and having advice of the taking of this place, departed from the mountains Arrand- gian, and came before the castle of Koon, the government of which he gave to prince Tz- harten, because it was no more than three leagues from Arrandgian.

From this he began to work in earnest for the abolition of the Oregonian empire, and as the miners and laborers were crowded into cavern and steep places, he fearlessly attack 'em. But their men hearing of a disloyal fellow, they received the number of his troops, were seized with fear, for they came up to 'em, and with

azid Tchempai Elchiki

And Ichnemphaz Ezechia's
roman Porte, accomany'd by fresh ambassadors
from the emperor Bajazet ; he gave an account to
the emperor of his negotiation, and presented
the answer to the letter he had writ to the Os-
toman. This answer, which was very haughty
and arrogant, made appear that fate had resolv'd
the ruin of this monarchy: and that the emperor
could not surmounting up the difficulties, and
alleg'd reasons very unsatisfactory to the
council.

The Ottoman ambassadors, being admitted to audience through the mediation of the princess of the blood, they kissed the imperial carpet; and for their presents, which consisted of ten boxes of great price, several animals proper for the chase, and divers other rarities; and on the knees declared the subject of their embassy. The emperor having heard one, fell into a violent passion, refused their presents, and drove them out.

the Speaker of the House

of the House

of the House

of the House

of the House

navil

VI

VI

country, yet not

country, yet not

upon this. He has not been

and has not been the cause of Rome

to his destruction, he has not been

under his hand.

He has not been from me, that

he has refus'd to attend to my counsel,

and has carry'd his obduracy so far, he will

CHAP. XLIV

PM UR having refused to attend to my

in his own dominions, he has

in the present state of the

and has not been the cause of Rome

and has not been the cause of Rome

and has not been the cause of Rome

and has not been the cause of Rome

and has not been the cause of Rome

and has not been the cause of Rome

and has not been the cause of Rome

and has not been the cause of Rome

Timur's Army

and after

always behave them
then to acquire better
need

Thus all
by
great
Mirza
Sar

of victory, th-

near the
lions had their standards
likewise their cuirasses, saddles, quivers, shields,
lances, bucklers, clubs, and other arms, of the
same color. Another body of the army was
yet
violet and
regiment had
cuirasses. The Mirza having

The review lasted from three or four after-
noon, when Timur withdrew. He or-
dered the Ottoman army to be conducted
thru the ranks, to surround the arms &
beasts of the equipages, and were seized w
fear at the sight of this great multitude of
siers, having never seen anything like it. In
day Timur gave presents to the ambassadors
and at the audience of leave made the
in speech to the Sultan. He emphasized the whole

Dear

Chapman

ON

...and treat with more clemency than the
...father: On these
conditions

...have reason to
praise their prince's clemency, on whom the
merit of this action shall fall.

XIV.

Taking of the castle of Haron.

AFTER this, the spy who had orders to
take of every thing that could do
harm to the emperor that in these
...Haron, ...
...were requested, having found the
...
The ... On ... Boreas
were ... at the ...
road, they ...
wild fire, that they made the ...
treat from their walls, and ...
their heads. For the mean while ...

The History of Timur Sec.

Timur's great army, and soon
brought down the walls. A great shout was im-
mediately given, and all the soldiers ran to the
wood.

THE HISTORY OF TIMUR SEC.

THE HISTORY OF TIMUR SEC.

THE HISTORY OF TIMUR SEC.

THE HISTORY OF TIMUR SEC.

THE HISTORY OF TIMUR SEC.

THE HISTORY OF TIMUR SEC.

THE HISTORY OF TIMUR SEC.

THE HISTORY OF TIMUR SEC.

THE HISTORY OF TIMUR SEC.

THE HISTORY OF TIMUR SEC.

THE HISTORY OF TIMUR SEC.

THE HISTORY OF TIMUR SEC.

THE HISTORY OF TIMUR SEC.

THE HISTORY OF TIMUR SEC.

THE HISTORY OF TIMUR SEC.

THE HISTORY OF TIMUR SEC.

THE HISTORY OF TIMUR SEC.

THE HISTORY OF TIMUR SEC.

THE HISTORY OF TIMUR SEC.

THE HISTORY OF TIMUR SEC.

THE HISTORY OF TIMUR SEC.

THE HISTORY OF TIMUR SEC.

THE HISTORY OF TIMUR SEC.

THE HISTORY OF TIMUR SEC.

THE HISTORY OF TIMUR SEC.

THE HISTORY OF TIMUR SEC.

THE HISTORY OF TIMUR SEC.

THE HISTORY OF TIMUR SEC.

THE HISTORY OF TIMUR SEC.

THE HISTORY OF TIMUR SEC.

THE HISTORY OF TIMUR SEC.

THE HISTORY OF TIMUR SEC.

THE HISTORY OF TIMUR SEC.

THE HISTORY OF TIMUR SEC.

THE HISTORY OF TIMUR SEC.

THE HISTORY OF TIMUR SEC.

THE HISTORY OF TIMUR SEC.

THE N, the army, was encamp'd in the
valley, and the guides
of the river, which was very
narrow; that Bajazer was arriv'd at Tarsus with
a numerous army, and had seiz'd on the passage
of the river. This oblig'd Timur to turn to
the southern side of Nisolia: He took
his camp at Cefarea, and sent
before him his troops

going into the city. Timur was six days in his
march from Sebastic to Cefarea, and spent
that time, and granted quarter to the
city. At this time, the criminal at the innocent
some fled for refuge into caverns and caves;
whom the soldiers, pursuing, pillag'd the
effects, because of their being so suspicious.
It was the season for sowing the corn and pulse
in that country, the soldiers had orders to get
ther enough for the sowing, and to
on. Timur sent the Mirza Aboukhan, and
the Emir Chah Nonreddin, for leaders of the

The river of Cef-Imur, which falls into the sea, and
passes by Amasia.

Scouts

in the departure

of the animals and baggage

in the bank

and the

where

had

He

in

a

trench

which

should

be

for

a

barradoes

Timur

sent

thousand

horse

to

gain

in-

telligence

This

Emir

being

favoured

by

the

night

advanced

about

two

leagues

of

the

enemy's

cavalry

and

at

break

of

day

he

dis-

covered

he

was

near

Bajazet's

camp

so

he

hid

himself

in

an

ambuscade

to

wait

a

good

op-

portunity

As

soon

as

the

enemy's

scouts

dis-

covered

he

sent

him

to

wait

for

a

orders for the

and

encamp

and

found

a

trench

which

should

be

for

a

barradoes

Timur

sent

thousand

horse

to

gain

in-

telligence

This

Emir

being

favoured

by

the

night

advanced

about

two

leagues

of

the

enemy's

cavalry

and

at

break

of

day

he

dis-

covered

he

was

near

Bajazet's

camp

so

he

hid

himself

in

an

ambuscade

to

wait

a

good

op-

portunity

As

soon

as

the

enemy's

scouts

dis-

covered

he

sent

him

to

wait

for

a

good

op-

portunity

As

soon

as

the

enemy's

scouts

dis-

covered

he

sent

him

to

wait

for

a

good

op-

portunity

As

soon

as

the

enemy's

scouts

dis-

covered

he

sent

him

to

wait

for

a

good

op-

portunity

As

soon

as

the

enemy's

scouts

dis-

covered

he

sent

him

to

wait

for

a

good

op-

portunity

As

soon

as

the

enemy's

scouts

dis-

covered

he

sent

him

to

wait

for

a

good

op-

portunity

As

soon

as

the

enemy's

scouts

dis-

covered

he

sent

him

to

wait

for

a

good

op-

portunity

As

soon

as

the

enemy's

scouts

dis-

covered

he

sent

him

to

wait

for

a

good

op-

portunity

As

soon

as

the

enemy's

scouts

dis-

covered

he

sent

him

to

wait

for

a

good

op-

portunity

As

soon

as

the

enemy's

scouts

dis-

covered

he

sent

him

to

wait

for

a

good

op-

portunity

As

soon

as

the

enemy's

scouts

we wait the enemy here, to give time to our
 soldiers and horses to refresh themselves from
 the fatigues of a long journey: the other
 that we march into the midst of the country
 and ravage it, which will oblige them to pur-
 sue us with expedition: and so we shall de-
 stroy his army, which for the most part con-
 sists of infantry. He refused upon the first
 and order of his army to march. He left in the
 camp the Mirza Sultan Hussain with two thou-
 sand horse, and he went before to Agha, the
 Emir Herendar, Besteri, and other experienced
 companies, with orders to shut up the pass
 against the enemys, they should meet: some in-
 fantry were ordered to march with em, to dig
 trenches, and to be ready to fight at night.
 They were followed by Abderraman Pa-
 vachi at the head of the infantry. Those who
 had been sent out the preceding day to gain
 intelligence, met a party of the enemy, whom
 they put to flight, cut off the head of the
 and took another party on horse.

In the mean while the emperor advanced
 at the head of a thousand horse to-
 wards our camp, to observe the passage
 passed the night near our army without being
 perceiv'd, and lay in ambuscade in a defile.
 The morning, when our men returned from
 their inroads, he attacked em; and as they w
 but sixty in number, he had certainly defeat
 em, tho' they fought bravely, and ad-
 vanc'd towards our camp, had he not
 the squadrons of the Mirza Sultan Hussain

were sent to their assistance, so he was con-
fidently abandon em, and
his cavalry and infantry, who had taken the
road to Ancora, acquainted with the exactness of
their orders. The army march'd till it is the
day, pillag'd the country: and the infantry
who follow'd, dug wells in the road, to get
water for the rest. Timur finding this way so
good, went in three days to Ancora, and en-
camp'd near it with all his army. An Emir,
nam'd Tacoub, was governor of the fortress for
the Ottoman emperor: and the garrison consist-
ed of several of the bravest men in the coun-
try, who were resolv'd to defend themselves to
the last. Next day Timur took horse, and rode
round the city to view it. Then he gave orders
for the water of a rivulet which runs into the
city to be cut off, and the water to be stopp'd,
while the fortress was being taken by assault.
Some of his men then rais'd a bastion
which looks upon the rivulet, and almost
made themselves entire masters of the town:
but advice was brought from our scouts, that
Bajazet was advancing with design to surround
our army in the rear, and was but at four leagues
distance. On this Timur forthwith order'd the
host to be rais'd, and that those who were
mounted on the bastion should come down
fighting: and they forthwith descend'd.
The army march'd not far that day, but en-
camp'd, leaving the river behind em. Then
a trench was digg'd round about the camp,
and fill'd with bucklers and pikes, the
men being made all the night. There was a spring
fountain at the foot of a hill near the passage
of the enemy's army: and as the Ottomans had
no other water than this, Timur sent a great
body of soldiers to destroy this fountain, and
corrupt the water. When

The History of Timur-Bec.

When night came, Timur, after his closet as usual, to humble himself before God, and beseech him to give him the victory; when in the most devout manner he offered up the following prayer: "O Lord, who art the great creator

of the universe, and my particular benefactor, it is of thy grace alone that I hold the Mys Plate, and the whole country of India; and thou art the Lord who dost not

do me for me, redounds to thy glory; thou art the conqueror and the triumpher. On this occasion therefore I beseech the continu-

ance of thy favour, O Lord, who art the great creator of the universe, and my particular benefactor, it is of thy grace alone that I hold the Mys Plate, and the whole country of India; and thou art the Lord who dost not

do me for me, redounds to thy glory; thou art the conqueror and the triumpher. On this occasion therefore I beseech the continu-

ance of thy favour, O Lord, who art the great creator of the universe, and my particular benefactor, it is of thy grace alone that I hold the Mys Plate, and the whole country of India; and thou art the Lord who dost not

do me for me, redounds to thy glory; thou art the conqueror and the triumpher. On this occasion therefore I beseech the continu-

ance of thy favour, O Lord, who art the great creator of the universe, and my particular benefactor, it is of thy grace alone that I hold the Mys Plate, and the whole country of India; and thou art the Lord who dost not

do me for me, redounds to thy glory; thou art the conqueror and the triumpher. On this occasion therefore I beseech the continu-

ance of thy favour, O Lord, who art the great creator of the universe, and my particular benefactor, it is of thy grace alone that I hold the Mys Plate, and the whole country of India; and thou art the Lord who dost not

do me for me, redounds to thy glory; thou art the conqueror and the triumpher. On this occasion therefore I beseech the continu-

ance of thy favour, O Lord, who art the great creator of the universe, and my particular benefactor, it is of thy grace alone that I hold the Mys Plate, and the whole country of India; and thou art the Lord who dost not

do me for me, redounds to thy glory; thou art the conqueror and the triumpher. On this occasion therefore I beseech the continu-

ance of thy favour, O Lord, who art the great creator of the universe, and my particular benefactor, it is of thy grace alone that I hold the Mys Plate, and the whole country of India; and thou art the Lord who dost not

do me for me, redounds to thy glory; thou art the conqueror and the triumpher. On this occasion therefore I beseech the continu-

ance of thy favour, O Lord, who art the great creator of the universe, and my particular benefactor, it is of thy grace alone that I hold the Mys Plate, and the whole country of India; and thou art the Lord who dost not

do me for me, redounds to thy glory; thou art the conqueror and the triumpher. On this occasion therefore I beseech the continu-

...in-body of
...of the
...the great
...horse-tail, and upon that a hall-
...he had for his lieutenant-general the
...Lairzas Pir Mahomed Omar Khan, Bahadur,
and other princes his brothers,
Chamshah Abbas, Chamshah
Omar. Timur commanded a body of reserve,
composed of forty complete companies well
armed, with which he designed to form
part of the army which should

...the whole
...the enemy, as to
...the spoils of India. They
were covered with the most splendidappings,
and as usual armed with towers on their backs,
in which were placed images of wild-
beasts, to spread terror and disorder wherever
they should go.

Bajazet also took care to augment his force in
order of battle. The right wing was com-
manded by Pir Lams an European, his wife's
brother, with twenty thousand cavalry of Eu-
ropean make, dressed in armor from head to foot, so
that nothing could be seen but their eyes. Their
helmets were bound below the face by a padlock,
which when they open, their countenances and
features can't be seen off.

The left was led by Mahomed Khan
son of Bajazet, and composed of the best of
Turks. The main-body was under the com-
mand

Journal of Timor-Bee.

himself, but for his lie
thrust forward his
Mullah. The good man
was at the head of the rear
line, shouting to his men. All
in Pacheco's line. And he
gave orders to his men. The
captain
of the
army
was
in the
front
line.

About ten in the morning, the
Mullahs, before our eyes, themselves of
made, at the time.

THE
A. P. XLVIII.

I came in view of each other, being re
solved either to conquer or die. The drums
began to beat, and Fannir got off
his horse to go to the front, following the call
of the Sultan. He then he
mounted, and gave orders to his
enemy.
The Sultan, Aboubeck, at the head
vanguard of the right wing, began it
by a discharge of arrows on the op
wing, commanded by Mullahman Ch
jazer's eldest son. The English

CONFIDENTIAL

The Sultan, at his father's request, Amur
 to give him leave to enter the field of battle, and
 our monarch, perceiving our
 valiant soldier, led
 accordingly march'd forth at the head of all the
 Behaders whom he commanded ; and rush-
 ing speed into the midst of the Carra-
 he broke their ranks

up
24
re
by
tane
by
nightwing. The Minutemen, Michael,
and Iskander, with the French
Nobleman, Novakoff and Bernadotte,
were seen from the hills where they stood.
The French and the enemy began to move away.
The French and the Swiss to the left upon the
hills, and all the army of the general
and the army of the general, and quick
and the army of the general, and the army of the general.

Battle

The Injury of Timur-Bek.

between those of Timur and those of Persia, commanded by Ismail-Bek. Timur was nothing in comparison to the rest of an Ottoman army was put to the flight, and the rest fled.

While the brave Mohamed Sultan was in enemy's hands, his company's belief in this Sultan's valor was such, which proper

his own
the Mirza, rally'd, and with strength
several hundred, and was enough to all

disposition of the
order, or rather defeat, of
was seiz'd with fear. And as several of his
died came to him, who had fled out of both
right and left wing. Timur advanc'd till
the middle of the army, and came
Chah, with the Emirs of the
the Mirza Sultan Hussein,
man down, and
en'd thither like a lion, and with him
the troops, falling upon him with
him with his sword, and cut off the
chase. The Ottoman defend'd himself
brave hero, and stout warrior: He was
his ground all the day, notwithstanding
scraps till he was reduc'd to
was come the defeat of Persia in
Our soldiers charg'd a shower
him, and slew several of his
self escap'd from that danger.
brave warriors pursu'd him.

in the place where they
and ga for this glorious
The mine on their knees
sprinkled upon him gold and
This victory happened on Friday
of Zicadogo, which answers to the July 1.
year of the Horse 1402.

CHAP. XLIX.

The taking of the Ottoman

BAJAZET could not fly so swiftly, but
that he was overtaken by our brave men
who were in perfect order. Bajazet was
made a prisoner. Can seized him, and made him a prisoner.
Grand sent him under a good guard to Emir, the
Emir he was preferred at the house of the
Emir in his hands, by the great Emir. He
him in this condition, could not
of his heart; but was moved
pity of his misfor-
tune, and his hands to
be as he was before.
Bajazet was admitted to
the door of his tent, with great
and causing him to sit down by the
fire, and to him after this manner.

Tho

Bajazet.

"The accidents in this world happen thro'
 "the will of God, and as our, how powerful
 "lovers, can conduct 'em as he pleases; yet it
 "may be justly said, that you are the sole cause
 "of the misfortunes which have befallen you.
 "They are thorns which your-self have planted,
 "and a net which you have wove. You have let
 "your feet stray beyond their bounds, and have
 "compell'd me to march against you, to re-
 "venge my self for your insults. I cou'd not
 "have upon any thing, because I knew that
 "your troops were always at war with the infi-
 "dels. I have us'd all possible ways of instigation,
 "and my intention was, if you had hearken'd
 "to my counsels, and consented to a peace, to
 "have sent you a great number of soldiers, of
 "mony and troops, to assist you in your con-
 "quest with greater vigor, and to exterminate
 "the enemys of Mahomet. To prove your
 "friendship, I entreated you to deliver up the
 "fortress of Kemac, and to send back the family
 "and officers of Tabarten; as also to drive
 "out of your country Gue-Youf, Turcup
 "and send to my court an ambassador who
 "might be confided in, to confirm the treaty
 "of peace between us; but you have refus'd
 "to grant these small favors, and contin-
 "u'd in your stubbornness till affairs were dr-
 "own to an extremity. Every one knows if G-
 "had favor'd you with the victory, as he
 "me, in what manner you design'd to
 "treat me and my army. Notwithstand-
 "all this, to return thanks to God for my
 "fortune in this battel, I will neither
 "nor your friends ill; and you may rest
 "as to that point."

Bajazet's
 answer to
 Timour.

Bajazet, full of confusion, consents
 in these terms: "I have indeed done

follow

"followed the counsels of so great an emperor, Chap. 40.
"and have likewise receiv'd the punishment I
"deserv'd. If your majesty is willing to pardon
"me, I swear that neither my self nor children
"shall turn aside from the paths of obedience to
"your orders."

Timur then gave him a splendid vest, and comforted him by kind promises, and by treating him as a great emperor. Bajazet perceiving Timur's generosity, remonstrated to him, that his children Moussa and Mustafa were with him in the battel; that his heart being tenderly affected to 'em, he besought him to order that search might be made after 'em; and if living, that they might be brought to him: adding, that this wou'd be an addition to the obligations he shou'd be under to him during the remainder of his life.

Then the emperor order'd the Tavatims to search every where for Bajazet's children: they found only Moussa, whom they brought to Timur, who gave him a vest, and sent him to his father, for whom he had order'd a royal pavilion to be erected near his own, commanding Halas, Ismael, and Bayazid Tchempai to keep guard at the gate, and furnish Bajazet with every thing he shou'd want. Timur, in using Bajazet after this generous manner, imitated the great prophet

Mohamet, who, after the conquest of Mecca, returned thanks to God, and thus address'd the Meccans: "How do you think I shall use you as my enemies?" They answer'd in the proverb: "You are a generous brother, and the son of a generous brother: and the generous man pardons what he lies in his power." - Timur said to 'em, "I shall use you the same that Joseph told his brethren, who had misus'd him."

The History of Timur-Bec.

have nothing to reproach you with ; may God pardon you, for he is infinitely merciful."

CHAP. L

Timur orders troops to make inroads in divers parts of the Ottoman empire. He sends reinforcements, his victory to the city of Iran and the city of ... to make public rejoicings.

TIMUR then decamp'd, and went down to the meadow of Ancora; the governor of the city, nam'd Yacub, came out to meet him, and after having delivered up the city to the officers of the court, who resign'd it to Ali Sultan Tavachi. Then the commissarys of the Divan began to receive the tribute impos'd on the inhabitants of conquer'd places, as a ransom for their lives.

Timur sent the Mirza Mehmed Sultan northwards to the city of Prusa* in Bithynia, the seat of the Ottoman empire; and he was accompanied by the Mirza Aboubeck, and the Mirza Gehan Chah, Cheik Noureddin, Seydigid, and others, with their Tomans. The emperor order'd the Emir Cheik Noureddin to stay at Prusa, and seize on all the treasures of Bajazet, and the riches of that city. He likewise commanded the Mirzas and Emirs to ravage all the country as far as to the banks of Isara Yaca; otherwise

* Call'd Broula by the Turks; it is situate at the foot of mount Olympus; and was the seat of the Ottomans before the Turks took Adrianople.

* A shole towards Europe.

File of Alexander, He also sent the Chap-
 under with several letters towards
 Akcheher, Carak, Kilaia, and
 other cities.

Afterwards Timur order'd an account of his
 victory, and the conquest of the Ottoman em-
 pire, to be drawn up by Moulana Chamseddin
 Munchi, and sent into all the kingdoms of the
 empire, that public rejoicings might be made.
 The letter was dispatch'd to the empresses at
 Seltania; another to the Mirza Omar at Samar-
 cand; another to the Mirza Pir Mohamed Go-
 hanghir at Cabul and Zabul in India; another to
 the Mirza Rousten at Chitau, the seat of the
 kingdom of Persia; and others into Turkestan,
 Cachgar, Cotan, Bedakchan, Corassana, Car-
 zem, Mazendram, Tabarestan, Ghilan, Azer-
 bijana, Irac-Arabi, Irac-Ajami, Khorasan, &c.
 The copy of these letters had each of
 them a seal. On the arrival of one of them at
 Fezd, the Coja Cayaseddin Selar Semnani, who
 had resided there to receive Timur's revenues,
 built a magnificent chapel in the middle of the
 great square, which he nam'd the chapel of
 victory.
 The Mirza Calil Sultan had orders to go with
 his troops to Samarcand, and from thence to the
 frontiers of Turkestan, and to take care of the
 affairs of the kingdom; he was accompany'd by
 the Emir Mobacher and Dolet Timur Tavachi.
 As the Emir Achonga, governer of Herat, was
 dead, the Emir Meurah had orders to repair to
 that place, and accompany the Mirza as far as
 Corassana, where he shou'd stop.

* Famous city of Roum.

* A town of Persia.

The History of Timur-Bec.

Timur-Bec departed from Amoy and in six days
 he arriv'd at the fortress of Samarkand, the walls
 of which place he ascend'd, and observ'd the
 neighborhood with circumspection. He sent
 the Mirza Chamec to Ghulistan, Estanus,
 and Kenir, with ten Tomans of the left wing.
 The emperor himself went in two days to
 Khionuzhin, a delightful town, as well for the
 purity of the air, as for the charming taste of the
 fruit, and for the beauty of the gardens, houses,
 and the manner of the inhabitants. At this place
 exceedingly pleas'd him, he laid here a march
 and granted quarter to the inhabitants, at pay-
 ing the accustomed ransom of his vassals, and
 at the same time sent out his troops, which
 he had sent to the place. As soon as he arriv'd
 he sent the Emirs Chamelic, Abdelhamid, and
 Hadgi Seifeddin, with several captains of com-
 pany, to Kiarada, Coja Eili, and Mente-
 cher, being highly pleas'd with the con-
 quest of Naton, and the taking of the Otto-
 man emperor prisoner, resolv'd to make solemn
 feasts and rejoicings, to recreate himself after
 the fatigues of war. The most beautiful ladies
 of the court were at these entertainments, and
 the best wines of Asia were drunk, and the
 musicians perform'd extremely dextrously. In the
 mean while the troops sent out to make inroads

- Town of Roum towards the north.
- A town of Roum northwards, long. 62. lat. 43.
- Or Chioutaya, a noted city of Roum, long. 61. lat. 41.
- A town of Roum near Rhodes.
- A province of Roum near Rhodes.
- A province near Samarkand, which has a town of

name.

...and cavag'd all ... The manner ...
 ...in a manner ... by the ...
 ...had gain'd ... before had ...
 ...single horse ... in several ...
 ...through ... The ...
 ...return'd, thank'd their Creator, ...
 ...enrich'd ... distributed the ...
 ...Temen ... among the Emirs, which ...
 ...body of the commissary, and he ...
 ...for his own use, to shew 'em, that he ...
 ...rather for them, than for himself.

CHAP. LI.

*The continuation of the history of the Most
 Mehemet Sultan, who had been ...*
 ...Mirza Mehemet Sultan being de-
 ...parted from Ancora for Prusa, accord-
 ...ing to the emperor's order, made so much ...
 ...in the five days he ...
 ...thirty thousand ...
 ...arriv'd with him at Prusa. Yet he could ...
 ...not get there soon enough to execute the ...
 ...he had in hand, for ...
 ...got there before him, and led with all the ...
 ...belonging to his father, which he could ...
 ...with him. The principal inhabitants ...
 ...of the city ...
 ...by, some to mount ...
 ...Kechich Dagh, at the foot of which the city of ...
 ...Prusa is situate, and others to the ...
 ...Our soldiers ...
 ...away bound. The grand ...
 ...Mehemet Jazari, with the chief ...

The history of Timur-Bec.

was sent to the plains of Persia, by the Chah-
 mahebed Bocari, and Chahmahan Fanari,
 and others, who were gone out to make incursions;
 they pillag'd the Chahk, and brought him with
 his son to the Emir Cheik Noureddin. Bazeret's
 wife and two daughters, who had hid themselves
 in a house in the town of Yenicheh*, were
 taken; as was likewise the daughter of the Sul-
 tan Ahmed Gelan, king of Bagdad, whom Ba-
 zeret had demanded in marriage for his son Mu-
 rat, and who fled at Prusa with her atten-
 dants, while her father return'd to Bagdad in
 the country of the Ottomans, to which he had
 fled for refuge from our troops.

At this time, as soon as the army
 arriv'd at the city of Prusa, he fled from
 thence to the desert of Arabia.

After Prusa was reduc'd under the emperor's
 obedience with very little resistance, the Emir
 Cheik Noureddin enter'd the castle, and seiz'd
 on what was left of Bazeret's riches, among
 which were a great deal of silver-mony, vessels
 and furniture of gold and silver, pearls and pre-
 cious stones, rich stuffs, splendid robes, and
 other curiosities which had been lay'd up to-
 gether a long time. Ali Shamsi and Sameddin
 Touni, Bitikchis or secretaries to the imperial
 council, wrote an inventory of these riches.

When they had carry'd away the wealth of
 the place, the city and castle were pillag'd by
 the soldiers; and afterwards the houses were
 set on fire, which being built of wood, were
 soon consum'd.

* Four leagues from Prusa, and six days journey from
 Constantinople; the same as Yenicheh.

As soon as the troops which had been left behind were arriv'd, the Mirza Mehmed Sultan march'd to the sea-shore, and sent Mirza the Mirza Aboubacre, with ten thousand men; which is one of the most famous cities of Anatolia; the air and water being very wholesome. Near it is a lake two days journey in circumference, whose water is exceeding sweet and agreeable. This city is situate near the Hellespontus.

Timur sent the Emir Sevindgic with a great body of the army to Kianende, and along the sea-shore; and this Emir pillag'd all that country. The Mirza Aboubacre being come to Nice, march'd as far as the sea, slaying and plundering all he met. Mussulman Chelebi was there with several peasants: but having perceiv'd the fury of our soldiers, he was unwilling to fight the Ottomans, in order to great numbers, to resist them: so he embark'd, and cross'd the sea. *A sensible retreat, says the proverb, is sometimes as good as a victory.* Having pass'd the Bosphorus, he went to Sams Yaca; and his wife and effects fell into the hands of our soldiers. After the pillage of Nice, our soldiers ruin'd that town, and went as far as Tatche, ravaging every thing, and making the people slaves. The Mirza Aboubacre sent advice of the taking of Nice to the Mirza Mehmed Sultan, assuring him that all the country was now under the emperor's obedience, and that Mussulman Chelebi was fled with great difficulty into Europe. The Mirza receiv'd this

† A city of Bithynia, famous for the first great battle between the Turks and the Christians in 1354.

‡ A town on the gulf of Nice.

He sent by his camp in his meadow of Micalidge, of which he sent word to the emperor, as also of the state of other affairs, by a hundred men, who immediately departed. He also sent by the same persons a Choncar, which is a very large bird of prey, besides several other presents of great price. The Mirza Aboubecre also sent a Choncar by Ar-Sulcan.

Between Paula and Kiontchia, which are two days journey from each other, is a mountain full of very large trees, above four leagues in length, into which several peasants had fled for refuge: they attack'd the Mirza's messengers in a ditch with advantage. Our men, tho' far inferior in number, held their ground; and when Timur's soldiers, *Abdulla, Goussamach, Kalam, Ibrahim, Ahmed, Karamanli* lander, and Keler, defended themselves with so much bravery, that a great slaughter ensued: and the enemy were constrain'd to retreat, and let us pass by. They had the honor to salute the emperor at Kiontchia, and offer their presents, after having given him an account of all that had happen'd.

The Emir Cheik Noureddin having taken the gold and precious stones from the treasures of Bajazet's treasury, of which he had taken possession, deliver'd 'em to Chamfeddin Alma-leghi, whom he sent to Timur under a convoy of several brave men. Chamfeddin carry'd all to his highness at Kiondina. The Mirza Mehemed Sultan being return'd from Micaliden took up his quarters at Prusa, where he was join'd by the Mirza Aboubecr, who was come from making roads. The Emir Sevindgic also came there, after having pillag'd the villages on the sea-shore, and ruin'd Kianende. Then the Mirza Mehemed Sultan decamp'd with all his troops,

contiguous to that of Persia, where the Mirza Abontecre, with the emperor's permission, marry'd Bajazet's eldest daughter.

CHAP. LII.

Account of the Mirza Sultan Hussein, and the Emir Solyman Chah, who were gone out to make inroads.

THE Mirza Sultan Hussein, and the Emir Solyman Chah, who were gone out to make inroads in the southern parts of Natolia, plunder'd Kepec a Turcoman prince, and took the towns of Akcheker and Caraler, in which places the Emir Solyman Chah establish'd governors to defend the inhabitants from insults. He plac'd Tchekes Sontchi in Akcheker, impos'd a tax on the towns for the ransom of the inhabitants lives, and plunder'd every one who oppos'd him. He pillag'd the town of Tchaker Boulagh, and the hord of Caoumi Hamids, and seiz'd on so many horses, camels and sheep, that the soldiers were not able to bring 'em away. After having taken the town of Chehermara, he stop'd at Iconium: he took the tribute of ~~Cappadocia~~ from the soldiers he had made prisoners, which he sent to Timur. The Seid Coja, son of Cheik Ali, ~~governor~~ went to the country of Aidin, which he pillag'd, killing all the enemys he met as far as the sea-shore. Bajazet's treasure was carry'd upon mules and camels to Kionraha, where it was presented to Timur by the

† The tribute due to a prince from captives

Book 3. Emir Ghisk Noureddin, with Bajazet's family, and his beautiful slaves, who were good dancers, cou'd sing well, and play finely upon music. The generous emperor sent to Bajazet his wife, nam'd Destina*, daughter of Laus an European, with his daughter and all his domestics; but he was desirous that that princess, who till then had been tolerated in the Christian religion, even in Bajazet's seraglio, shou'd embrace Mahometanism. The Ghisk Cham-feddin Mehemed Jazari, who had been carry'd away prisoner of war, was likewise presented to the emperor. They brought to court the Emir Mehemed, son of Caraman, who had for twelve years been kept in chains by Bajazet. Timur shew'd him with a soft smile, and gave him the government of the provinces of Caramania, with Iconium, Larenda, Acserai, Anzarya, Alaya', and their dependences; and thro the protection of our monarch, all these provinces remain'd without opposition in the hands of this Emir, and after him in his children.

CHAP. LIII.

Timur departs from Kioutahia.

AFTER Timur had staid a month at Kioutahia in the delights of banquets and plays, he departed from thence, and was join'd

* The European romances call her Roxana, and say that Timur kept her for his own use; the truth of which Timur shor denies.

* City of Natolia.

in the city by the Mirza Mehmed Sultan, who Chap. 33.
 with the Emir Chamfeddin, and with the
 bey at Chelerno *, and with him out with Or Ye-
 the Mirza Aboubecre, the Emir Gahan Chah, nicheber,
 and Sevindgie Bchader, to return to court,
 where he kiss'd the ground before the emperor,
 and offer'd his presents.

Timur, who as emperor was oblig'd to take
 care both of church and state, issu'd out a severe
 order that the brave Sazote Maure and his bro-
 ther Mourad shou'd be put to death, for several
 crimes they had committed; and that even his
 son and other brothers shou'd be punish'd for, and
 treated in the same manner: which order was
 immediately put in execution.

The Mirza Mehmed Sultan, with the Mir-
 za Aboubecre, and the Emirs of his court, re-
 turn'd to join the baggage, which had been
 left at Tash and Chelerno. Timur march'd
 towards Samarkand, pass'd the mountain of
 Alambuch, and encamp'd in an agreeable mea-
 dow near it. He then gave orders that the Co-
 ja Firouz, prince of Isra Yaca, shou'd be put
 to death; and he afterwards made prepara-
 tions for feasts and banquets, with music and
 dancing; and the wine was serv'd about by the
 most beautiful damsels of the country. Timur
 invited Hajazet to these entertainments; that as
 he had tasted the bitterness of his wrath, he
 might now partake of the sweetness of his friend-
 ship. Hajazet was conducted into the assembly
 with great honors, and Timur did every thing he
 cou'd to please him: he spar'd neither caresses,
 nor expressions of kindness and affection; and in
 fine, he even granted him the investiture of the
 kingdom of Natolia, which he had possess'd be-
 fore his disgrace: then the crown was plac'd on
 his head, and the scepter put into his hand, with
 the

Book V. the presents usually given to princes for their governments. After this Bedreddin departed, and continu'd his road towards Tanguishiq.

CHAP. LIV.

Timur Bedreddin comes into divers countries. The arrival of several ambassadors.

TIMUR sent the doctor Bedreddin, son of the Cheik-Chamreddin Melik-lazari, into Egypt, in quality of ambassador to the Sultan Farnage son of Barsaï, the Emperor of Natolia.

Timur's
Letter to
the Sultan
of Egypt.

"By the grace of God, the Sultan of Natolia is now reduc'd under our authority, and join'd to our dominions. Our will at present is, that the money which is coin'd at Grand-Cairo, and throughout all Egypt, be in our name; and likewise that the prayer of the people be made in our name, and with our titles. We will also that without delay you send Arimichan, and if, inspir'd by your own good will, you readily execute these orders, we let you know that at our return from the Ottoman country, which will be shortly, we shall march to Grand-Cairo at the head of our ever-victorious army. And that you may not pretend ignorance, we send you this ambassador, whose merit you are sufficiently acquainted with."

Bedreddin departed with full instructions the first of Rabiulevel 803, accompany'd by several couriers, who carry'd relations of the conquest of Natolia into Syria, with orders to publish

Octob. 25.
1402.

public affairs. Moulana Omar conducted Ghazni
the ambassador as far as Satala, where he em-
barked for Alexandria, from whence he was to
go to Cairo; and Omar returned when they had
the fall.

Timur likewise sent two ambassadors to Con- Embassy
stantinople, namely nam'd Etenbol, to the to the em-
Tecour, Greek emperor, to summon him to peror of
pay tribute and customs. He afterwards Constanti-
sent two messengers to find out Musulman Che- nople.
lebi, Bajazet's son, who had fled to Isra Yaca,
and resided at Ghuzelhissar, which his father
had built over against Constantinople. These
messengers had orders to tell him that he must
repair to court forthwith, or at least, send some
money to Timur; otherwise the army would im-
mediately cross the sea to seek him, which he
would have cause to repent. Some time after
the ambassadors had been sent to the Greek
emperor, he sent two others, with two others,
who were to make their master's submission to
Timur. They had the honor of an audience;
and having notify'd the Tecour their master's
respects and obedience to his highness's orders,
they declar'd his consent to pay an annual tribute,
and the customs, and to do every thing he could
obey of him. At length the ambassadors offer'd
their presents, which consisted of gold, skins,
and several curiosities. Timur impos'd on em
them what he thought reasonable; and they con-
firm'd it by a solemn treaty. Afterwards he
gave them safe conducts, and permitted em to return
home.

A town in Europe, built by Bajazet. There is another
of the same name in Naples, near Tiro, on the river Mon-
douras.

When

The history of Timur-Bec.

When Timur was arriv'd at Boulouk*, he was join'd by the messengers he had sent to Mahmoud Chelebi; and with them came the Chok Ramadan in quality of ambassador, with several presents of animals, horses and fowls. This ambassador, who was a very illustrious person having been prime minister to Bajazet, and grand Cadi of the empire, brought a letter from his master to Timur in these terms. "I have the honor to tell my self your highness's servant. If you have had the goodness to pardon my father, and have done him the honor to grant him a place in your imperial assembly, according to his rank; I have all the reason in the world to confide in your highness's bounty: and I am now at the foot of your throne, to perform the duties of a faithful servant in whatever you shall please to command me."

Timur receiv'd the letter and the ambassador's speech very graciously, and return'd the following answer. "All that ought to have happen'd in this affair has happen'd: fate has executed its project. We have pardon'd all that is pass'd: and so your majesty may come here without any fear, that there shall be no more animosity between us: but that may give him some marks of my favor." Then Timur presented a belt and a cap of gold to the ambassador, and dismiss'd him.

Advice was afterwards brought that the Sultan Mahmoud Can, titular emperor of Zagaya, who by Timur's order was gone to make roads in the Ottoman country, had been seiz'd with a violent distemper at Ketchic Boulough,

* A town of Naxos, long 61. lat. 40.

and ~~the~~ from this world into the other: Chap. 14.
at ~~the~~ nows Timur was very much afflicted.

mean while the Emir pillag'd the ma-
country's of Natolia. The Emir Chamolie
pillag'd Ketchie-Boudouga, Acynea, and Sata-
lia, situate on the sea-shore. The Cities An-
Seblai and ~~the~~ Selduz were gain. The pro-
vinces of Mentecha and Teke Eili were also
ward ~~the~~; and the Emirs return'd to come
back with booty. During autumn Timur lay
encamp'd at Tangouliq; to which place the
Scid Coja return'd, after having pillag'd Aidin.
As it was exceeding hot, and the air infected at
Tangouliq, several soldiers fell sick and died;
and even Scid Coja was near the point of death,
but the joy he conceiv'd at the good reception
his highness gave him, restor'd him to his health.

In this place is a fountain, which ~~the~~ per-
fys which ~~the~~ and ~~the~~, who
being ~~the~~ of ~~the~~, had drank of it,
lost their lives.

A penalty
ing was

CHAP. 15.

Timur regulates the winter-quarters.

TIMUR held a council with the Mirzas
and great Emirs touching the distribution
of the winter-quarters: he appointed a town to
each colonel, and sent orders to the Mirza Me-
hemed Sultan to pass the winter at the town of
Magni Siah* in the province of Serhan Eili.
This Mirza departed from Pusa to Micalidge,
* Or Sa-
roucan
Eili.

* Long. 60. lat. 40.

where

Book V. where he staid several days, from whence he march'd to Balikifra, which he pillag'd, and encamp'd in a meadow. In the night he was attack'd by Elias Soubachi at the head of a number of peasants, of which Velador had given advice, tho' too late; for the enemy came to surprize our camp, while part of the soldiers were gone to make roads, and the others were asleep in the camp without any precaution. The Mirza immediately took horse, and call'd out of the camp; and the Emir Gahan Chah with the other Emirs having join'd him, they fell upon the enemy, and having slain several, and constrain'd the rest to fly, they encamp'd in that meadow, till the Mirza's baggage arriv'd. The Emir Gahan Chah and his soldiers were sent to pillage the town of Magni Siah, where he pass'd the winter; this town is situate at the foot of a mountain, wash'd by many rivulets, the waters of which are wonderfully good, and the air is sweet, even in winter.

The Mirza Charoc, with the troops of the left wing, had the province of Ghanavand for his winter-quarters; and he encamp'd between Olenc-Bourlough and Kouch-Bourlough.

Timur departed from Tancouric, and march'd to Dougourlic, a town full of goods and all sort of delicious fruits, to the inhabitants of which he granted quarter on the payment of tribute for their ransom. Then he cross'd the river of Mendouras* on a bridg which Temourtach had built, and encamp'd on the other side.

* Or Madre, a river which passes by Tice in Nephelion, and falls into the Archipelago.

when they gave audience to the Emir Mehemed and Esfendiar, sons of the Emir of Mentecha, who made him present of a thousand horses. Timur, after giving them an honorable reception, presented 'em with a vest, a belt and a crown. Esfendiar follow'd the court, and Mehemed consented to pay the tax, and return'd to the place of his residence, with the receivers Elias Coutchin, Firouz Ghah, and Mirouz Ghah Cherbetdar. Timur being arriv'd at Ghuzelhissar, staid there some days till the entire payment of the ransom was made. Near this place was a mountain, in which two hundred peasants had fortify'd themselves: these rash fellows slew and pillag'd our soldiers, who were gone out to fetch in wood and forage. Timur being inform'd of this, resolv'd to attack 'em in the night. Several of our soldiers who were engag'd, invaded the mountain, and at break of day fell upon these villains, whom they cut in pieces, and afterwards return'd to the camp. The doctor Abdelgebbar Carizmi fell sick, and died in this place.

Timur departed some days after from Ghuzelhissar, and went to encamp at Ayazlic, where he staid several days: he order'd 'em to pay the tribute for their ransom, and establish'd a governor, and a comptroller of the finances. From hence he went to encamp before Tire, one of the most noted citys of Natolija, the inhabitants of which he oblig'd to pay the ransom for their lives: and those who were gone with the Emir Mehemed prince of Mentecha, to receive the sums these people were tax'd at, return'd loaded with ready mony, jewels and divers curiosities, and bringing with 'em several horses and other beasts, from this Emir; all which they presented to Timur.

In the mean while the emperor was inform'd that there was an exceeding strong place on the sea-shore, built of free-stone, surrounded with the sea on three sides, and on the other with a deep ditch, entirely built with lime and mortar, from the foundation to the top; that it was inhabited by Europeans, and nam'd Ezmir or Smyrna; that the Greeks esteem it a holy place, and go in pilgrimage thither with great devotion; that near it is another fortress on the ridge of a mountain, also nam'd Ezmir, but inhabited by Mussulmans, who incessantly wage war with the others, because of the difference of their religion; and as the Smyrna of the Christians is surrounded by the sea on three sides, and is a place of great commerce, and all necessaries, looking upon this place as of great importance, seeing it is at the extremity of Asia and of the Mussulman country; that it had never been taken by any Mahometan prince, nor paid tribute to any; that Amurat, Bajazer's father, had several times appear'd before it at the head of a formidable army, but to no purpose; and that Bajazer had laid siege to it seven years in vain; that this place was as strong as that of Caiber, and much molested the Mussulmans, whose blood was always flowing into the sea like torrents.

^a A place celebrated in the oriental romances.

CHAP. LV.

Timur besieges Smyrna, and takes it.

WHEN Timur was inform'd of the state of Smyrna, his zeal for religion inspir'd him with the thoughts that it was his duty to deliver the Mussulmans from troubles, by exterminating their enemies. Whereupon he sent thither the Mirza Pir Mehemed, son of Omar Cack, the Emir Cheik Noureddin, and others, to summon 'em forthwith to embrace the Mussulman religion, according to Mahomet's order; which if they shou'd be so fortunate as to do, they shou'd be well treated, and possess of his favour; and if they wou'd leave their obstinacy, tho they still remain'd Christians, and pay the tribute, he wou'd fix the sum, and order therecoit; but if they undertook to defend themselves, he wou'd order 'em all to be put to the sword.

The Mirzas and Emirs being arriv'd before Smyrna, sent an ambassador to invite the inhabitants to turn Mussulmans, as well by menaces as promises: but as they were predestin'd to perish, it all prov'd in vain. Mahmons, the governor, had sent to demand succours of all the European princes, so that there was assembled a great number of the bravest Christian captains, or rather a band of desperate wretches, who had laid up munitions in the place. Our generals sent advice of all this to Timur, who resolv'd to march thither in person. He left the baggage at the foot of the mountain of Tiro; and tho it was winter, and great rains had fallen,

Book V. yet he took horse that he might acquire the merit of this religious war. He arriv'd at Smyrna on saturday the sixth of Juma¹ level 805, and sent orders to the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, who was in his winter-quarters at Magni-Siah, to repair to him. The same order was sent to the Mirzas Miran Chah and Aboubecre, as also to the Emir Gehan Chah and others.

At Timur's arrival before Smyrna, the drums and kerbedrums were beat, and the great cry made by the whole army. The place was immediately attack'd on the land-side; and each general order'd the sappers to work, and the machines and battering-rams to be got ready over against his respective post; while arrows were shot, and pots of wild-fire thrown upon the gates of the castle. The Emir Chah is built in the midst of the water, great scaffolds with three feet, near one another, on which they laid planks: and from the two sides of the castle, to the place where the feet of the scaffolds touch'd the ground, they made an even way, which they secur'd on each side, so that the soldiers might fight upon it with safety, as if they were on land. The Muselmans arm'd with their bucklers, mounted the scaffolds, from whence they gave assaults upon the castle: and as the way was shut up to the sea-side, it was impossible to bring any succour to the besieg'd.

In the mean while the Mirzas Mehemed Sultan and Miran Chah arriv'd, having left the baggage at Magni-Siah under the conduct of the Emir Chamseddin Abbas: which re-inforcement did not a little serve to forward the siege. Then Timur order'd a general assault. The Emirs of Tomans, and the colonels of Hezares, advanc'd with their troops,

the respective posts; and the assault lasted from morning till evening, and from evening till morning, wherein the braven men of both sides perform'd actions of the greatest valor. The attack was carry'd on with resolution, the defence was equally so. The battering-rams and other machines beat down the walls and towers; and the dauntless besieg'd never cess'd throwing pots of naphtha and wild-fire, arrows and stones. In the mean while it rain'd in such abundance, that a second deluge seem'd approaching; notwithstanding which, the indefatigable Timur was always giving orders to his generals, and exciting his soldiers. After the sappers had done undermining, and prop'd up the bastions and courtines with stakes, they put in a great number of fascines done over with naphtha; which having set on fire, the walls on a sudden fell down, and with 'em several of the besieg'd, who were thereby destroy'd. The Mussulmans forc'd the enemy to quit the breaches, and then enter'd the place, returning thanks to God, and crying out, *Victory!* A few escap'd slaughter by casting themselves into the sea, and swimming to the vessels; while others were drown'd. After our soldiers had put the inhabitants of Smyrna to the sword, they raz'd the houses, as well of the city as of the castle, casting their arms and movable goods into the sea. There were come from certain parts of Europe great ships nam'd Caraca, with two masts, and some with more, which brought over soldiers and arms to succour the inhabitants. When they were come near the place, and beheld the town and castle in ruins, they were struck with fear, and anchor'd. Timur order'd that some of the Christians heads shou'd be thrown into these ships, which the sengers of wild-fire accordingly

Book V. cordingly did. The mariners seeing their companions heads, return'd in fear, and frustrated of their hopes. From the beginning of the siege to the ruin of the place there pass'd but two weeks; which very much astonish'd the men of that country, who were acquainted with the strength of the place; and especially Bazaar. Every one acknowledg'd that Timur was the greatest and most formidable monarch that ever appear'd in Asia. The author of this history in his travels afterwards pass'd by the walls of Smyrna, which then belong'd to the Mussulmans; and one of his companions having related to him the history of this place, the author express himself in these words: "Smyrna hath been ruin'd by Timur in less than two weeks, tho the Ottoman emperor in vain belieg'd it seven years." "judge from hence the power and conduct of each of 'em."

CHAP. LVII.

Second arrival of ambassadors from Bajazet's sons.

DURING these transactions the Cheik Ramadan, who came once before in quality of ambassador to Timur from Mussulman Chelebi, arriv'd here again; and being admitted to an audience, offer'd large presents of horses and other animals, curious stuffs, and florins of gold; and with abundance of submission made the following speech: "I take the liberty to represent to your highness, that since you have been pleas'd to pardon the emperor Bajazet, and load him with honors and favors, one

“ ~~and~~ ^{from} the fears he was in, and Chap. 57.
 “ ~~and~~ ^{for} advancements thro’ your high-
 “ ~~ness~~ ^{benevolence}. The prince Mussulman
 “ ~~his~~ ^{master}, who looks upon himself as one of
 “ the meanest servants of your court, and is re-
 “ solv’d to obey the orders with which you
 “ shall honor him, with all imaginable sincerity,
 “ waits with impatience for an opportunity to
 “ give you the true marks of his respect, and
 “ his desire to expose his life in your highness’s
 “ service, to whom may God continue ever-
 “ lasting glory and prosperity.”

The ambassador having ended his speech, Timur was touch’d with compassion for the deplorable condition to which Mussulman was reduc’d: he confirm’d him in the principality of all the country of Isfra Yaca *, for which he issu’d out patents, which he seal’d as usual with his red hand: he honor’d the ambassador with a magnificent vest, and a horse richly caparison’d, with a saddle of gold; and having given him a vest wove with gold, a crown, and a belt for Mussulman Chelebi, he dismiss’d him.

About the same time arriv’d an ambassador, nam’d Corobeddin, from Isfa Chelebi, another of Bajazet’s sons: being admitted to an audience, he kiss’d the earth, and made his presents; which Timur having accepted, the ambassador deliver’d his message, declaring his master’s respect, and obedience to whatever his highness should order. Then he return’d, after having receiv’d the usual honors, and the testimonys of friendship for his master.

Timur afterwards gave orders to the Mirza Mehemed Sultan to besiege the castle of Fodgia †,

* Isfra Yaca is Turkey in Europe.

† A town on the gulf of Smyrna.

Book V. situate on the sea-shore, a day's journey from Smyrna, because several European Christians had retreated thither. The Mirza immediately departed, and encamp'd before it; and was about to besiege it in form, when the governors of the place struck with terror at the name of Timur, came out to cast themselves at the Mirza's feet; and with submission and obedience gave consent to pay the tribute, provided quarter was granted the inhabitants. The Mirza agreed to their proposal, impos'd a tribute on 'em, and nam'd commissarys to receive it; after which he return'd with his Emirs and troops to Magni-Siah, where he had left his baggage.

C H A P. LVIII.

Timur departs from Smyrna.

AFTER the destruction of Smyrna, and the extirpation of the enemys of the law, Timur took care to restore peace and quiet to the Mussulmans who inhabited the other castle, giving 'em vests, bucklers, cuirasses, bows and arrows, sabres, lances, and all sorts of arms, to enable 'em to carry on the war of religion in these frontiers against the Europeans, and hinder the Grecian Christians ever passing into Asia this way; and he order'd 'em to build a strong citadel near the place where Smyrna stood.

After Timur had deliver'd the Mussulmans from the continual insults they receiv'd from the Christians of Smyrna, loaded 'em with favors, and succor'd 'em with arms and money, he departed from this country, and went to encamp

at Ancora, where he was join'd by the Emir Chap. 28.
Sobhan-Elah, who had departed from Ancora
on the roads, return'd by Elmas, and join'd
the Mirza Charoc at Caraigadge; but he came
none to court, and after his audience went back
to join the said Mirza.

An European nam'd Soba, prince of the island ^{Embassy}
of Chio[†], in which mastich grows, ^{from the} having
heard by credible persons of the great valor ^{prince of}
and power of Timur, sent him several pre- ^{Chio.}
sents by an ambassador, whom he order'd to ac-
quaint him that he was one of his meanest ser-
vants, willingly consented to pay the tribute,
and was ready to obey his highness's orders,
hoping Timur wou'd design to give him some
marks of his clemency. The ambassador being
arriv'd at the imperial camp, was admitted to
an audience, where he made an harangue in the
form his master had instructed him. Timur
handsomly receiv'd the king of Chio's offer of
service, promis'd protection to him and his sub-
jects; and after having fix'd the sum for a tri-
bute, made a peace with him: he gave a vest
to the ambassador, whom he honor'd, and per-
mitted to return home.

Timur then sent the Mirza Eskender, son of
Omar Cheik, and Ali Sultan Tavachi, to plun-
der the country of Bezem; they enter'd the ca-
pital of it, and having taken the ransom for the
inhabitants lives, return'd to the imperial camp.

After this Timur decamp'd from Ayazlic, and
being arriv'd at Tangouzliq, he was join'd by
the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, who had left his
winter-quarters at Magni-Siah, and having ta-
ken the road of Alicheher before the rest, came

[†] An island in the Archipelago.

The history of Timur-Bec.

to court with a small number of his domestics. Timur order'd him to march at the head of the troops of the right wing by the road of Andorra, and rejoin the imperial camp at Casarea. This Mirza staid at Tangouzliq till all his troops had join'd him. Timur departed from thence for Sultanhisar: he order'd a great number of peasants, who were got together in the neighboring mountains, to be put to the sword; and he gave the towns of Chiourab, Tangouzliq, and Caracheher, as well as the demesne of the province of Ghermyza-Eili to Yacoub Chelebi, to whom the principality of these provinces fell by right of succession. This kingdom had formerly fled from Bazar into Syria, after the conquest of which kingdom he follow'd Timur's court. The emperor issu'd out his patents to this purpose; and honoring him with a vest and belt, left him in this place, the principality of which remains in the hands of his children to this day.

The court took the road of Olouc-Bourlough, where it was join'd by the Mirza Charoe, who was come from his winter-quarters. As this place had not yet surrender'd, Timur gave orders that it shou'd be attack'd. It was taken in a very short time; and as the Emir Gelatchislam had been slain by an arrow, all the men were put to the sword, and the women carry'd away captive, after the razing of the place.

CHAP. LIX.

Taking of the towns of Egridur and Nasibine.

IN the province of Hamid-Eili is a lake of sweet water, five leagues in length, and four in breadth, into which several rivers fall, and go out again by other passages; and round it are kitchen-gardens, orchards, and cultivated lands. On the bank of the lake stands a town nam'd Egridur, built of free stone; three of its sides are surrounded by the lake, and the fourth by the mountain. This lake is nam'd Falac Abad by some historians. Near the town, in the middle of the lake, are two isles; one nam'd Chulistan, and the other Nasibine; in the latter, which is exceeding large, is built a fortress with houses and gardens. The people of the neighboring places had convey'd thither their mony and best effects; and abundance of soldiers were got into it, who had laid up stores of all sorts of ammunition, believing themselves safe, because of the lake which surrounds the place. Timur being inform'd of all this, conceiv'd it wou'd redound to his honor to conquer this place: whereupon he order'd the baggage to be conducted by the road of Alchicher.

About this time Bajazet falling sick, Timur order'd several skilful physicians of his court, as Moulana Azeddin, Mafound Chirazi, and Moulana Gelaeddin Arab, to attend him with the same care as they wou'd use towards himself: and Bajazet was conducted with the baggage.

Feb. 28.
1403.

Timur departed from Olouc-Bourlough, and in two days and one night arriv'd at Egridar the 17th of Regeb 805 in the morning. Next day the Mirzas and Emirs march'd towards the walls of the town: some ascended the mountain, while others attack'd the gate by the foot of the mountain; they gave assaults on all sides, and soon made themselves masters of the town, which they enter'd in a furious manner, and put most of the inhabitants to the sword, a few only escaping to Nasibine in boats.

Then Timur caus'd floats to be made of the skins of oxen and horses, on which the Mirzas and Emirs cross over to attack Nasibine, which they surrounded, ordering the drums to be beat, and the great cry made. The inhabitants were surpriz'd, not imagining they cou'd have been besieg'd by water. The governor Cheik Baba, perceiving he was unable to defend himself, went out, and besought the Mirzas to intercede for him. They brought him to Timur, before whom he kiss'd the ground, submissively begging pardon and quarter. Timur order'd that he and his family shou'd follow them. Thus Nasibine was taken by our troops, who brought to the camp all the riches they cou'd find, which Timur distributed among 'em.

Then Mobacher's son arriv'd from the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, to give notice that this prince was fallen sick. Timur was exceedingly griev'd, and sent a skilful phyician to him immediately, to discover the true state of his illness, and bring him back certain advice of it.

The court at length decamp'd, and march'd toward Akcheher; they met the troops of the left wing, and the Mirza Charoc's camp. This prince made a feast for Timur, and offer'd his presents; as did likewise the Sultan Hussain and the

the Emir of Saman Chah, who strove to excel each other in entertaining the emperor. At this time the Emir Mehemet came to court from Iconium; and under the name of a ransom, he presented such vast sums of silver money, curious stuffs, and great numbers of horses and camels, that it was believ'd he did more than he was able, considering the small extent and power of his country: upon which Timur distinguish'd him by several honors, and confirm'd him in his principality. As the emperor had before deliver'd him from prison, where he was detain'd by Bajazet, and had restor'd to him his father's estates, so he again join'd other countrys to his demesns, and dismiss'd him: after which the court departed, and continu'd its march.

CHAP. LX.

The death of the Ottoman emperor Bajazet, and of the Mirza Mehemet Sultan, Timur's grandson.

THE world is so inconstant, that we may rather look upon it as a continual destination, than an agreeable habitation; since there is nothing of a certain duration but God: a melancholy instance of which we find in Bajazet, who died of an apoplexy at Akcheher on Thursday the 14th of Chaban 805; at whose death Timur was so extremely affected, that he bewail'd the misfortune of that great prince with tears. He began to reflect how providence often baffles human projects; for he had resolv'd, as soon as he had finish'd the conquest of Natolia, to raise the

March 23:
1403.

dejected

Book V. dejected spirit of Bajazet, by re-establishing him on the throne with greater power and magnificence than he had before been possess'd of; but fate had otherwise order'd it.

Timur being got to the frontier of Akcheher, Dané Coja arriv'd from the Mirza Mehemmed Sultan, with advice that doctor Farradge had given some medicine to the prince, which had had an ill effect; and that the prince having got into his brain, he was fallen into a delirium. This news very much afflicted the emperor, who dispatch'd away Dané Coja post, to acquaint the Mirza that he won'd soon be with him.

Timur encamp'd at Akcheher, where he consult'd his officers by several letters he bestow'd upon them. He made a present to his son Moussa Chelebr of a royal vest, a belt, a sword, and a quiver enrich'd with precious stones, a load of gold, and thirty horses: he likewise gave him his letters-patent seal'd with the impresson of his right hand; and then dismiss'd him, telling him that the coffin of the deceas'd emperor his father was laid by his orders in the tomb of the Cheik Mahmoud Hairan at Akcheher; and that it shon'd be convey'd to Prusa with all pomp and magnificence us'd to the greatest kings, to be inter'd in the mausoleum, which he had built there himself.

Timur then left the baggage, and departed from Akcheher, for the place where the Mirza his grandson lay sick. On his way thither he learnt that the hord of Turcomans nam'd Durgot, whose chiefs were Kezerbei and Ibrahim, had revolted, and were entrench'd in a mountain near the great road, hoping to defend themselves there. Some troops being order'd against em, they block'd up all the avenues, and invest'd the mountain; and then attacking the Durgots with their

their hands, they led. One soldiers pursu'd Chagatai
'em in hand, flew several on the spot,
pillag'd their houses, canals, dams, and sheep;
and made their wives and children slaves, to
serve as an example to mariners.

The sixteenth of Chaban, Timur march'd March 25.
Coja son of Eltchi Bouga, who gave advice that
the Mirza's sickness increasing, his life was des-
pair'd of. This oblig'd Timur to hasten his
march; and being come to the place where he
was, he went up to his bed-side, where finding
him very ill, having lost his speech, he became
very disconsolate. Timur order'd the Mirza to
be put in a litter, and departed the same day.
When they had march'd three days journey, and
were come near Carahissar, they encamp'd,
and here the great and mighty prince, the Mirza
Mehemed Sultan, who was but nineteen years
old, pass'd from this life into the other, on the
18th of Chaban 805, which answers to the March 27
year of the Sheep, the sun being in the last de-
gree of Pisces. Thus died this great prince,
who tho' but a child in a manner, had already
obtain'd more victoriys, and perform'd greater
actions of valor, than many famous heroes re-
corded in history.

4 day long. 70. lat. 38.

CHAP.

C H A P. LXI.

Mourning for the death of the Mirza Mohamed Sultan: and the translation of his coffin.

THE natural love which fathers bear towards their children, was not the only motive that afflicted Timur for the death of the Mirza; but the great things which this young prince's virtue promis'd, were the principal cause of his excessive grief: he flung his crown aside, ~~and rent his clothes~~ ^{and cast himself upon the ground} in the most moving transports of grief. This caus'd a great change in his temper: and in this delightful season of the spring, instead of being cheerful, the princes and lords of the court cloth'd themselves with hair-sacks, and black and blue habits, ^{and went about their necks}. The ladys did the same; and they sprinkled earth upon their heads, and fill'd their bosoms with stones: they would take no rest but upon chaff and ashes, instead of bedding; and nothing cou'd be heard in the court but groans and lamentations, especially from the princess Canike, wife of the deceas'd, who was so overcome with sorrow, that she often fell into swoons, and lost her senses.

Such is the stated course of affairs in this world; we shou'd not place our confidence in it, for those who do, will at last repent: but we belong to God, and must return to him. Timur order'd the Mirza's coffin to be convey'd in a litter to Avenic by two hundred horsemen, commanded by seven Emirs; ^{and that}

that when they arriv'd there, Quaisel and Chap. 1.
Ouaisel shou'd lay the corpse in a new coffin,
and carry it to the tomb of the prophet. Gaidar
in the town of Sultania, from whence it was
forwards to be translated to Samarcand: and
he likewise gave order that the other five Emirs
shou'd stay at Avenic with a litter and an empty
coffin, whose covering shou'd be nail'd up.

After their departure Timur return'd to the
camp, and then set out from the meadow of
Akcheher to continue his journey. The grief was
beyond comparifon; and not only the courtiers,
but even the soldiers of the army, never cess'd
from weeping. When they had march'd some
days journey in this condition, the principal E-
mirs and ministers of state came to the emperor,
and falling on their faces, remonstrated to him,
that all the soldiers of the army continu'd in
such excessive grief, that nothing was ever like
it; that the continuation of this grief did not
become the majesty of so august a court; that it
was better he shou'd arm himself with patience,
and endeavor to comfort his royal heart. They
at last perswaded Timur, tho' with great diffi-
culty, to compose his mind, and live after his
usual manner: so he gave orders for every one
to leave off their mourning-habits, as being of
no advantage to the deceas'd.

CHAP. LXII.

Arrival of ambassadors from Egypt.

WHEN Timur's ambassadors, whom we
before mention'd, were arriv'd at Grand-
Cairo, they found a handsom reception. Far-

The history of Timur-Bec.

Farrudge, son of Barcoc, surnam'd Elmalekennaf, King of Egypt and Syria, having been inform'd all that had pass'd between Timur and Bajaze whom he had esteem'd the most powerful prince in the universe, was now convinc'd that it would be wrong to think of dealing with Timur upon any other foot than that of an entire submission and perfect obedience; and he repented of the difficulty his father and himself had made of sending back Atilmich. He hereupon held a council with the principal persons of state, and with their approbation releas'd Atilmich out of prison, admitted him to an audience, treated him in an honorable manner, and made divers apologies for what he had done. He caus'd the money to be call'd, and the prayers read in the august name and titles of Timur; and sent back Atilmich, with two ambassadors, Ahmed and Asa, beseeching Atilmich to be his intercessor at the court. Farrudge order'd his ambassadors to make known to Timur his repentance for his former faults, his consent to pay the annual tribute, and what he had done in relation to the money and the public prayers. He sent at present, by the same persons, abundance of gold and silver money, precious stones, belts, Armenian stuffs, swords of Cairo, horses of a fine breed, and other curiosities.

As soon as they enter'd the frontiers of the Ottoman country, Atilmich set out before 'em for the court; and having the honor to salute the emperor, he inform'd his highness of the affairs of Egypt, and of the Sultan and people's fears. The ambassadors soon arriv'd at court; and being admitted to an audience, declar'd to the emperor the intentions of the Sultan their master, and offer'd their presents.

He was again pleas'd to shew his clemency to the King of Egypt, and spake to 'em as follows. "I know that Farrudge told his father when very young; which will make it my glory to take care of this young prince, and be to him as a father. If he continues firm in his obedience, which is the only way of preserving himself, we will give him testimonials of our benevolence, and grant him succours, with which he may preserve his kingdom, provided he zealously continues in the service of the two holy citys of Mecca and Medina." He afterwards presented vests, belts, and crowns to the ambassadors, and permitted 'em to return home; giving 'em a crown, a royal mantle; and a belt enrich'd with precious stones, for the Sultan Farrudge their master, to whom he promis'd his protection.

C H A P. LXIII.

Tamer marches against the Caratatars, or black Tartars.

CARATATAR is a nation of Tartars, which Hulacou Can³ lifted into his army when he was sent into Iran by Mangou Can, emperor of the Moguls. Hulacou being established on the throne at Tauris, and having experienc'd the malice of this wicked people, oblig'd 'em to reside with their familys in the frontiers.

* All Mahometan princes take upon 'em the title of the servants of the two citys of Mecca and Medina.

³ Brother of Mangou Caan, and grandson of Genghis Can the great.

The history of Timur-Bec.

124
tiers of Natolia and Syria. When by the death of the grand Can Aboufaid*, there remain'd no longer in Iran any absolute emperor of the race of Genghiz Can, this people revolted, and divided themselves into fifty-two hords, every hundred chusing a particular residence, being all resolv'd to live independent. When Bajazer, after the reign of Cadi Burhaneddin at Sebaste, was become master of this kingdom, he enroll'd 'em in the Ottoman army, and gave 'em a residence in his empire; and as there were no great taxes or tribute to pay in these parts, these Tartars enrich'd themselves, and became exceeding powerful. But Timur, who design'd to make 'em change the place of their residence, and to fix 'em in the colonies of Gatai, that they might repeople that country, treated their chiefs in an honorable manner when they came to salute him: he gave 'em robes wove with gold, belts and swords of gold, with several largesses. As no one insulted 'em in the least manner during the whole course of this war, but suffer'd 'em to continue quiet in their hords; this sufficiently denoted that they were in obedience and subjection, or at least ought to have been so.

When the ambassadors of Egypt arriv'd at court, Timur staid three days among the Czar-tatars; and after having held a council, and maturely deliberated about the ways of bringing his enterprize to perfection, he resolv'd to remove 'em out of that country, and conduct 'em into Transoxiana. But as there were between thirty and forty familys of 'em, he order'd the Mirzas and Emirs to surround 'em, each on their respec-

* Son of Codabende king of Persia, and of the race of Genghiz Can.

tive, ~~that~~ is that none of 'em might get away, Chapter
but not to do 'em the least damage. Accord-
ingly the Emir Gehan Chah, with the Emirs of
the right wing, and the troops of the Mirza
Mehemed Sultan, took the road to Tocat and
Amasia. The Emir Solyman Chah, with those
of the left wing, march'd by Casarea and So-
baste : Timur went by the plains of Amasia and
Casarea, the residence of the Caratatars ; and
he sent the Mirza Charoc, with the Sultan Hul-
sein, to cut off their passage, and hinder any
one's flight.

The emperor having pass'd the bridge of
Kircheher, after several days march, arriv'd at
the country of the Caratatars, whose chiefs he
order'd to be call'd before him. There came two
of 'em, Akhi Tebarec and Murevet : they kiss'd
the ground before the emperor, who gave 'em a
handsom reception, presented 'em with vests and
belts wrought with gold, and swore he won'd
never do 'em the least harm. " It is a long while,
" says he, since your ancestors came out of the
" country of Touran, which was their ancient
" residence, into these foreign lands, by the or-
" ders of the emperors our predecessors. As
" all that vast country is at present govern'd by
" one master, God having brought it under my
" obedience, you ought to look upon this op-
" portunity as very fortunate to you ; and re-
" turn from hence, with your wives, children,
" slaves, cattel, and other riches, under the
" convoy of our soldiers, to the country of your
" ancestors, where you may pass your life agree-
" ably under the shadow of our protection."

1 I believe it shou'd rather be Asfara.

The chiefs return'd thanks to Timur, and assur'd him that they were ready to obey his orders with pleasure; that they look'd upon it as a piece of good fortune to be under his protection; and that they were resolv'd to spend their lives in his service. Timur order'd they shou'd be divided into companys and regiments, and distributed among the Emirs of the Toman. Being thus made to decamp with their cattle, they began their march; they were prohibited buying any sheep or horses, that they might be less embarras'd in the roads, and that if they shou'd endeavor to fly, they might the better be prevented.

C H A P. LXIV.

Timur returns from Natolia.

TIMUR was highly pleas'd with his conquest of Natolia, of which he was become the absolute and sole monarch, without any opposition, and with the love of all the people; which great affair he had brought about by the strength of his arms and the valor of his soldiers, at the same time that he won the hearts of the people by his good conduct. This vast conquest, by the divine assistance, was finish'd in less than a year; and thro'-out all Asia Timur's name was stamp'd on their coins, and the prayers were read with his august titles.

For these reasons his majesty resolv'd to return to the seat of his empire: he caus'd the great standard to be display'd, and began his march with all the army. He sent orders to the eunuchs Serai Mulk Canum, Touman Aga, Taki-pan

Timur-Bec.

per Mirza Aga, and Cara-Bec, mother of the deceased Mirza Mehemed Sultan, to come and meet him as far as the borders of Avenic. This new emperor of the lesser Asia, being arriv'd at Cafarea in Cappadocia, the inhabitants fill'd with fear, conceal'd themselves in caverns: whereupon he sent Ali Sultan Tavachi, with a good troop of soldiers, in search of 'em; who having found 'em, they defended themselves against him, and shot him with an arrow in the Vena-cava, of which he dy'd upon the spot. Yet these rebels being vanquish'd and taken, Mehemed, brother of Ali Sultan, caus'd 'em all to be put to the sword, to revenge his death.

Afterwards Timur departed for Sebaste, where he confer'd several honors upon Cara Osman, and sent him back into his principality. From thence he went to Arzendgian, where Taharten, like a faithful servant, offer'd his presents to the emperor, of horses, cattel, and other things, nine of each sort. Taharten follow'd the court two days journey: and then Timur, honoring him with a royal vest, permitted him to return home. He sent back the messenger who had brought advice of the empress's departure from Sultania, with orders that the princes shou'd hasten, that so they might arrive at Avenic before the ladys. Timur being come to Erzerom, was join'd by the Mirzas O-ne-Bec, Ibrahim Sultan, Mehemed Gehanghir, Aidgel, and Sadvaccas, his grand-children: he tenderly embrac'd 'em, and was over-joy'd to see 'em; but he cou'd not refrain from tears at the sight of the Mirzas Mehemed Gehanghir.

* Made governor of Sebaste by Timur when at Malatia; he was son of the Cadi Barhaneddin, prince of Sebaste.

Book V. and Sadvaccas, because of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan their father's death.

CHAP. LXV.

The manner in which the death of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, son of Gebanghir, was made known to Canzade his mother.

THE empresses who were set out from Sultania, made preparations at Tauris for mourning for the Mirza Mehemed Sultan: they cloth'd themselves in black, and then came to Bagdad according to the emperor's orders. When they were inform'd that Timur was near the place, they acquainted the princess Canzade with the death of her dear son: upon which she was so transported with grief, that she swoon'd away: and being a little recover'd, she rent her clothes, and twisting her hair about her fingers, began to pluck it off by degrees; she spit blood, and tore her lovely cheeks with her nails: she swoon'd away the second time, seeing all the ladys, whose heads were covered with black mantles, and who cou'd utter nothing but crys and lamentations.

Timur being encamp'd, they began their crys afresh; and nothing was to be seen more dismal than this court, which at other times was the gayest and most magnificent of all Asia. Her order'd that to moderate the princess's affliction, the empty coffin, nail'd down very strongly, and fasten'd with a lock, shou'd be presented to her: she twisted her self round it, crying and groaning: "My eyes, said this disconsolate

"princess, were continually looking towards the

"public

“~~pathos~~ read, in expectation of some news of ~~Chang~~
 “my dear child, which would have been the
 “delight of my soul. I did not expect this cru-
 “elty from fortune, this fatal dagger, which
 “thus breaks my heart at the sight of this cof-
 “fin. O deplorable condition! O wretched
 “Canzade! O unfortunate prince! thou wast
 “design’d for the throne of the empire of Iran;
 “but merciless fate has snatch’d the scepter from
 “thy hands. It is not without cause that a tor-
 “rent of blood gushes from my eyes, and I make
 “the earth red with my tears; since, my dear
 “son, thou hast thus pierc’d my heart in thy
 “tenderest age.”

After this excess of mourning, Timur judg’d it
 proper to do something for the spiritual good of
 his soul, which lives as well in the other world
 as it did in this: he gave alms among the poor
 and provided a funeral banquet. The ~~doctors~~
 doctors, grandees and nobles of all Asia assem-
 bled together for this ceremony: they sat down
 according to their rank at the emperor’s table;
 and a Hafiz, with a Nazer, the lecturers, read
 over the Alcoran several times. The banquet
 was serv’d up by the emperor’s stewards: and
 the Mirza’s brass-drum was beat, at which the
 ladies, the Emirs, and soldiers, as well masters
 as servants, on a sudden made a great cry, and
 wept bitterly; and then the drum was broke to
 pieces, according to the custom of the Moguls.

The doctors and Imams, who came from Tau-
 ris, Sultania, Cazuin, and other places, to sa-
 lute the emperor at his return, and pay their
 compliments of condolence, endeavor’d in several
 conferences to comfort him and the princefs:
 they forgot not any of Mahomet’s counsels on
 this occasion, and strove to incite ’em to pa-
 tience, assuring ’em that the deceas’d were tor-
 mented

Book V. mented by the lamentations of their living relations, and that it was hurtful to their souls. By the force of their eloquence, they persuaded the emperor to arm himself with patience against the assaults of affliction caus'd by so sad a misfortune. Timur then permitted an order to be issued out for leaving off the mourning-habits, black scarfs, hair-sacks, and other marks of grief. He loaded the doctors with favors and honors; and after having given 'em vests, sent 'em back to their respective residences.

The end of the fifth book.

BOOK

BOOK VI.

*A war in Georgia. Timur's return from
his campaign of seven years. The defeat
and pursuit of Eskender Cheiki, prince
of the race of the antient Persians. Ti-
mur's departure for the conquest of
China. His death at Otrar near the
river Jaxartes, and his interment at
Samarcand. The strange revolutions
which happen'd after his death. The
Mirza Calil Sultan his grandson, son
of Miran Chah, usurps the crown; and
the ruin of that prince occasion'd by his
prodigality, and passion for a woman.*

CHAP. I.

Timur marches into Georgia.

TIMUR-BEC's greatest ambition be-
ing to merit the happiness promis'd to
those who wage war with the infidels
for the advancement of religion; and
Ghourghin king of Georgia, having fail'd in the
prin-

The principal article of the treaty made the preceding year, which was to have come at a fix'd time to call himself at the emperor's feet, and beg pardon; his highness took up a resolution to march again into his country. To this end, he departed towards Mencoû, where he receiv'd the submissions of Malek Issa prince of Merdin, who repenting of his fault in not coming before to pay his homage, and knowing he shou'd be ruin'd if he lost Timur's favor, confidently set out to come to court; where he presently address'd himself to the Mirza Charoc, whose protection he besought. This Mirza brought him to the throne, where with his head uncover'd, like a criminal, he beg'd pardon on his knees. Timur having remanded him, forgave his fault, and comforted him by his kind promises. This prince brought the tribute for several years past, which he paid exactly, and made abundance of handsom presents. The emperor gave him a crown, a royal vest, and a belt set with precious stones; and as an addition to the former favors confer'd on him, his daughter was betroth'd to the Mirza Aboubecre, and so he had the honor to be ally'd to Timur.

At the same time Youani grandson of Aboubouga, a Georgian prince, came to pay his homage to the emperor, and made several presents of curious animals and fine horses; being introduc'd by the great Emirs, with Custendil brother of Malek Ghourghin, king of Georgia, who was at war with him. There came also the lords and princes of all the neighboring places, to pay their respects, and offer their

* A strong city and a principality, near the Tigris, in Mesopotamia.

sent 'em receiv'd 'em with all manner of
 cheer according to their birth and quality: he
 shew'd 'em of his favor, and presenting 'em with
 gifts, sent 'em back to their respective countrys.

C H A P. II.

*The government of Chiraz a second time given
 to the Mirza Pir Mehemed, son of Omar
 Cheik; and that of Ispahan to his brother
 the Mirza Roustem.*

IN the neighborhood of Mencoúl, Timur
 again invested the Mirza Pir Mehemed, son
 of Omar Cheik, in the government of the royal
 city of Chiraz, capital of Persia, for which he
 issued out his letters-patent; and made the Mir-
 za set out for that country, after having given
 him a vest and a belt, and nam'd for his ministers
 Lutfallah, son of Beyan Temour, son of A-
 bouga, and Tchel Panchat Berlas.

Then he dispatch'd orders to the Mir-
 Roustem at Chiraz to come to court. The
 messenger found him in the summer-quarters of
 the palace of Casrizer, and deliver'd his commis-
 sion. The Mirza immediately set out, and be-
 ing arriv'd at Canfar, a place dependent on
 Ghorbadekan, he receiv'd a packet from court,
 by which he learnt that the emperor had gi-
 ven him the government of Ispahan, ordering

Two old men of great experience and trust.

* Capital of Hircania or Irac-Agemi, where the king of
 Persia at present resides.

The history of Timur-Bec.

him to send his baggage hither, and go to Ormougerd to rebuild the fortres of Ormysh. The Mirza Pir Mehemed, who was sent to Chiraz, also arriv'd at Camar. These two brothers tenderly embrac'd each other, and entertain'd themselves with conversation on the present state of affairs; and afterwards they separated, and took their respective roads. The Mirza Pir Mehemed departed for Chiraz; and ~~Timur~~ having sent a lieutenant to govern ~~Ormysh~~ in his absence, went with expedition to Ormougerd, the fortres of which he rebuilt, and repeopled the city.

CHAPTER III

Timur sends the Mirza Aboubecre to rebuild the city of Bagdad, and gives him the governments of Irac-Arabi and Diarbekir.

WHEN the court was arriv'd in the neighbourhood of Cars, Timur order'd the princes his children, and the great lords of the state to come before him; and then made the following speech to 'em. "The war which the inhabitants of Bagdad have heretofore undertaken against us, having been obstinately continu'd by them, has been the cause of the desolation of their state, our vengeance having drawn upon 'em a total ruin. Nevertheless, if we consider that this is one of the principal cities in the Mahometan world, and the knowledg of the law deduces its origin

* A city of Armenia near Georgia.

“...and that the... of other...
“...have drawn from this source the
“...sacred parts of religion, and the most
“...learning; it would be a crime utterly
“...to destroy this famous city: whereas we
“...design to re-ignite it in its former flourish-
“...ing condition, that it may again become the
“...seat of justice, and the tribunal both of...
“...and laws.”

The emperor's speech being universally ap-
plauded, he entrusted the execution of this com-
mendable project with the Mirza Abul...
giving him the government of the provinces of
Irac Arabi, as far as Vafet, Basra, Curdistan,
Mardin, Diarbekir, Oirat, with all their de-
pendences; and appointing for the great officers
of his court the Emirs Payende Sultan, Fir-Haf-
sem Berlas, Sevindigir, Sultan Sandger, Fikr-
Schehidin, Dost-Coja Emac, and others, with
a great body of the army. Timur order'd the
lords of Irac Arabi to obey him, and mark'd
out his road by the province of Diarbekir;
he strictly enjoin'd him to exterminate all the
disturbers of the public peace, who remain'd in
that country, and to be in Irac Arabi in the
autumn, when the equinox renders the air more
temperate. The emperor likewise instructed
him to begin with ruining Cams Yousuf Tal-
coman, who had made himself master of Irac-
Arabi; and afterwards to encourage and com-
fort the inhabitants of the country, that they
might rebuild their houses, and cultivate the
lands; and in fine to employ all his care in
restoring Bagdad in its former splendor, that
the following year there might depart people
enough out of that city, to form a caravan for
Mecca.

With

The history of Timur-Bec.

With regard to Cara Yousef Turcoman, and his usurpation, we must know that that prince, for fear of our troops, fled into the country of Roum or Natolia; but when our army arriv'd at Casarea, he again fled from thence into Irac-Arabi, where having assembled all the Turcoman hords, he stop'd at Payan-Hit. The Sultan Ahmed Gelair at that time went out of Bagdad, and retir'd to the Sultan Taher his son; but the Aga Firouz, in whom the Sultan Taher repos'd the care of his affairs, excited a jealousy in his master: whereupon he held a council with his father's Emirs, Mehemed Bei governor of Ormi, the Emir Ali Calander, Micayl, and Farrac Chah, who likewise fear'd the Sultan Ahmed, and unanimously agreed to revolt; and having pass'd the bridge during night, they camp'd on this side the river. When the Sultan Ahmed was inform'd of it, he broke down the bridge, and marching along the bank of the river, stop'd in presence of his son and the Emirs: he sent an express to Cara Yousef to come and join him; which Yousef having done, they pass'd the river together. The two armies being rang'd in order, a battel ensu'd, in which the Sultan Taher was vanquish'd: he endeavour'd to fly; but coming to a brook, and striving to make his horse leap over it, he fell in with his horse and armor, and perish'd.

The Sultan Taher having been thus punished for his revolt against his father, his Emirs and troops dispers'd; and the Sultan Ahmed, growing jealous of Cara Yousef, went to Bagdad. Cara Yousef came out of Hille with his army to the gates of Bagdad, and took the city. The Sultan Ahmed hid himself to save his life, but was perceiv'd by one nam'd Cara Hassan, who assisted him in making his escape during the night.

C. H. A. R. IV.

Timur's arrival at the frontiers of Georgia.

TIMUR, having decamp'd from the neighborhood of Gazi, enter'd Georgia. After having pass'd thro' Armenia, the Cheik Ibrahim prince of Chivan, his faithful servant, was gone before to make inroads into the enemy's country, and had already seiz'd on the passages and defiles. Malik Ghomghin, king of Georgia, heard with a great deal of surprise of the march of the imperial standard. Fear oblig'd him to send ambassadors to come with formal proposals, and the first of these was compriz'd in this speech.

"There is no comparison, great Sir, between you and me, who am your slave; and it is very astonishing that you shou'd have propos'd to march against so mean a subject as I am; who am absolutely resolv'd to be have my self as your faithful servant; and on the first order I shall receive from your orders, whether to send in money, or to march at the head of my troops in your service, I will not fail of acquiescing my self faithfully and readily. I have not the confidence to come down directly to call my self at the foot of your throne, for fear has too far seiz'd my heart; but if your highness shall please to grant me a short reprieve, till my fear is blown over, I will run to kiss your feet, as the prince of Merdin, and other governors have done; and I shall have the honor to prostrate my self before you, and receive your orders as a slave, acknowledging this favor as an excess of your bounty."

Timur would not hear of what the ambassador said, nor accept of his presents. The ambassador, that their master was no way less than that of the other princes, and that he was a Christian, because the interest of religion pleaded for them, and that their faults were pardonable; but that a Christian ought not to be so much in the favor of a prince that if he was disappointed he should come directly to court, but if the will of God would not grant him sufficient assistance to enable him to embrace the Mahometan religion, he would impose the tribute of the Carage on him, leave him once more the principality of his country, send him back contented, and suffer his subjects to live in peace, without fear of being either murder'd, pillag'd, or made slaves; and thus his honor and reputation would remain undiminish'd. The Emperor, who was on the same footing with him; that if Ghourghin had come to court, he would have learnt how that prince had been treated, and what favors he had received, and that he ought to judge of his own case by the other; but if their master made the least difficulty of coming, none of his excuses should be accepted of. At length the ambassador was dismissed.

At this time Beyan Coorloo, Governor of Tauris, came to court with the Comotroulers and Ambassadors of Azerbaijan. They offered their presents consisting of a great number of horses, animals, and other things. At the same time, one of the Divan of Constantinople, for the Goja Ali Seid, came also to offer his pre-

But above which the Mahometan prince sent to the Christians or Jews who inhabit their dominions,

...which were distributed among the of-
ficers.

The leader for the party in Georgia
...it was requisite that the Georgians
...be hinder'd from reaping and carrying it
...whereupon Timur order'd the Emir, Bakh
Noouredin, and other Emirs, to enter the ene-
my's country, Georgia. In effect, they chas'd
out all the inhabitants, and carried every thing
with them and burnt it; they reaped all the corn
...which they ground into meal, and
...to the camp.

The taking of the famous castle of Gortene in Georgia.

THE castle of Gortene, in Georgia,
...a hundred and fifty cubits high, situated
between two very deep ditches, on the summit
...a rock, which surpasses it in height,
...which they stored with provisions.
There is but one way to this mountain, and
that very narrow and crooked, besides the pro-
cesses which surround it, and an army from
...and besieging it. The Georgians
had fortify'd this Mountain on all sides, having
built towers upon it, and a gate at the very ex-
tremity, with cisterns to preserve rain-water.
It was commanded by a Georgian prince named
Tzel, who had under him thirty great Officers,
and a strong garrison; they were not apprehen-
sive of any scarcity, their cisterns being fill'd
with water, their cellars abundantly stor'd

...and the place being with fortifications
...the tower being appointed for the importance of
...place, relative to the city, and the
...the great advantage which would attend the
...place, as it was in the midst of the city, and
...by, and would require a great number of
...men to garrison it, who would not be able to
...maintain and even water enough for the
...the place was considered at this undertaking, and
...the place was to take the place, unless
...the place of the place, who desired to go there
...in person, would seize the hearts of the
...place, and make an fortress: but God has
...with order it is.

The imperial standard arriv'd before the castle
of Cortene on the 14th of March 1600. The
inhabitants immediately flew to arms.

Aug. 6
1600

...batteries could
attack'd, they con-
fided in the strength of their walls, and declar'd
war by a discharge of ordnance and shot.
But at the same time, the French sent
their galls against the place. The
Chamelle was set on fire, and the
batteries ordered to build fortifications over
the other. The French sent other
batteries to different places. The French
sent other galls from different parts of the
place to the place, to prevent the
Chamelle from being a great part of the
place, as it was in the midst of the
place.

These engines being the French sent
proper to build battering rams and other
engines, and order'd a platform of stone and wood,
which is call'd a battery, to be built on the
camp

Aug. 20.

and the cables so high that they'd cover
mand the place, tho the Georgians had seen
and that the height of their towers wou'd
have preserv'd em from all manner of assault.
This work was not finish'd in less than three
days, and on the 21st of Muharem, a Georgian
Hussard, who was skilled in tracing the
mountains, found means during night to get
percept upon a rock, from whence he could
see the camp, and carry down the very
entrance of the rock, and having fill'd it with
fire, a great and loud explosion was heard
being seen by the Georgians. Next day Hussard
related his adventure, to the commander who
prais'd him, and gave orders for the
Georgians to be ready for the assault, and
for ladders to be made of wood, and
four Macris muskets to be sent with them, and
to draw up the ladders with long cords. On

Aug. 22.

the 22^d of Muharem this design was executed;
they mounted by an arch, which a goat could
ascend, and the ladders were drawn up to the
top of the rock, which the ladders were drawn
up to, which the ladders were drawn up to.
Chamelic laid at the bottom of the ladders,
and made fifty of the bravest men to
ascend, whose names he had written
writing. Argood, with the rest of the
Georgians were fall asleep, while these things
were passing. At break of day a Georgian
cried out with a loud voice, Allah Eben, and
bless'd Mahomer. Mahmoud, an officer of the
Muzza Garoo, at the same time sounded his
trumpet; and the Georgians surpris'd at the
alarm given em by the watch, ran to their
arms to defend themselves. Timur took both
pass'd the defile, and stop'd over-against the
rock, which our brave men had mounted, and
order'd

History of Timur-Bec.



one of the brals drum to be beat, and the
cry Soudoun made the whole
army in the mean while the way to the place by
the rock being very narrow and dangerous, no
more than three persons being able to march in
front, our brave warriors march'd in
most of them his buckler before him, he was
follow'd by two others, who advanc'd with him
but an arrow struck him in the mouth, which
made him fall backwards, and the enemys seiz'd
on his bow. Abdalla Sebzari, advanc'd
forward in hand and flew some Georgians, till
he was mortally wounded in ten or twelve places,
he fell down thro weakness. The Turk Ma-
moud fell upon the enemys with a heavy club,
with which he broke the leg of a very strong
able Chatter, who fell at his feet, and arriv'd at
the foot of the castle, where a bloody skirmish
ensued. Some also continu'd to attack the place
from the Meljour before mention'd, so that
the gate was broke, and the troops enter'd the
castle.

Aug. 12.

This conquest happen'd the 22^d of Muharrer,
after a siege of nine days. The besiegers
for quarter on their knees, but most of the
captains or officers were precipitated from the
walls. The Governor, Trai, was bound and ca-
ried to the imperial camp with the whole gar-
ison, in which not one escap'd. At the same
time the Lonbe and standard of Mahomet
was erected upon the walls, and the Muezzins
repeated the prayers of the Alcoran on the top
of the church, and made the cry Yzan, which is

A standard on whole top is a horsetail.

History of Tamerlane

used to call the Mahometans to prayer. This conquest deserves to be recorded in history; and it is reported that the great Mahmoud Subestekin never gained so considerable victories over the infidels of India, as our conqueror did over those of Candahar. He gave order to send all the garrison to be beheaded, and their wives and children carry away captive; and he gave Tval's wife as a present to the Ghazni. Morgues, which has been erected in this place, to be buried, and he sent a messenger, where he heard from the former, that he had taken the city, and that he had taken the city.

to be carried off. He took away all the riches, fables, belts, horses, asses, tents, young women, camels, furniture, and even gardens and villages in their respective countries. He invited Mohammed Tauran, surnamed the King of Souda, who was one of the principal lords of Candahar, to his government of that place, assigning him a good garrison. He gave him the revenue of the country, and the right of appointing and dismissing his officers. He permitted the people to follow their religion in the country. He converted the mosque into a church, and he built a church in a suburb of the city, and in lieu of bells and crosses, to establish Muezzins and read the Koran, according to the Muhammadan law.

CHAPTER V

Continuation of the story of the conquest of the

... N.G. their fractions, the ruler
... Cadeddin Carim came to court with all
the great officers of Court: he offer'd several
pieces of the best silk, Arabian horses,
jewels for riding, and furniture, as painting,
writing, and other useful things. A
... Mirza ... arrived from the Mirza
... and made his presents. The Coja
... Nohani also came from Isfahan, and
presented a great quantity of ...
... of horses
... of carriage, with arms, and vessels
and boxes of gold and silver. Timur distribu-
ted all these presents among the princes and
lords of his court.

About the same time ...
... Daoud, who had been sent to Kermān, to
... and take care of the imperial treasury,
... ...
... returned to the imperial palace. They
... of the emperor, who gave him
... and to whom they
... through messengers. They
... of Kermān, and among others by Moulana
... the Coja Sadeddin, who were
both Cadis, the Seid Hamza, and the Coja
... Adgan, author of the book
... of Kermān, which piece of
the

the exploits of the glorious Timur; but this learned author had the misfortune to fall from off the bridge of Toffis, which is built over the river Cyrus, and be drown'd: his son, who continu'd that work after his father's death, paid his respects to the emperor, who receiv'd him with a great deal of kindness, and comforted him by his favors for his father's death. Toulou Gelm, Berog of the city of Ceylan, and Chavaldin Salar Semman, receiver-general of the revenues of the same city, as well as the commissaries of the Divan of Yezd, came into court, as did all the great officers, and governors of the several provinces and cities of Cochin, and the two Indes, who paid their homage to the emperor, and offer'd their presents, which consisted of the greatest curiosities of all Asia.

Timur march'd to the city of Samarkand, and arriv'd there in the month of October, 1399. He was receiv'd with great honors, and made a magnificent banquet, and distributed his favors among the officers according to their ranks. He then took up a resolution to march to Abkhaze: he order'd the Emirs Cheik Noureddin, Chamelik, and others, to set out before with several squadrons, to ravage and lay waste Georgia, as far as Abkhaze, which is the northern frontier of that kingdom. They accordingly began their march; but as the ways were full of woods, the soldiers were oblig'd to cut down the trees to open a passage; and they ruin'd

Timur marches to Abkhaze.
AFTER the taking of Cordus, Timur summon'd the lords to a diet, where he made a magnificent banquet, and distributed his favors among the officers according to their ranks. He then took up a resolution to march to Abkhaze: he order'd the Emirs Cheik Noureddin, Chamelik, and others, to set out before with several squadrons, to ravage and lay waste Georgia, as far as Abkhaze, which is the northern frontier of that kingdom. They accordingly began their march; but as the ways were full of woods, the soldiers were oblig'd to cut down the trees to open a passage; and they ruin'd

ruin'd every thing they met with in the countrys
of the Georgians and Georgians. They were
follow'd by the imperial standard; and Timur
soon after enter'd into the middle of Georgia,
where he plunder'd seven hundred towns and
villages; laying waste the cultivated lands, burn-
ing the monasterys of the Christians, and raz-
ing their churches to the very foundation, which
were built of marble and free stone.

The Georgians having abandon'd their
houses, were retir'd into caverns situate among
rocks and high mountains, which they had al-
ready by falling upon them, they were surpris'd
and taken; and themselves and their families
were bound with ropes of boxes to be tied with
chains, in each of which he plac'd several per-
fumes around: others boxes were let down from
the tops of the mountains with great chains, and

they were thrown down, and
the caverns with their
fossils and landans. They made their way into
the mountains, finding the number of the enemy
and the situation of their post; and then they
of a bold and daring spirit were near a hundred Geo-
rgians, at they leap'd out of their boxes into the
valley, they put on the sword, making choice
of the richest of their spoils, and then they re-
turn'd to the Gorge. They put many of the
Georgians to death, which enjoin'd us to treat the ene-
my with the utmost rigor; and
they burnt the trees, making ha-
zards to the enemy's army.

11 After Timur had taken the Emirs and Octob. 12.
troops of his army, he march'd next day they
all pursued the enemy and took a great deal of
spoils. Timur march'd the day after, and con-
tinued to ruin the country, laying all the Georgi-
ans he met,

CHAPTER

These things from Abkhaz, and the

SEVERAL GEORGIAN PRINCES, who were

to a slave in Timur's army, having seen which
 thing, they said that this conqueror had
 under a number of the rulers of the
 Abkhaz, and that there remained no ruler
 either of Armenia, or of the Georgians. The
 prince who lived at that time, having this

sends to Timur.

giant slaves made to Ghourghin on this occasion,
 resembles the counsel the bishop of Nodgora
 gave to his own people in the time of Mahomet.
 There was a tradition that the rulers
 of Nodgora, being come to Mahomet, were
 so stubborn and proud as to dissent from him
 and not receive the instruction which he
 had taught them. Then

met's daughter Fatima, and
 her and Hodein, came

pace with the Christian king. But this doing
 being surpris'd at what he saw, he forthwith
 putting, said, "The men I now behold have

"their faces irradiated: if they shou'd be

"God to remove the mountains of the earth

"he wou'd assuredly grant their request, and

"they shou'd be suffer'd to offer up their prayers

"against the Christians; not one of whom

"remain alive." These words of the king

struck terror into the Christians, who

or by furnishing a small number of troops when their occasions require 'em in some war: and on these conditions the Georgians liv'd freely in Persia, and the neighbouring kingdoms. But at present, through your highness's great power, they esteem themselves happy, even in being shut up within the most theft parts of their kingdom, as long as they have quarter granted 'em for their lives. The Mussulmans have enter'd their capital city, and enjoy themselves there, as all they were the masters of 'em. And thus, if your highness will grant 'em quarter on paying tribute, and exactly obeying your orders, they will be your faithful servants, and your friends and sincerity.

All the Emirs could say, was not to abate the emperor's zeal for the continuation of the Gazie: which oblig'd these lords to propose the affair to the doctors of the law and to the Mullis, who unanimously declar'd in the imperial council, that since the Georgians consented to pay the tribute, and not to molest the Mussulmans, they were oblig'd to grant 'em quarter, without doing 'em any further harm either by slaughter or otherwise. According to the conclusion of the council, and in condescension to the prayers of the Emirs, the emperor granted this favor to the Chief Ibr, one of the intercessors; and nodded to him token that in respect to him he condescended the request of king Ghourghin. He sent the Georgian ambassadors between hope and fear: and afterwards he spent several days in these quarters in the diversion of the chase. On the return of the ambassadors, which happened soon. When they came back, they brought with 'em

owls, serpents and scorpions. Tho' the season was very cold, and the rains continually molest'd our soldiers, yet Timur soon after his arrival gave orders to the engineers and architects to draw the plan of the town, which should consist of a wall, a ditch, four market-places, and a great number of houses, baths, caravanserais, squares, gardens, and other commodious things. They laid the foundations, and having mark'd out with lines, the emperor divided the work among the soldiers, under the inspection of the Chahzade and Begs. They wrought with so much diligence, that the buildings which were of brick, were finish'd in a month; the circumference of the walls was two thousand four hundred cubits, or large measures, the thickness of the wall was thirty cubits broad, and twenty high; in each corner of the place was a great bastion, and in the middle of each courtine was a gallery with battlements, and a machine to cast stones. In fine, this prodigious undertaking, which the greatest emperors of antiquity were never able to finish in a year, was compleated in a month, notwithstanding the excessive cold and rain; the readiness with which Timur's orders were obey'd, was abundantly more surprising than the execution of so vast a project. Never prince carry'd a more majestic and terrible air in his wrath; nor yet a more sweet and agreeable one, when he was pleas'd to bestow his favors.

Timur gave the government of Bailacan, Chahzade, Ghendgeh, the country of Arran, Armenia, Georgia, and Trebizond, to the Mirza.

* Chahzade, or Mirza, is the son or grandson of an emperor.

Subservient to the honor of Genghis Khan's brother, Chagatai, and his descendants, with the principal government of the realm of Ballocan, and as water is what principally renders a country flourishing, inasmuch as it makes the land fertile, and nourishes the animals and vegetables, Timur form'd a design of opening a canal, thro' which to convey the waters of the rived Araxes into Ballocan. He issued out his orders to that effect, and the principal lords prepar'd themselves to put him in execution; the Tseatchis divided the ground the canal was to take up among the soldiers, which was six leagues in length, and fifteen fathoms in breadth. The whole was finish'd in about a month; and it is one of the most magnificent monuments of Timur's grandeur and power.

~~Timur's death and the state of the empire at his death.~~

C H A P. X.

Timur sends intendants and doctors into all the provinces of his empire, to examine the affairs of particular persons, and to distribute his justice and favors among the people.

WHEN Timur's stay at Ballocan, the principal lords of Iran and Touran came to consult with him, with all possible magnificence, where an assembly of the most learned men was held. The emperor, who was very curious in hearing the strict questions of the law explain'd, and the distinction between a positive command and those which contain only matter of advice, propos'd the most sublime and profitable controversies.

Book VI. One day the conversation fell very à-propos upon Mahomet's advice, wherein he tells us that God orders the princes of this world to practise justice and beneficence: the pious Timur attended to what was said, and seriously reflecting on it, wou'd not suffer this question to be ended by discourse only, but resolv'd to acquire the merits of it by practising good works; and then he spake to 'em as follows.

"Kings have always taken the counsel of doctors, when they excite 'em to do good, and strive to turn 'em from evil: how comes it then that you are silent, and neglect to tell me what I ought to do, and what I ought to omit the performance of?"

Then all the learned men modestly made answer, that his highness did not stand in need of the counsels of persons of their condition; but that on the contrary, others ought to learn how to conduct themselves by imitating his example.

Timur told 'em, he did not approve this sort of compliments, by which they might expect to gain his favor; and that what he had said was neither thro' vain-glory or interest: "For thro' the protection of God, says he, I am too great a lord in this world, to stand in need of such trifles; but my design in this results from the reflection I have made, that each of you coming from a different kingdom, must without doubt be inform'd of the affairs which pass there, and of the good or bad conduct of the Derogas, and commissarys of the Divan. Communicate therefore to me what you know, and tell me whether the governors and officers observe justice and the commands of the law as they ought; that being inform'd of the evils they commit, I may remedy 'em, and deliver the weak from oppression."

Immediately all the doctors freely declar'd their sentiments, applauding the emperor's intention; and they represented to his highness the condition the affairs of their respective provinces were in. Whereupon this just emperor made choice of the most learned among 'em, and those who were most vers'd in the laws of their country; and he nam'd an intendant to go with each of 'em, to whom he gave a full power to make laws or to dispense with 'em, always approving whatever he shou'd do in relation to justice and the observation of the laws; so that right might be administer'd to those who were oppress'd thro-out all the kingdoms and provinces of his empire: likewise permitting these intendants to take out of the revenues of the imperial treasury of each country, what sums had been extorted from poor persons by violence against the laws; and to restore the same to 'em; and also to punish the tyrants in an exemplary manner: moreover they were order'd to register exactly every thing that shou'd pass during their commission, and at their return to give an account of it; that by this means the causes of vexation being entirely rooted out of the empire, the people may live in quiet and tranquillity. Then Timur made this memorable speech.

"My heart hath always been set upon the
 "enlarging the limits of my vast empire: but
 "now I take up a resolution to use all my care
 "in procuring quiet and security to my subjects,
 "and to render my kingdoms flourishing. I
 "will that private persons address their re-
 "quests and complaints immediately to my
 "self; that they give me their advice for the
 "good of the Mussulmans, the glory of the
 "faith, and the extirpation of the wicked dis-

"murders of the public quiet. I am unwilling
 "that at the day of judgment my poor op-
 "press'd subjects shou'd cry out for vengeance
 "against me: I am not desirous that any of
 "my brave soldiers, who have so often expos'd
 "their lives in my service, shou'd complain a-
 "gainst me or fortune, for their afflictions
 "touch me more than they do them. Let
 "none of my subjects fear to come before me
 "with his complaints; for my design is that
 "the world shou'd become a paradise under my
 "reign, knowing that when a prince is just and
 "merciful, his kingdom is crown'd with blessings
 "and honors. In fine, I desire to lay up a
 "treasure of justice, that my soul may be happy
 "after my death."

This speech of Timur, in which his piety
 is much to be admir'd, was taken down by a
 lord who was present at the assembly, and who
 wrote at the bottom of it these words of the Al-
 coran, *We give testimony only to what we have seen.*
 After this the whole assembly lifted up their
 hands to heaven, and offer'd the following
 prayer: "O God, who art the lord both of
 "this world and of the next, grant an ever-
 "lasting reign to this just prince; hearken to
 "his righteous petitions: and as thou hast sub-
 "jected the universe to him, after a long and
 "prosperous reign in this world, let him reign
 "with thee in glory in the other."

CHAP. XI.

*Continuation of the history of the princes who
came into Irac-Arabi.*

THE Mirza Roustem having joined the Mirza Aboubecre near Hille, as already mention'd, these two princes, who were the Roustem and Estendiar, of the age, pass'd the river together, and met Cara Yousef Turcoman, over against the town of Sibi on the banks of the river Nabléganah, below Hille. They had then but three thousand men, while Cara Yousef had entrench'd himself on the other side of the river with a numerous army, ready to give battle. At the Mirza Roustem, being eldest, and the first rank, the Mirza Aboubecre prudently advis'd him to take his post in the main body; but the Mirza Roustem answer'd him, that he was only come to bring succours according to the orders given him, that it was better to separate the army into two bodies, that they might each command one, and to attack the enemy on both sides. In effect, the Mirza Roustem cross'd the water, and attack'd Cara Yousef with all imaginable resolution, and the Mirza Aboubecre did the same on his part: the attack was brave on our side, and as vigorously sustain'd on the other. In the battle, Yar Ali, brother of Cara Yousef, was shot off his horse with an arrow, and our men immediately

* Two famous heroes mention'd in the oriental romances.
! Prince of the Accoyunlus, or white sheep.

Book VI. cut off his head. The Emir Sevindgic distinguish'd himself bravely on this occasion, and contributed very much to the defeat of the enemy. Cara Yousef fled into Syria with some of his domestics; but his subjects, who consisted of between ten and fifteen thousand families, his oxen, sheep, and camels were pillag'd by our soldiers. Some of the Mirza Roustem's men brought Cara Yousef's wife, the queen of the Turcomans, to him in chains: she was the mother of Esfender and Espende, and was attended by the ladies of her court, and her relations.

Our princes also vanquish'd Noayr, who was absolute commander of all the Arabian tribes of the desert: and they likewise defeated several other princes of these quarters, who at that time had never submitted to any conqueror.

During the rebuilding of Bailacan, Sarek and Cotluc Coja, sons of the Dervich Buke, Aboubecr and Acbirdi Uzbek, officers of the Mirza Roustem, carry'd the happy news of these victories to court, where they presented to Timur the head of Cara Yousef's brother.

After the causes of the disorders which Cara Yousef and other rebels had occasion'd were remov'd, the Mirza Aboubecr employ'd himself particularly in rendering this country as flourishing as ever: he encourag'd the people, and oblig'd 'em to cultivate the lands: and he caus'd the city of Bagdad, which was almost ruin'd, to be rebuilt.

CHAP. XII

*Arrival of the Mirza Omar from Samarcand.
Continuation of what happen'd during the
building of Bailacan.*

THE first of Jumaziulevel 806, the Mirza Nov. 25.
Omar, son of the Mirza Miran Chah, 1403.
whom Timur had recal'd from Samarcand to
take upon him the government of Azerbaijan,
arriv'd at the imperial camp before Bailacan,
where he had the honor to pay his respects to
his highness. At the same time came likewise
to court a Circassian officer, the son of Toumen,
with the head of Malek Azeeddin king of Lor
Gouchen, who had revolted: this officer
brought with him the head which had been flou'd, and
the body stuf'd with straw, hung up in pub-
lic view, to serve as an example to all future
disturbers of the common tranquillity.
Timur about this time resolv'd to perform an
act of justice on the person of the famous
doctor Moulana Cotobeddin Carmi, who was
come to court with the other officers of
the Divan of Chiraz, because of his having
seduced the inhabitants of Fars at his departure
from that place, at the sum of three hundred
thousand Dinars Copeghi, under pretence of a
present to the emperor. Moulana Saed, a doc-
tor of the same country, who accompany'd him,
accus'd him to Timur in a private audience,
where the emperor had order'd him to give
him what light he was able in relation to the
affairs of Fars. This tyranny having highly of-
fended his majesty, he immediately pass'd judg-
ment

ment upon Cotobeddin, and issu'd out an order to the Cheik Dervich Allahi to bind his hands, and placing the fork'd branch about his neck, to send him in that manner to Chiraz, with the sum he had extorted from the inhabitants, to be deliver'd to those who had paid it. Argoun, intendant to Cotobeddin, was condemn'd to be hang'd because of the troubles he had brought on the people at his master's order. A declaration was also publish'd to inform the people of the destruction of these tyrants, in revenge of the wrong they had receiv'd; after which the intendancy of the finances of Chiraz was given to Coia Malek Semnani. The emperor order'd Moulana Saed to return to Chiraz, to declare to the inhabitants of Fars, that what Moulana Cotobeddin had done was not by his order, and that of which Argoun was hang'd as soon as they arriv'd at Chiraz.

The following friday, the inhabitants of the city and neighboring villages being assembled in great multitudes in the old mosque, Moulana Cotobeddin was expos'd with his hands in fetters, and the fork'd branch about his neck, at the foot of the preaching-chair, which was of free-stone. Moulana Saed, mounting the pulpit, told the people what the great Timur had order'd him, in allusion to the words of Coia Amad Fakih. "If this kingdom, says he, has been ruin'd, don't impure it to the emperor; for Cotobeddin is only in fault." All the people applauded what he said, and prais'd Timur, so that the mosque echo'd out their acclamations. The sum of three hundred thousand Dinars Copagh, which Cotobeddin had extorted in the space of two months, was entirely re-imburs'd, according to the registers of the

Cadis, notarys, and Emirs of the kingdom, to those from whom it had been taken.

This justice was done in the person of one of the greatest lords of the kingdom, which went to eternize the memory of Timur's equity.

After this the Mirza Pir Mehemed, son of Omar Chah, took on Cotebeddin's letters, and fork'd branch, and sent him back to Samarcand.

CHAP. XIII.

Timur calls the winter at Carabagh-Ardeb. Relation of what happen'd there.

WHEN Bailacan was entirely rebuilt, Timur march'd towards Carabagh, where he had already given orders for Corias, or the son of Corias, to be built to pass the winter in. Being come to this place, he went down into the imperial Coria, and the Mirzas and Nevians quarter'd in those appointed for them, as did also the officers and domestics in theirs. Never was there seen before so magnificent a camp of such vast extent. The Mirza Roustem came by the road of Coulaghi and Sunatai, according to the orders he had receiv'd to repair to the Couronai order, which was to be held at Carabagh, to invest the Mirza Omar in the government of the Kingdom of Hulacou Can.

In the mean while, on advice of the revolt of Eskender Chelai, who with Timur's permission was return'd to his principality of Demarend and Firouz Coh, Solyman Chah had orders to go to Rei to observe Eskender's motions. The Mirza Roustem was sent to assist Solyman in this affair; and they had orders, that if Eskender shou'd

shou'd be so happy as to return forthwith to his obedience, to give him a handsom reception; but on the contrary, if he continu'd obstinate in his revolt, they shou'd draw together all the infantry of Com, Cachan and Derghuzin, and pursue and exterminate him wherever they cou'd find him. The Mirza Roustem and the Emir Solyman Chah immediately departed to execute this order.

Then the Emir Cheik Ibrahim, king of Chirvan, prepar'd a great banquet to regale the whole court; he made a present to Timur of several pearls, beautiful women slaves, handsome boys, cuirasses, belts, arms, and a thousand led-horses: he also made fine presents to the eunuchs, princes, and chief persons of the court, and did what he cou'd to discover some marks of his affection to all the lords.

About this time Nour Elouerd, son of the Sultan Ahmed Gelair, about eighteen years of age, having been born during the war, was brought from Irac-Arabi. The venerable Cherif Said Bereke then also arriv'd at court: the pious Timur went out of his tent to meet him. The Santon having perceiv'd him, hung on his neck, and paid his compliments of condolence on the death of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan. Timur embrac'd him, and kept a long time with him.

The doctors, Imams, and lawyers of Transoxiana, Kech, Samarcand, Bocara, Termed, and other places, as the sons of the Can of Termed, Coja Abdelevel, Coja Afameddin, Coja Afdal Kechi, Abdelhamid and Abdelrahman, sons of the Cheik Elislam of Kech, and other great lords of these kingdoms, came to court, where they were admitted to an audience: they paid their compliments of condolence on the death

death of the Mirza Mehemet Sultan, and endeavour'd to comfort the emperor by good counsels taken out of the Alcoran and the sayings of Mahomet. In effect, after they had somewhat moderated his affliction, he was pleas'd to have 'em dispute before him on some questions of learning and religion; which they did every evening, after Timur had done with the affairs of State.

One of the most considerable events which happen'd during Timur's stay at Carabagh, was that the secretaries of the Divan of Kirman had taken Idecon's account, in which they had set down in his name an excessive sum. Timur being inform'd of it during the building of Baisakab, apply'd himself to find out the truth of it in the Divan: but the princess Bouyan Aga, daughter of Timur's uncle *, presented her self before him with child by Idecon, with her daughter and countess for it, by promising he should pay a hundred Romans Copeghi, and to which Idecon consented, obliging himself to pay that sum to the imperial treasury. Then he was confirm'd in the government of Kirman, and permitted to return home, with orders at his arrival at Kirman to send back from thence to court the Sultan Bayazid, his brother's son, who had been dispatch'd thither in his place, on Timur's departure for court.

* Hadsa
Berlan.

Timur sent Anoucherouan, son of Beyan Aga, to Timur, to receive the revenues of Azerbaijan: and he gave the government of Sari to Pir Mehemet Poulad, one of the Emirs of the Mirza Charoc. At the same time Bic Mulec Aga, wife of the Mirza Pir Mehemet Gehanghir, set out from Gazni and Candahar for court, with her three sons Caled, Buzandger and Sultan Mehdi, who were then very young: she paid her respects to the emperor, and presented him with several

Book VI. several precious stuffs of India, and other commodities.

CHAP. XIV.

The emperor sends the Mirza Charag to Ghilan.

AS the princes of Ghilan were not come to court, but had only sent a few presents, Timur resolv'd to march against them; he sent thither the Caragoul, or vanguard, commanded by Derya, Goudah, Bala, Meherab, brother of the Sultan, Jevan, and others. Rouldai, (and Behloul) being appointed to pass the winter in the press on the frontiers of Ghilan; and he likewise sent the Mirza Charag to Kzelgadge at the head of his troops. This prince immediately set out, accompanied by his son the Mirza Ibrahim Sultan, with his body of ten thousand men, the Amir Ghasi Chahi, the Cheik Ibrahim, Roustem, Jang, and the Seid Goja son of the Cheik Ali, and other generals of Temens with their troops; and they stop'd at Kzelgadge, expecting other orders.

As soon as the princes of Ghilan had received advice of the army's march towards their country, they were disquieted, abandon'd their former resolution, and consented to pay a sum under the name of Carage. Charag sent an express to advertise the court of this; and made several persons set out to receive the tribute.

The Seid Razi Kya, one of the princes of Deylem, who was of Mahomet's race, and distinguished

being assisted by his kindred and the best soldiers, and the Emir Mehmed, brother of the prince of the country, accompanied together for some days magnificent presents and each of the commanders of Gilan sent presents and considerable sums of money. Being arriv'd at court, they kiss'd the foot of the throne, and humbly offer'd their presents, saying that they were and had always been obedient to his highness; that they had us'd all their endeavors to collect the sums of the Carage, and that they had returned to live and die in perfect submission to the emperor's orders.

Timur gave 'em vests, and highly honor'd 'em: and as the Seid Razi Rza was of Mahomed's race, he was pleas'd to treat him in a very handsome manner, and graciously gave him ten thousand pieces of gold, that by this present he might be able to pay the sum of seven thousand horses and three thousand oxen, to be taken out of what the people had promis'd to pay for the Carage impos'd on their country: he gave the half of it to the Emir Mehmed, who a short time before had been a rebel, and he gave an order for the receivers to pay the other half.

Timur likewise gave the Seid Razi the government of the castle of Konic, on the frontiers of Batolia, which Chans, a relation of the late Abbas, formerly possess'd; and he sent him thither with troops.

During the winter quarters at Carabagh, the Emir Seid Razi fell sick: and his physicians employ'd on their skill, and administer'd the most excellent remedies, they could do him no good, so that this great person pass'd from this world into the other with an entire resignation to the will of God. Timur was sensibly affected, and wept bitterly at the death of his best

Book VI. best friend; and afterwards he caus'd his coffin to be carry'd to Andecoud, to be there bury'd. Then he gave the governments of Hamadan, Nehavend, Ouroudgerd, Lircoutchet, and their dependences, to the Mirza Eskender.

CHAP. XV.

Arrival of some princes from Merdin and Vastan. A famous funeral banquet made for the late Mirza Mehemed Sultan.

WINTER being past, Malak Ulu, prince of Merdin, came to court with several presents, bringing with him his daughter, who was betroth'd to the Mirza Aboubeere. Malak Azeddin Chir came also from Vastan with presents of abundance of horses to Timur, who gave him a handsome reception.

About this time the emperor issu'd out a general order to all the greater and lesser officers of the kingdom of Hulacoa Can, residing in Azerbijana and Irac-Arabi, to send each a hundred or one of their relations, to reside at Andecoud: and that this project might be executed without delay, he order'd several officers to repair to the respective places, to bring 'em away forthwith.

In the month of Ramadan, Timur made a funeral banquet for the prince Mehemed Sultan, in which the poor were principally regal'd. The Cherifs, doctors, and Imams of all parts, were at the banquet, and took their places according to their ranks and dignities. The entire Alcoran was read over, and the feast concluded with prayers for the repose of the Mirza's soul. Afterwards

towards the princess Canzade, went to Sultania, and transported from thence to Samarcand the Mirza's coffin, which had lain in the tomb of the prophet Caidar.

Timur after this order'd a famous chase in the plains of Agram, beyond the Araxes, in which the utmost magnificence appear'd. The dogs had coverings of sattin imbroider'd with gold, and the hunting-leopards had chains of gold set with precious stones about their necks; there was an infinite number of Grecian grey-hounds, so esteem'd for their swiftness, as also a very uncommon and excellent kind of beagles; but what were most remarkable, were huge European mastiffs, as strong as the lions of Africa, as terrible as tigers rous'd up to the fight, and as swift as arrows. After three days the circle began to close, and the slaughter, which is call'd *Chame-nish*, was made upon an infinite number of wild beasts, as lions, antelope, roe-bucks, as well of the mountains as of the plains, and also fags.

After the hunting was over, Timur return'd to the camp, where he distributed among the scholars, doctors and Iqans of Samarcand, Kech, Bocar, and other citys of Transaxiana, an innumerable quantity of uncommon curiosities, which he had taken from the kingdom of Natolia, among which were several handson fluffs, beams of gold, beautiful horses, mules, women-slaves and boys; after which he permitted 'em to return home, which they did, loading his highness with their praises and thanks.

C H A P. XVI.

Timur's return from a campaign of seven years.

TIMUR having made himself master, during his campaign of seven years, of the kingdoms of Natolia and Syria with their dependencies; and having oblig'd the inhabitants of Grand Cairo, the capital of Egypt, to render him money, and read the Couthe, which is the Friday prayer for the reigning prince, in his name and titles; the Egyptians had also submitted to pay an annual tribute. Timur having likewise fulfill'd the misceps of the Koran in making war on the Christians of Georgia, whose pride and power he assuag'd: he found that to crown the triumphs of his happy life, he had no more to conquer in all Asia than the empire of China, the inhabitants of which were infidels. Whereupon he immediately resolv'd on that conquest, and departed from Samarkand the 14th of Ramadan 800, which answers to the year of the Monkey, for 1398. He cross'd the Araxes on a bridge, and encamp'd on the other side in a meadow near Minar-Abad, one of the towns on the canal of Berlus, which canal he had dug himself, as we saw before: and he was join'd here by the Mirza Charoc, who according to order had taken the road to Kzelygadze.

C. H. A. P. XVII.

Timur invests the Mirza Omar in the empire of Hulacou Can.

At this time a great feast was made at the court on occasion of the emperor's giving the Mirza Omar the government of the empire of Hulacou Can, for which he issu'd out his letters patent sign'd with the imperial seal, which was the impression of his red hand. This empire contain'd the countrys of Azerbaijan, the kingdom of Roum or Natolia as far as Constantinople; and Syria as far as Egypt. The princes who govern'd the kingdoms of Pers and the two Iracs, were commanded to obey his orders and wait at his court. Timur gave him his troops and officers of the Mirza Miran Chah, and permitted him to depart at the same time: he nam'd for his principal officers, who were to have pensions, the Emirs Gehan Chah, Roustem son of the Emir Mossa, Tachibek Berias, Juneid Bouroukhan, and others; and gave him ten thousand horses recommending to him not to do nothing contrary to the sentiments of the Emir Gehan Chah. Then Timur presented to the new king of the Medes a crown, a vest, a pair of shoes with precious stones, and a horse with a saddle of gold; and to each of his Emirs a robe and a horse.

The prince then took leave, and paid his respects to the emperor, who tenderly embrac'd him as well as the Emirs, and then dismiss'd him. The Emir Gehan Chah could not refrain from tears at parting from the emperor and court, because of his long affection to his highness.

Book VI. Timur afterwards gave vests and belts to the Emir Cheik Ibrahim, Malek Hla the Sultan of Merdin, Malek Azezzeddin Chir, Kustendil a Georgian, Tizec, Dialek, and Bestam, whom he order'd to attend on the Mirza Omar, who took his road thro the delightful country of Alatac.

Timur departed from this place, and hurried in his march. After a day's journey he encamp'd in a meadow on the bank of the river Abaghou, otherwise nam'd Tchaybelaroud, where he staid to the end of Ramadan.

Timur celebrated the feast of the grand Bairam with great devotion and pomp: Motallia Nezameddin Chamabi, one of the most eloquent doctors of the age, who had wrote part of the history of Timur, preach'd that day, and the Coutbe, and perform'd the ceremonies of prayer. Several alms and pious gifts were distributed; and the feast was finish'd by a magnificent banquet, in which were serv'd up abundance of the most excellent dishes and wines.

C H A P. XVIII.

Continuation of the history of the Mirza Roustem and the Emir Solyman Chah, who were sent towards Rei.

THE Mirza Roustem and the Emir Solyman Chah, who were gone to Rei to gain intelligence of what Eskender Cheik was doing, being arriv'd at that country, found that Eskender had revolted, and having fortify'd the citadel of Firouz Couh, and plac'd in it his son and family, had fled to the mountains in the forests of Tchelaoun and Roustemdar. Our generals staid twenty days at Tahriz in the province

of Rei; and having got together the infantry of Rei, Com, Cachen, Saré and Dergahin, to the number of two thousand, they departed in pursuit of Eskender, enter'd the desert of Roustendar, and besieg'd the fortress of Nour, which they took and raz'd. Malik Keyoumerres came to find 'em in this place; and as he was at variance with Eskender, they sent him, and sent him to Eskender: "Behold, say they, we send you your enemy, that you may see we are willing to accommodate matters with you; therefore suspend nothing, but come without delay to meet us. If you return to your obedience, we'll make a treaty with you in the name of Timur: you have spent part of your life in his service; don't root up the tree which you have planted."

Eskender dur'd not come to 'em, because of his wounds; but they dur'd strike up an accommodation with Keyoumerres, and as well by threats as promises, engag'd him to be of his party. Then having sworn a reciprocal friendship, they join'd against us, and committed acts of hostility. While this court was encamp'd on the bank of the river Agloe, a courier came from the Emir Solyman Chah, who gave advice to the emperor of what had happen'd. Whereupon Timur immediately resolv'd to march thither in person, and sent orders to the Emir of Corasiana, lieutenant-general of Corasiana, to march with his troops by the road of Sari and Angel, to revenge him on Eskender.

The 7th of Chawal 806, an officer of the Mirza Cabil Sultan arriv'd from Transoxiana, who assur'd the emperor from that prince that the affairs of those parts were in a very good condition; and that the people enjoy'd perfect peace and tranquillity.

April 30.
1404.

CHAP. XIX.

Timur sends the Mirza Eskender and the Emir Chamelic before the rest towards Rei.

THE emperor being arriv'd at Ardebil, sent the Emir Chamelic and Pir Ali Soliman, with a thousand men, to Rei before all others, with orders to get together the soldiers of the Arabian tribes and the hords of Caldees, Turks who dwell about Savv, Cam, Cachah, Tashah, and Pershan, as far as they could, and to form an army to oppose the enemy: and he order'd the Mirza Eskender to join the Mirza Rouflem and the Emir Solyman Chah.

Timur having pass'd by Ardebil and Myana, went down to Sertchem, where he found Daulat governor of Avenic, who was come thither to pay his respects to him. Timur tenderly embrac'd him because of his former services, and having given him a vest and belt, said to him, "We are not certain we shall ever be able to see each other again; but don't neglect informing your self of what shall pass at my court. The Sultan Ahmed Gelair is at present retir'd, and in a low condition, so there's nothing to be fear'd from him: but be upon your guard against the Turcoman prince Kera Yousef." Then Timur dismiss'd his friend.

Timur departed from Sertchem, and arriv'd at May 13. Sultania the 20th of Chawal 806, to which came the persons who had been sent into Avenic to receive the money we mention'd before: they brought thence a great quantity of money, horses, ruffs,

Auffa, and other crys. The emperor departed Chap. 10
 from his one from Sultania, and after some
 days journey arriv'd at Casbin, in which place
 the Mirza Aboubecre came post in nine days
 from Ardebil, by the road of Kelas, having for
 his attendance Pir Hussein Berlas and Savindgi.
 He paid his respects to his highness, and besought
 him to permit the Mirza Miran Chah to re-
 side in Bagdad, to reside there with him;
 his request was granted. Miran Chah re-
 ceiv'd a gratification of four hundred thousand
 Dinars Copeghi, a hundred horses, and several
 boys, and then return'd to Sultania.

Tianir being gone from Casbin to Saou-
 Bouac, gave the Mirza Aboubecre two hundred
 horses, a hundred pair of cuirasses, and a hun-
 dred thousand Dinars Copeghi: he order'd him
 to meet the Emir Solyman Chah, and march
 with him against Eskender. He then receiv'd
 the princess, wife of Chahmoul, wife of
 Chahmoul, and daughter of the Emir Hadgi
 Seididin, of the lordship of Dudgrayil, depen-
 dent on Bagdad; and this princess then return'd
 to Sultania.

Aboubecre having caus'd the snow to be re-
 mov'd, ascended the mountain of Acabay Tala-
 goun, and join'd the Mirza Roustem at Koo-
 gyour, the Mirza Eskender, and the Emir Soly-
 man Chah, who were all encamp'd there, with
 a great trench round 'em, fortify'd with branches
 of trees, and they staid here twenty days, till
 the arrival of the army. Having receiv'd fresh
 orders to fall upon Eskender, they departed to
 that end; and as the country was entirely co-
 ver'd with wood, they cut down the trees to

open a way cross, and mended the passages which had been ruin'd with planks; and thus they pursu'd Iskender, killing all the enemy they met.

May 22.
1404.

Timur enter'd the meadow of Rei, the first of Zilcade 806, and encamp'd in the plain of Safi Camich: he order'd the superfluous equipages to be conducted by the road of Rei and Khodivar. Bie Mute Aga, wife of the Mirza Fa Mehemet, had leave to remain with her sons to Gazan and Gildadar. The Amir Chamledon and others, who had the care of transporting the Caravans and colonies, which had remov'd from Azerbijan, had orders to take the road of Khouvar and Semnan. Then the Amir Chamledon, who had set out before, arriv'd at Rei. He was order'd to go to the bottom of the mountain which lay in front of the city, and to rebuild mount Demavend, which lay in the way, and to give orders for its being rebuilt of stone and mortar, and render'd as flourishing as before. From thence having pass'd by Demavend at the head of his army rang'd in order of battel, he arriv'd at Firouzcouh.

CHAP. XX.

The taking of the citadel of Firouzcouh.

May 31.
1404.

AMONG the strongest places mention'd in history, none deserves more notice than the citadel of Firouzcouh, situate on the ridge of a mountain, with walls of the utmost strength. On the 9th of Zilcade 806, the imperial standard arriv'd there, and the troops form'd the siege, encamping at all the avenues round about it. Every one having taken his post, the machines

and arms necessary, were got ready: the throwers of stones began the assault, and were seconded by the bravest men of the army, who exposed their lives with the greatest intrepidity. And as one of the towers of the place was built at the foot of the mountain, on the bank of the river, and the walls of this tower were rais'd as high as the peak of the mountain, the besieg'd made use of it to draw up water out of the river: but the Turks turn'd the course of the river from the foot of the mountain, and spoil'd the water which was left. This oblig'd the besieg'd to fall on to slay'd 'em, being resolv'd rather to die than suffer this.

During night an officer of the Mirza Ibrahim Sultan, accompany'd by Mehemed Azad, Cheik Behloul, Beyantencour, Acbonga, and other brave men, got up one after another to the foot of the walls. They were possess'd by the besieg'd, who in either great numbers, fought with their strength, and wounded several of our men: but day being come, all the soldiers ascend'd the mountain by different places, and gave a general assault. The son of Iskender Cheik, governor of the castle, and all the others, perceiving the intrepidity with which they were attack'd, were seiz'd with fear, tho the garrison consisted of three hundred men, or rather giants of Alexander, or satyrs of the forest. Their necessity oblig'd 'em to send several of their men to Timur, to beg quarter with submission. The emperor gave these messengers veils, and treated 'em with abundance of kindness: whereupon they were no sooner return'd to the place, than Iskender's son, and all the rest of the officers and soldiers, came to call themselves at the emperor's feet, and deliver up the castle, which the troops enter'd, and made all the inhabitants

June 2,

go out, that they might be transported to, and
 their place. Thus this strong citadel, whose
 top seemed to reach the heavens, was taken
 after two days siege; Timur left there as go-
 vernor, Zaghri Touni with a good garrison.
 Next day, the 17th of Zilcade 806, Timur
 took horse, and went to encamp in a meadow
 half a league from thence. He sent back to Sa-
 marcand the ambassas, Serai Munk, Canum and
 Tooman Aga, with the Mirzas, Ghus-Bec, Fa-
 hman, Sarin, Ismael, and Sarwaras, who
 departed by the road of Samarkand; and
 afterwards the emperor march'd against the
 Chaghai, and to reach the town of Dangan,
 he march'd a march towards the town of Dangan,
 broke into the town, he wounded the inhabitants,
 Deroga of another band, which march'd after
 him, discover'd Tangriburmich, who lay upon
 the earth naked and wounded, and scarce alive,
 and carry'd him into the town to dress his
 wounds. The other bands, hearing this, re-
 solv'd to fly; upon which the Emir Chamseddin
 Abbas, Aralmich, Chalvelli, son of Seifeddin,
 and the other captains of companies, and
 the conduct of the bands, fell upon the
 these miserable wretches, of whom they de-
 stroy'd a great number, and either within the
 town of Dangan, or near it, slew about three
 thousand upon the spot, so that the dead bodies
 stop'd up the passage of the streets. Several fled
 into the forests of Eslar-Abad; and the Emir
 Chamseddin brought away the rest.
 Timur, on advice of this immediately sent
 away Beyan Coutchin, Fazel, son of Seifeddin-
 louc, son of Hadgi, Seifeddin, Dane Coja, Ron-
 tem Poulad, and Comari Behader, with fifteen
 hundred horse, in pursuit of the fugitives. The
 Mirza

Mirza Ghazan, Emir Ghazan, and the Emir Beken-Chir, and
 likewise sent after him on the same
 account, and went as far as Herat, but they
 did not return'd to join the emperor, because they
 found that some of the Caratatars had been
 slain, others fled, and others brought away by
 the Emir Chahar-Budak and the Desogars. Beken-
 Chir, and the others who went out with him
 in the night, pass'd by Beshkent, crossed
 the mountain of Lengheroud, enter'd the forest
 of Mazendran, and join'd the Caratatars at
 Carabagh, on the shore of the Caspian sea,
 and tho' the Tatars were far more numerous,
 yet they attack'd 'em immediately, and having
 easily defeated 'em, slew above a thousand,
 and took more than ten thousand family's pris-
 oners. After this expedition Beken-Chir re-
 turn'd to court, and the Caratatars, who had taken the road
 to the south, with the baggage, were arriv'd at
 Herat, the officers who conducted the Mirza
 Charoc's baggage, parted from the rest, and
 went to Herat by the way of Nichabon, and
 Serai Mulk Chahm, and Tounas, and by
 the road of Jaggeron and Esfahan with the
 greatest baggage.

C H A P. XXI.

Temur marches to Tablas.

TEMUR being accusom'd to execute the
 greater part of his enterprises himself, he
 march'd in person against Eskender Chah;
 and as the Mirza Charoc was fallen sick, he return'd
 to Herat with the officers of his household,
 while

while his Empire and troops follow'd the imperial army to Echelao, at which place they arriv'd in a few days, altho the ways were over high mountains, and thro' deep valleys. The troops being arriv'd at the mountain of Echelao, the ungrateful Eskender was oblig'd to fly, and retire into the dells call'd hell.

June 11.

The 20th of Zikade Timur arriv'd at Tchekler, from whence, not being able to find Eskender, he departed the same day. In this road is a very deep dells full of woods, a way cover'd with mud and fogs; in the middle of which is a great and extremely rapid torrent, which can neither be ford'd nor turn'd over. The great difficulty there is, in passing that dells, and crossing the torrent, after having pass'd it, Timur was oblig'd to build another. The soldiers thereto built one of wood, on which forty brave officers pass'd first, and were follow'd by five hundred men, whom they commanded. Yousef Berles afterwards cross'd it with Couthin-Toncheal, as did the Seid Coja, son of the Cheik Ali-Bek, and at length the Mirza Sultan, follow'd by the Emir Cheik Nouraddin, got up to the ridge of the mountain of the dells, cutting down the trees to open a passage in search of Eskender. Timur also pass'd the bridge, and camp'd on the top of a mountain where there were no trees, but continual rains and fogs. At this place Timur gave audience to the Seid Ismael of Kerfecan, one of the lords of Termes.

Timur sent soldiers into all the forests to find Eskender, assigning for guides the Cheriks of Mazendran.

Among

Among those who went in search of Esken-
der, the captains Dervay, Cutchin, Chadimlic,
Deyal, the Chett, Mahmud, Ghatchin, Bit T'e-
mish, Cutchin, Comdad, Fichon, and Vef-
har, met him on the 26th of Elendé 806, in
the middle of a wood near the Calpinoz. The
Chett Dervishmish was seiz'd with fear, and
turn'd back on pretence of bringing Yoncf Mertis
and his expedition to back em, he being
sent out with his troops.

June 17.

In the mean while Esken-
der, at the head of
two hundred foot and thirty horse of his at-
tendants, sall'd out of his little camp, and
 prepar'd to attack our men, who were but twenty
in number, and were not ignorant of Esken-
der's valor, having seen him several times in action;
for intrepidity and courage were hereditary to
him, being descended in a right line from Bigen
son of Keyou, and Banch Kuchak daughter of
the great Roushan, as may be seen in the Shah
Name or Fardaoui, which makes Bigen speak
these words, " My grandfather was a lion in
" battle, my father was the great Keyou, this
" day you shall behold my prodigious exploits."
Our twenty men, notwithstanding this, fearing
Timur's reproaches, resolv'd rather to die than
fly, reflecting that if the time destin'd for their
death was come, they might as well die here as
in another place: so they collect'd all their cou-
rage, and confiding in the ordinary good fortune
of Timur's arms, discharg'd their arrows. Es-
ken-
der, follow'd by his horsemen, attack'd em
several times with their pikes; but our men so
dexterously ply'd him, that he cou'd not only
gain no ground, but shamefully turn'd his
back before a handful of men, with all his sol-
diers. Ingratitude is the source of all misfor-
tunes. Esken-
der had preserv'd his honor, if he
had

Book III. had not abandon'd Timur, from whom he had receiv'd so many favors. All this time, on the 15th of April, Eskender was fled into the forest, our scouts quarter'd in his camp, not knowing what road he had taken. Then Yusuf Berke arriv'd with Seifelmulla and Hadsji Abdulla, who also enter'd Eskender's camp, which they completely pillag'd: carrying away abundance of horses, mules, stuffs of gold and other riches. They were join'd there by Ali Mirza Baskhan and Abdurrahman, accompanied by the Emir Seyidgic and others. Ghik, who came from the left. At break of day, there appeared in the mountain something glimmering, which directed them to the place. The Emir Seyidgic march'd to the place, and in the mountain, he found a large number of soldiers, who were the sons of Leherasp and all his men, who with him, were Eskender's son, with his daughter, wives and domestics, who were all made slaves.

CHAPTER XXII.

War between the Mirza Sultan Hussain and Eskender Ghik. The flight of the latter.

THE Mirza Sultan Hussain, and the Seid Coja son of the Cheik Ali Behader, join'd our scouts with seventy men, and enter'd with 'em into the woods in search of Eskender. They met him about noon in the midst of this forest, having with him two hundred foot and fifty horse, who prepar'd to defend themselves. The Mirza Sultan Hussain fell furiously upon Eskender, and immediately retreated as if he would have fled. The enemy, who thought to im-

prove

pride his feeding advantage, and out of the wood to fall upon our men; but they turn'd upon 'em suddenly in good order, and made Israel laughter of the foot. Yet he perform'd whatever could be expected from a great man; but was wounded with a lance in his face, which struck out his teeth: yet this did not hinder his going. Two horsemen of Tchela were taken prisoners by the officers of the Mirza Sultan Hussein: and Eskender perceiving himself vanquish'd, re-enter'd the woods, and went out by the side towards Ghilan. He was never heard of more: tho' some say that he took the habit of a monk, while others assure us that he died thro' grief in the woods.

The Mirza Sultan Hussein sent one of the men who were taken to Timur by Canan Dervich. The emperor, who then encamp'd in the mountain-side north of Ghilan, order'd the man to inform him what he knew of Eskender.

The Mirza Sultan Hussein at his return met on the shore of the Caspian sea the Mirzas Roustem and Abolbetro, with the Emirs Solyman Chan and Chelak Nouraddin, who had been in search of Eskender; they march'd together along the sea-side near three leagues, and coming towards Ghilan. They encamp'd there, and were join'd by the Emir Chamelic. The Mirzas had been seeking Eskender with the Corassians by the road of Anol and Sari. Then all the Emirs departed together for the imperial camp. Timur, notwithstanding all the fatigues they had undergone, reproach'd 'em for not having continu'd to pursue Eskender, and sent 'em all back again on the same account with the Emir Chamelic. They fatigued themselves exceedingly in the woods, which were very miry, because of the continual rains, which hinder'd

The history of Timur-Bec.

Book II. hinder'd their encampment. On advice of this, Timur sent orders for 'em to return.

Then the emperor decamp'd from the mountain, and crossing the bridge over the torrent in the defile of hell, went to encamp before the castle of Nour in the province of Roussendar. The soldiers brought before him Eskender's nephew, and others of his relations, with several of his officers: he gave 'em a handsom reception, and granted 'em quarter.

During night an express came from the Mirzas Aboubekre and Sultan Hussein, and from the Emir Solyman Chah, with advice of their arrival at the torrent of the defile of hell, which they could not pass by reason the bridge was broken. Timur immediately sent to 'em Mohamed Azad and Toulal Bapouchi, with thirty watermen of the Gihon, having for their chief Ourdouchah, who with their usual dexterity built a bridge, on which the Mirzas cross'd the torrent with their troops, and return'd to join his highness.

The army pass'd the night in the same place, and next day march'd to the castle of Harf towards Ghilan: and Timur being arriv'd at Kelare Decht, encamp'd some days in that meadow, where the Emir Cayaleddin Ali, son of the Seid Kemaleddin, had a handsom reception from the emperor, who gave him the principality of Amol, because he had always carry'd on a war with Eskender Cheiki.

C H A P.

C H A P. XXIII.

Timur returns to the seat of his empire.

AFTER the flight of Eskender, the taking of his wives, children and domestics; the conquest of his fortresses, and the pillage of his offices, horses and cattel, the emperor resolv'd to return to Samarcand. He order'd the Mirzas who had the government of the two Iracs, to go thither; and likewise the Seid Azzedin Hezaregheri with his brothers, and the Seid Ali Mazendrani, to return to their respective governments: and he gave vests to each of 'em. The Mirza Roustem, attended by the Emir & Seid Berke, departed for Ispahan, the Mirza Aboubecre for Bagdad, the Mirza Eskender for Hamadan, the Seid Azzedin for Hezaregheri, and the Seid Ali for Amol.

At length Timur departed from Kelare Decht, and in few days arriv'd at the country of Lar, at the foot of the mountain Demavend, where the emperor Argoun Chah had built a pavilion in form of a dome, which is yet nam'd the Kiosk of Argoun.

In the month of Zilhadge 807, he camp'd, and July 10th 1404, march'd with so great expedition with the Emirs and his domestics, that on the 22^d he encamp'd at the mountain of Eirouzcouh. He gave the Emir Solyman Chah a vest wrought

* Emir signifies commander: as also a prince of Mahomer's race, likewise call'd Cherif and Seid. But all Emirs are not Cherifs; for there are some Emirs who are not Mahomerans, as among the Druses, Maronites and others.

with

The history of Timur-Bec.

with gold, and a cap enrich'd with precious stones, leaving him in the government of the towns and provinces of Rei, Firouzcouh, and their dependences: and he permitted Beyan Couthin, Deroga of Rei, to return to guard the castle of Ghale Khindan.

July 14. From thence Timur pass'd by Sultan Meidan, and the 14th of Zilhedge arriv'd at Belsam, where he visited Sultan Eliaresin, whose prayers he besought, distributing alms among the poor. Mir Padishah, prince of Esterabad, who had follow'd Timur in this expedition, and had been permitted to go before the rest to his own town, return'd to this place to meet the court, and offer his presents, among which were nine sets of horses, nine robes, and a velvet, and sent him back.

Dané Coja, who had been sent in pursuit of the Tartars, arriv'd at the same place, and gave an account of what he had done. Timur order'd that the Tartar chiefs he had taken shou'd be laid in irons, and conducted to Samareand by the Derogas of the countrys they shou'd pass thro'. The emperor departed from Belsam the same day; and being arriv'd at the town of Bagaz, the lord Hasan Soufi Terkan came to him from the Mirza Charoe, to be inform'd where his highness wou'd appoint the prince to meet him. Hasan Soufi was sent back post, to let Charoe know he might meet the emperor on the bank of the river Joucoudgecan.

July 20. Then Timur march'd with expedition, and the first of Muharrem 807, departed from Nicha-
1404. bour, and went down to Achcabad. The 3d he encamp'd at the tomb of Dgyam, where he paid his devotions, imploring the prayers of that Santon. Afterwards he set out from thence, and went to encamp on the bank of the river

Joucoud

Joucougstan, where the Mirza Charoc had the
 money to his hands; and offer his presents,
 which were generously distributed among the
 lords who attended the court. Houdouhah
 brought to this place Achouga, and Garabouga
 Jouu Garhani, whom he had made prisoners,
 because they had revolted during the emperor's
 absence; who order'd 'em to be hang'd in an
 instant at that place.

At the same time Timur sent the Goss
 named Toufi, to be treasurer-general of the
 revenues of Corassana, and compvotter of the
 registers of the commissarys: this lord col-
 lected in forty days the sum of two hundred
 Tomans Copegh from the monied-men and the
 commissarys.

Then Timur took leave of the Mirza Charoc
 and departed. When he was arriv'd at Ouz-
 he encamp'd at the brink of a river, and
 hissony to which place Timur Goss Achouga
 came from Samarcand to meet the emperor, to
 whom he presented nine race-horses. From
 thence Timur went to encamp at the head of
 the river Morgah, where he receiv'd the
 plaints of the inhabitants of Aitchekhan
 gainst the oppressions of Apatepsa, their
 roga, who was condemn'd on that account to
 have his feet bor'd thro', and himself hang'd
 with his head downwards; which was accom-
 plish'd.

The emperor then departed, and on his road
 was met by the Derogas of the towns and the
 Kelanters of the tribes, who presented to him
 fresh horses, which the officers mounted, to
 make the more haste. Then he pass'd by Leng-
 her, Chok Zade Bayazid, Andecoud, Dacca,
 the defile of Ghez, and Ali Abad; and en-
 camp'd near the town of Adina Mesdgid, where

he receiv'd the principal inhabitants of Balc who came to meet him. From thence Timur went to Syahghird, and crossing the Gihon in a bark, quarter'd at Termed in the palace of the lord Acalmulc, where this Can's son made a magnificent banquet, and considerable presents. Afterwards he pass'd by the iron-gate of Cologa, and by Chekedalie, and went to encamp at Doulburdgi. From this place he march'd to Kech, and lodg'd at Acferai: then he visited the tombs of the Santon Chamfeddin Kelti, whose prayers he implor'd, and of the prince his father, the Mirza Gehanghir his son, and all his children and relations. At length he took horse, cross'd the mountain of Kech, and lay in the garden of Tafi Caratche; from whence he went down to the garden of Gahanghir, and quarter'd in the palace of Gahanuma; where he was complimented by the Mirza Caidou, son of the Mirza Pir Mehemed Gehanghir, being conducted by Coja Yousef, and Argoun Chah governor of Samarcand, who kiss'd the ground, offer'd their presents, and sprinkled precious stones upon the emperor. The empress Tonkel Canum, with all the ladys and Eunuks, also paid their respects, and offer'd their presents. As the emperor had made such haste, that no one cou'd know of his arrival, the Cheriks, Caidis, and principal persons of Samarcand, had not an opportunity of meeting and paying their respects to him at any other place than this.

CHAP. XXIV.

Timur's entry into his imperial city of Samarcand.

TIMUR departed from Gehannuma in the month of Muharrem 807, and went July 1404. down to the garden of planes in Samarcand, from whence having made his entry into the city, he visited the college of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, which he had not seen since it was built; and afterwards he return'd to the garden of planes, where preparations were made for the banquets. The empresses and Mirzas, who had set out first with the baggage from Fitoumcomb by the way of Baverd, Macan and Merou, not being yet arriv'd, Timur dispatch'd couriers to hasten their coming. The empress Touman Aga having cross'd the Gihon at Amouye, met the courier in the meadow of Baccara, who staid there three days to wait the great empress Serai Mule Canum. Then leaving the baggage there, they went with expedition to Vahkyanab, thence to Robatmule, and the meadow of Tchacmounar, thence to Tarkent, and afterwards to Kutche Malek, where a feast was ready prepar'd for 'em, while a second courier arriv'd to advertize 'em to hasten. Hereupon they instantly took horse, and in a short time came to Samarcand. Serai Mule Canum went down to Baghi Tchenar, and Touman Aga to Baghi Behicht, whither Timur immediately repair'd. But God was not pleas'd to suffer him to attain to this utmost pitch of glory and power, without some mixture of bitterness; for

Book VI, this good success in the conquests of Syria, Egypt and Natolia, was follow'd by a distemper which seiz'd him in Baghi Behicht, but did not last long. After his distemper was gone off, he went to Baghi Chemal to reside there for some days, where he gave a handsom banquet to all the Mirzas and lords of the court, on the birth of a son to Beghisi Sultan.

Timur afterwards enter'd Samarcand, and lodg'd in the palace of the late Mirza Mehemed Sultan, for whom he caus'd a magnificent sepulchre to be built in form of a dome, close to the college built by that prince: the circumference of the dome was of marble set off with gold and azure; within it was dug a vault, to lay the prince's body in; and a charming garden was made round it on the ruins of some houses. Then the emperor apply'd himself to render justice to the oppress'd, and remedy the evils which had crept in among the inhabitants of Samarcand. When he pass'd by the great mosque, which himself had built, he thought the gallery, which had been erected during his absence, was too little: so he order'd another to be made, and reprimanded in the hall of audience the architect Coja Mahmoud Daoud for his not having done it as it ought to have been. Timur lodg'd in the college of Serai Mulk Canum situate over-against the mosque; and to render his justice the more conspicuous, he order'd the commissarys and comptrollers to be arrested and bound, who being interrogated, those who were found culpable receiv'd the punishment they merited, according to the wrong they had done the people; and Mafoud Daoud and Mehemed Dgilde, who had been the principal secretarys, and during Timur's absence perform'd the function of

Vizier.

V. Gass, were both hang'd at Gimgheol, during the banquet which we shall relate hereafter.

Afterwards Timur went to the garden of plants, where by the procurement of the Emirs he gave audience to an ambassador of the Emperor of Candahar, who presented to him a Chomara, and other things, and made his harangues, which contain'd his master's submission and acknowledgments of obedience.

A bird of prey,

Afterwards the emperor went to the garden of Dilnaha, where he staid several days, and receiv'd an ambassador from one of the greatest sovereigns of Europe, who made him several curious and magnificent presents, among which were pieces of rapistry, which the Europeans had work'd with so much niceness, that if they were to be compar'd with the great performances of the painter Mani on the cloth of Artaxa, Mani wou'd be surpris'd with shame, and his works appear deform'd.

Then Timur order'd the architects, who had been brought from Damascus, to build a magnificent palace in the garden south of Baghi Chomal, which was square, each of its sides being a thousand five hundred cubits. This palace was the largest and most magnificent of any Timur had built. The chief ornaments of the buildings in Syria are of marble; and running streams are common in their houses. The Syrian architects are also very ingenious in mosaic work and sculpture, and in contriving curious fountains and perpetual jets d'eau; and what is most remarkable is, that with stones of divers colors they do the same

From the king of Castile, of which we have an account written in Spanish, mention'd more particularly in the French editor's preface to this book.

Book III. last of work, which the artificers in inlaid work do with ebony and ivory, and that with equal niceness and delicacy. They likewise made several fountains in the palace, the beauty of which was augmented by an infinity of jets d'eau of divers forms, with a surprizing and imitable art. Afterwards the workmen of Persia and Irac enriched the out-parts of the walls with porcelain of Giehan, which gave the finishing stroke to the beauty of this palace. Then Timur order'd a noble banquet to be prepar'd, with all the delights which mortals can desire; or by which the senses can be gratify'd. He was there congratulated by the princes his children, the empresses and princesses, who furnished upon him gold and precious stones. The European ^{*} and ambassadors were also invited to this great banquet; and partook of the diversions; for the Castles ^{*} have also their place in the feast.

* Spanish.

C H A P. XXV.

Timur holds a general diet. A great festival at the marriage of the prince's daughter.

TIMUR having long since form'd a design of conquering all Asia, cou'd not refrain from finishing what he had intended. Neglectful therefore of the delights of repose, he

* A little animal, about the size of a barley-corn, which is seen upon the surface of the sea.

* By this expression we perceive the great contempt the Tartar court had of the Spanish ambassadors.

took up a resolution to subdue the empire of China, which was inhabited by infidels. But before he would begin this great enterprize, he was willing to execute the command of the Alcoran by the marriage of his grandchildren. Hereupon he order'd a feast to be made, and sent out his circular letters to all the governors of provinces, generals of his army, and Chiefs and Nobles of his empire, to meet at a general Court, where they were to celebrate the nuptials. The princes Tazir Agien and Bachtomur Agien, who were descended from Genghiz Can, intreated Timur to summon the Mirza Pir Mehemed, who was at Gaznin, and the Mirza Charoc who was in Corassana, to this famous Couroultai: they obtain'd their request for Pir Mehemed; but as to Charoc, Timur answer'd, that it was not proper he should come, he being the main support of the kingdoms of Iran and Azerbaijan.

Cauchin was the place appointed for the marriage-feast; and the first of Rabinlevel 807, which answers to the year of the Monkey, Timur went to lodge there. This palace and the neighboring places were adorn'd with the greatest magnificence: so that this autumnation render'd, in a manner, even the spring tedious. The tents were tied with silver cords, in which were abundance of carpets wrought with gold: the curtains were of velvet of Chuchur; and the cielings of ebony and ivory exquisitely engrav'd. The emperor's apartment consisted of four great inclosures, which are call'd Seraperd, built on very regular plans; his Kherghian or imperial pavilion made two hundred tents, gilt, and adorn'd with precious stones. Each tent had twelve columns of silver inlaid with gold; the out-side was scarlet and

Book VI. seven other colors, and the inside satin of all colors. The upholsterers, of whom there was a great number, had employ'd a whole week in erecting and furnishing this magnificent apartment. The Mirzas and Emirs had also each a Seraperd, a Barghiah, tents, and a great pavilion nam'd Kherghiah. The columns of the tents were of massy silver, and the floor was cover'd with the richest carpets.

The governors of the provinces, the generals of the army, the lords and principal commanders of the empire, assembled in this place, and pitch'd their tents in good order. The people also came there from all nations, as China, Muscovy, India, Greece, Zabul, Mazendran, Persiana, Fars, Bagdad, Syria, and in short from all the Kingdoms of Asia and Europe, that is to say, from all Asia.

During these entertainments Mengheli Bougai Hageb, one of the principal lords of the court of Malek Ezzaher Barcoc, king of Egypt, arriv'd in quality of ambassador from Malek Enhafer Farridge, who had succeeded Barcoc his father. This Mengheli was endow'd with very rare qualittys, cou'd repeat the whole Alcoran by heart, was master of a great deal of eloquence, and acquainted with several sciences, which render'd him the most agreeable person in conversation. He brought abundance of uncommon presents, ready money, precious stones, rich stuffs, and nice toys. Among other rarities was a Giraffa, one of the strangest animals

* Seraperd is an inclosure; Barghiah a great hall of audience; and Kherghiah a great pavilion. The two last are inclos'd in the Seraperd.

* A long-neck'd creature about the bigness of a calf, bred in Africa, and, according to some, got by a camel upon a panther. It is call'd in Latin *Camelopardalus*.



upon the earth, and one of the largest of the
 nations of Africa.

The Mirza Galil Sultan came from Turkellan
 to this assembly, where he saluted the emperor,
 the great Emirs of State, as Baki Bai, Yachiar
 Berke, and others, who all made a very splendid
 appearance. The Mirza Pir Mehemed came
 from Khorasan, according to the orders he had re-
 ceived he paid his respects to Timur, who em-
 braced him, and by his tears testified his sorrow
 at the death of his brother the Mirza Mehe-
 med Sultan. The Mirza made his presents,
 nine of a sort; and next morning Timur gave
 him a vest woven with gold, a crown and belt;
 and vests to the officers of his household, who
 left off their mourning-habits.

Then Coja Ahmed Toulfi, receiver of the re-
 venues of Corassana, arrived, and presented the
 sums belonging to the treasury of Corassana,
 and abundance of curious toys, nine of a sort.
 The emperor was not the only person who par-
 took of the joys and diversions; for both high
 and low had their share. The most skilful ar-
 tists prepared some master-pieces of their art, as
 trophies and exhibits of flowers to represent
 triumphs, which were adorned with garlands
 made up with perfect symmetry. There were in
 the jewelers shops necklaces of pearls and precious
 stones, especially of grenadin and balas rubies,
 with an infinite number of pieces of rock-chry-
 stal, coral and agat, and several rings, bracelets
 and ear-rings, all which rendered Canighul a
 mine of gold and precious stones, instead of a
 mine of flowers, which its name implies.

An amphitheatre with four corners was built,
 called Tcharma, which was covered with pieces
 of brocade and Persian carpets. There were
 seats for both the vocal and instrumental music;
 and

Book IV. and also places for the buffoons and jesters, who with their facetious sayings excited mirth and laughter. There was likewise another Tentacle for all sorts of tradesmen; and a hundred of a different manner, fill'd with those who sold fruit, each of whom had made a kind of garden of pistachios, pomegranates, almonds, pears and apples, in great order; which perfume'd the air, and made an agreeable sight. The butchers were particularly taken notice of for the neatness of their representations: they dress'd up a sheep in a man's shape, and other skins in divers other ridiculous figures. There were speaking goats which had horns of gold, and ran after one another: they appear'd outwardly like goats, but were furnished with human limbs, and in this manner they were made to dance, sing and angels, with wings, while others took the figure of elephants and sheep.

The skinners also appear'd in masquerades, some like leopards, others like lions, and others like other animals, with whose skins they were cover'd: there were those likewise who resembled foxes, and tigers. The design of the masquerade was to represent gentils who transform'd themselves into these forest animals. The upholsterers likewise put on a smaller piece of their trade, for they made a camel of wood, reeds, cords, and painted linen, which walk'd about as if alive: and the man within it, drawing a curtain, discover'd the workman in his own piece. The manufacturers of cotton also made birds with cotton, which look'd as if they were alive: they also made a Minaret of the same material with the help of reeds, which every one imagin'd to be built with brick and mortar, and which was higher than the Minarets of the mosques; it was cover'd

yearn with needles and thimble-work, carry'd all about, and on the top was plac'd a hoop. The saddlers were not behind the rest; for they gave proofs of their skill by two litters for women, which stood at the top, and after the usual manner were laid upon a bench, in which sat two of the most beautiful women of the city, each holding a skin in her hand, and assuming the pleasurable postures as well with their hands as with their bodies, to divert the assembly. The mat-makers likewise show'd their dexterity, having very neatly work'd with reeds two lines of writing of Coust, and other large letters.

On the other side were the rope-dancers, who by their agility attracted every one's admiration; their rope at the same time seeming to touch the heavens. Thus the whole company was employ'd either as actors or spectators, all endeav'ring to contribute to the satisfaction of the emperor, and his present, the emperor's children, that is, of the Mirza Olouc-Bec and Ibrahim Sultan, sons of Charoc, Aidgel son of Miran Chah, Ahmed, Seidi, Ahmed, and Biera, all three sons of the Mirza Omar Chah.

The emperor order'd the astrologers to choose a happy moment for an affair of such importance, which being done, the first officer of the household drew the curtain of the gate. The Caim Cham, Imams and doctors of the empire, met the emperor; and having agreed on the articles of marriage, the great doctor Chah Chamfeddin Mehemmed Jazari was chosen to read 'em to the assembly. The grand Vizir of Samarcand, Mon-lana Selahheddin, receiv'd the mutual consent of the parties, which he register'd; and then,

* The ancient character of the Arabians.

according to the maxims of the Huns, he join'd the princes and princesses together in marriage: on whom every one sprinkled gold and precious stones.

The emperor being seated on his throne, order'd a banquet of the utmost magnificence to be serv'd up to the brides and the other ladies of the court, by the most beautiful young women of his seraglio, who wore crowns compos'd of flowers. The princes of the blood, Emirs, Nevins, Cherifs, and foreign ambassadors, took their place according to their rank and dignity, as well as the Emirs of Romans and Hezars. These lords were seated under a canopy of twelve columns, distant from the supper-hall about a half a mile.

The Yefsaouls, on each side, call'd Chaoux, were there backwards and forwards to perform the function of their posts, mounted in a magnificent manner upon horses of great price, with saddles of gold, adorn'd with precious stones, and habited in vests of gold brocade, with an air of authority and command.

On another side there were elephants of a prodigious size, on whose backs were plac'd a kind of thrones, with abundance of ornaments. Under the canopy with twelve columns, were plac'd earthen urns, with strings of precious stones tied about 'em, fill'd with gold and silver pots; and on the tops were cups of gold, agate, and rock-chrystat, adorn'd with pearls, and several sorts of jewels; all which were presented on salvers of gold and silver. The drink was

* The Yefsaouls carry in their hands, as a sign of their office, a silver wand.

Cammeez, Oxyval, Hippocras, brandy, wines, Chap. 10.
 Syrras, and other liquors. It is reported that
 the wood of several large forests was cut down
 to dress the victuals at this banquet. The head-
 steward with his under-officers constantly at-
 tended to give all necessary orders as to the
 serving up of the dishes, before which an officer
 always walk'd. There were tables furnish'd in
 different places thro-out the whole plain, and
 flaggons of wine set near the tables, with an
 infinite number of baskets full of fruit. Be-
 sides the flaggons for the emperor's use, and for
 the lords of the court, there were several
 jars rang'd in all the plain for the people's
 drinking: and that the joy might be uni-
 versal, the emperor order'd a proclamation
 shou'd be publish'd that all the people might en-
 joy what pleasures they pleas'd, and no one take
 cognizance of em. The crier read the procla-
 mation as follows: "This is the time of feast-
 ing, pleasure and rejoicing. Let no one com-
 plain of or reprimand another. Let not the
 rich encroach upon the poor, or the power-
 ful upon the weak. Let none ask another,
 "Why have you done thus?" After this de-
 claration every one gave himself up to those pleas-
 ures he was most fond of, during the feast:
 and whatever was done pass'd unobserv'd.

At length the feast was finish'd: after which,
 according to custom, a vast quantity of curious
 moveable goods was laid upon mules and camels
 for the new-marry'd princes; among which
 were all sorts of rich habits, crowns, and belts

¹ Cammeez is a drink us'd among the Tatars. The way
 of making it is mention'd in the history of Georgia, vol.
 book 5. chap. 10.

Book VI. set with precious stones. The mules had coverings of satin embroider'd with gold; their little bells were gold, as well as those belonging to the camels: and both were handsomely adorn'd. This pompous equipage pass'd before the people, who were struck with admiration. The bridegrooms with their brides were cloth'd nine times in different habits, with crowns and belts set with precious stones; and each time they chang'd their clothes, they paid their respects as usual, while gold and precious stones, pearls, rubys, and balafs rubys, were sprinkled upon 'em in great numbers, with which the ground was cover'd, and which became the domestics profit.

The following night there were many where illuminations with lanterns, torches, and lamps: and the new-marry'd princes enter'd the nuptial chamber. The next day Timur did 'em the honor to pay 'em a visit at their own apartments, being accompany'd by the empresses, and great Emirs and Cherifs of his court. The rejoicings were so great thro-out the whole empire, that from Canighul as far as Tous in Corassana, there was not one place, where the sound of drums and trumpets was not heard.

The ambassadors of Egypt, Spain, India, and Decht Capehac, Gete, and others, were witnesses of this magnificence, and particularly of the pleasures of the feast, which lasted two entire months. Timur distinguish'd 'em by particular favors, and gave vests to them, as well as to the Cherifs and other great lords, who were assembled from all parts of the empire; he did the same to the generals, the governors of the provinces, and all the officers.

After the marriage-feasts were over, Timur again betook himself to the administration of public

public affairs, ordering every one to return to his proper employment. The licence which had been granted during the feast was recal'd; and for the future no one was allow'd to drink wine, or commit any thing unlawful. Afterwards Timur retir'd to his chamber, to address himself to God by the following prayer.

" O Almighty-being, who art above whatever
 " can be conceive, and whose silence is un-
 " known to any but thy-self, being all in all;
 " how can I recite thy praises, and how return
 " thanks in proportion to the favors I have re-
 " ceiv'd, since they are infinite? Out of no-
 " thing hast thou created me; from poverty
 " hast thou made me rich; and from a petty
 " prince hast thou render'd me the most mighty
 " emperor of the universe. To thy great bound-
 " ty I owe the gaining of so many battels, and
 " the conquest of so many kingdoms: for what
 " am I, a poor and vile creature? I shou'd be
 " incapable of every thing, were I not assisted
 " by thy grace. In peace thou favor'st me with
 " quiet and joy; and in war thou givest me
 " victory, and maintainest me in sovereign au-
 " thority, fear'd by my enemies, and lov'd by
 " my subjects. Continue then, O thou great
 " Creator, thy goodness towards me: since
 " thou hast chosen me in thy clemency, don't
 " cast me away in thy wrath. I know that I
 " am but dust; and that if thou dost not favor
 " me with thy protection, all my glory and
 " grandeur will be turn'd into silence and dis-
 " honor. O Lord, put me not to shame be-
 " cause of my vices, who have been so long
 " custom'd to partake of thy favors: and
 " then I shall rest contented."

C H A P. XXVI.

The causes which incited Timur to undertake the conquest of the kingdom of China.

IN the beginning of Timur's rise Asia was in the possession of usurpers, who had rais'd themselves to sovereignty, either by the extinction of the race of former kings and emperors, or by intrigues and revolts: but as the world cou'd not be peaceably govern'd by so many sovereigns, there were continual wars amongst 'em, and the poor people were drove into great extremitys. Virtue and tranquillity were banish'd the places which robbers only possess'd; security was no longer to be met with on the high-ways, which were full of thieves; and in fine, every thing was in confusion and disorder. The world might then be well compar'd to a human body, which being infected with some corrupt matter, necessarily falls sick, and can receive no benefit but from a strong medicine, which purges out the cause of the disease; and yet this purgation can't be undergone without some inconveniences, which may arise from a deprav'd appetite. In the same manner, God, who was pleas'd to purge the world, made use of a medicine, which was both sweet and bitter, to wit, the clemency and the wrath of the incomparable Timur; and to that effect, inspir'd in him an ambition to conquer all Asia, and to expel the several tyrants thereof. He establish'd peace and security in this part of the world; so that a single man might carry a silver-bason fill'd with gold from the east of Asia

Asia to the west. But yet he could not accomplish this great affair, without bringing in some measure upon the places he conquer'd, destruction, captivity, and plunder, which are the concomitants of victory.

After this hero was happily return'd from the conquests of Syria, Natolia and Georgia, and of consequence found himself absolute master of all the empires of Iran and Touran, he generously took up a resolution to make preparations for the conquest of China, which was inhabited by infidels; that by this good work he might rectify what had been amiss in another war, wherein the blood of so many of the faithful had been spilt. Thus, after the marriage of the princes his grandchildren was consummated, he summon'd the Mirzas his children, and the great Emirs of his council to court, to whom he made the following speech.

“God hath favor'd us with such extraordinary good fortune, that we have conquer'd Asia, and overthrown the greatest kings of the earth; few sovereigns in past ages having acquir'd so great dominions, or attain'd so great authority, or had such numerous armies, or so absolute a command. And as these vast conquests have not been obtain'd without some violence, which has caus'd the destruction of a great number of God's creatures, I have resolv'd to perform some good action, which may atone for the crimes of my past life, and to accomplish that which all the world besides is not capable of, that is, to make war on the infidels, and exterminate the idolaters of China; which can't be done without very great strength and power. It is therefore fitting, my dear companions, that those very troops which have been the instru-

Book III. "ments whereby those faults were committed,
 " shou'd also be the instruments of repentance ;
 " and that they march into China, to acquire
 " the merit of that holy war, in demolishing
 " the temples of the idols of the fire, and erect-
 " ing in their places mosques and chappels.
 " By this means we shall obtain the pardon of
 " our sins, as the Alcoran assures us, saying
 " that good works efface the sins of this world."

Timur having finish'd this speech, the princes
 of the blood and Emirs besought God to bless
 his good intentions, unanimously applauding
 his sentiments, and loading him with praises :
 " Let the emperor, say they, display his stan-
 " dard ; and we his slaves will follow him, and
 " sacrifice ourselves in his service."

Then orders were given to the Tavachis to
 take an exact number of all the soldiers by
 thousands, and to augment and enroll the regi-
 ments. Timur commanded all the Emirs of
 Oulous *, and the governors of provinces, to
 assemble their soldiers : they took coppers of the
 Toulcal † from the great Tavachis, that they
 might know in what order and with what arms
 they shou'd come ; and they departed, to get
 together their troops in all the provinces.

Timur then went from Camghul, and en-
 ter'd the city of Samarcand, where he lodg'd
 in the college of Serai Mule Canum. He gave
 the Mirza Pir Mehemed a crown, belt and horse,
 and permitted him to return to Zabul ; he also
 gave to each of his domestics a horse and a suite

* The Emirs of Oulous are the natural lords of the Tartar
 hords, who are inferior to the governors of provinces.

† The order for the war.

of alghen: he order'd the Mirza Sidi Ahmed *, Chapas. son of Omar Cheik, to accompany him. And they took the road to Candahar.

The emperor did particular honors, and gave robes and belts to the ambassador of Egypt, who obtain'd leave to return home: he order'd Moulana Abdalla Kechi to accompany him, whom he sent with a convoy in embassy to the Sultan of Egypt, for whom he gave him a letter seventy cubits long, and three in breadth, wrote in letters of gold by Moulana Cheik Mehemed, son of the doctor Hadgi Bendeghir Tebrizi, who won'd not yield to his father as to the beauty of his style and the art of writing finely. The substance of this letter was an answer to what the Sultan of Egypt had writ with regard to the Sultan Ahmed and Cara Yousef. He sent with this letter several curious presents worthy of the greatest princes.

Timur likewise granted particular honors and favors to the ambassadors of Europe *, Decht Capchac, Gete and other parts, and permitted 'em to return home. He likewise dismiss'd the princess Melket Aga, who had assist'd at the feast, and afterwards return'd to the Mirza Charoc at Herat. He sent to Hamadan the princess Beghifi Sultan his daughter, to the Mirza Estaher her husband: and she pass'd by Bocara and Balkan.

* I believe this Sidi Ahmed was the father of Baber Mirza, whose descendents reign in India at this present, under the title of the great Moguls.

* The Spanish ambassadors, whom we have mention'd in the preface, were dismiss'd at the same time as those of Egypt were, without obtaining an audience of leave of Timur, who was reported to have been very sick; on which account, in the Spanish relation it is said thro mistake that he was dead.

Book VI.

Timur gave the Mirza Olouc Bec the government of the towns of Tachkunt, Seïram, Yenghi, Achira, and all the kingdom of Gere as far as China; and to the Mirza Ibrahim Sultan that of Andecan, Acfiket, Taraz and Cachgar, as far as Cotan; which he confirm'd by letters-patent seal'd with his red hand. Among the Emirs of the Mirza Pir-Mehemed, Tagi Bouga and three others set out to assemble the troops of those provinces, and bring 'em to Tachkunt, which was the general rendezvous of the army. Temour Coja Acbouga was banish'd to Affigheul in Mogolistan, for a fault he had committed.

Timur went from the college of Serai Mule Canum to Arec*, and lodg'd at Ghous Serai, a palace he had built.

C H A P. XXVII.

Timur sets out for the war against the infidels of China.

THE Alcoran remarks, that if any one in his pilgrimage to Meccâ should be surpriz'd by death, the merit of this good work is written in heaven in his name, as surely as if he had had the good fortune to execute it: it is the same in relation to the Gazie, where with troubles and fatigues mix'd with dangers an eternal me-

* Arec is the inclosure of the antient royal palace of Samarcand.

rit is requir'd; and he who dies during the expedition is deem'd to have executed his design. He was fitting that so great a hero as Timur shou'd die in the bed of honor, and that this inevitable accident shou'd happen during a journey he undertook for God's glory, and to acquire the rewards the Alcoran promises to the Gazie, that is, the war against the infidels. And as the death of this great man was nearly approaching, when he took up a resolution to march into China, God permitted that neither the season, nor the countrys he must pass thro, which were always cover'd with snow and frost, shou'd be able to divert him from his resolution, or oblige him to retard his departure till the spring.

He gave orders to the Emir Berendac to review the troops, and bring him an account how many men there were in the army he design'd to carry into China. This Emir reported, that the troops of Transoxiana, Turkestan, Balch, Bedakchan, Corassana, Sistan, Mazendran, the Caratatars brought from Natolia, the colonys from Persia, Azerbijana and Irac, amounted to two hundred thousand men compleat, capable of undertaking the greatest enterprizes. Timur, very much pleas'd at the good state of his troops, distributed his treasure among 'em, and commanded 'em to begin their march.

The Mirzas Calil Sultan and Ahmed Omar Cheik, accompany'd by the Emirs Codadad Hussein, Chamseddin Abbas, and other generals of Tamas and Hezares of the right wing, were order'd to pass the winter with their troops at Tachkunt, Chahroukhia, and Sciram; and the Mirza Sultan Hussein was to take up his winter-quarters with some troops of the left wing at Yassi and Sabran. Chahroukhia, which was formerly nam'd Fenakunt, was so ruin'd by Gen-

Book VI ghiz Can's army, that there remain'd no foot-
 steps of any edifices till the year of the Mosky,
An. Dom. which answers to the year of the Hegira 794.
 1392. when Timur order'd his lieutenants to rebuild
 and repeople it: and as Timur then gave it to
 the Mirza Charoc, it was call'd from his name
 Chahroukhia.

Jan. 8.
 1405.

The emperor having entrusted the government
 of Samarcand to Argoun Chah, and the care of
 his treasures to the Cheik Tchoura, order'd the
 great standard to be display'd; and he departed
 from Samarcand the 23^d of Jumaziulevel 807,
 the sun being in the middle of Aquarius, in a
 sextile aspect with Jupiter; and the moon being
 in Libra, in a sextile aspect with the sun, and
 in a trine aspect with Jupiter. He laid hold on
 the happy moment, which the astrologers had
 fix'd for his departure, and took the road to As-
 foulat. He went directly to Caraboulac in Sog-
 diana.

Then the standard departed from Caraboulac,
 and took the road to Ilanoti; and after several
 days arriv'd at Tambic, where great rains and
 snows fell, the wind blew excessively, and the
 cold was extremely violent: yet this did not
 hinder Timur's departure and arrival at As-
 foulat. And as this place was full of sands, and
 there was abundance of small wood for burning,
 orders had been given before to build cottages
 of reeds, and some houses fit to lodge in. The
 emperor being repos'd in his apartment, the
 Mirzas and soldiers encamp'd each in their re-
 spective posts. The sun was then enter'd into
 Pisces, the cold daily increas'd, and the winter
 was more violent than usual.

C H A P. XXVIII.

An account of certain adventures, the knowledge of which is necessary to the understanding the latter part of this history. A relation of what pass'd at Acsoular.

LOVE is often the cause of many disorders. The Mirza Calil Sultan, after having got with child the princess Dgehan Sulran, daughter of the Mirza Ali, Timur's sister's son, became desperately in love with one of the concubines of the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin, nam'd Chadi Mulc. This passion got so great an ascendancy in his soul, that he cou'd not rest till he had marry'd her, which was during Timur's absence; of which the princess his wife being inform'd, so great a jealousy kindled in her heart, that she discover'd the case to the emperor at Samarcand. Orders were immediately given out for Chadi Mulc to make her appearance: but the Mirza conceal'd her, which so provok'd Timur, that he order'd diligent search to be made after her; and being found, she was condemn'd to die, and wou'd have suffer'd immediately, if the Mirza Pir Mehemed Gehangbir had not beg'd for a reprieve. Nevertheless advice was given the emperor at Acsoular, that the Mirza Calil Sultan had again conceal'd her in his apartment: whereupon the Emir Berar had orders to go and seize her, and bring her away; which being done, Timur in a great passion commanded her to be put to death. The empress Serai Mulc Canum cou'd not bear to see

Book VI. the deep anxiety and despair the poor Mirza fell into: but considering moreover the great love Timur bore to the princes his children, she endeavour'd to accommodate this difference, by the help of the Emirs Cheik Nouredin and Chamelic; and persuaded 'em to inform the emperor, that this lady was with child by the Mirza. On this account the order was revers'd, and the princess entrusted to the care of the empress Bouyañ Aga, that after her lying-in she might bring up the child, and commit the lady to some of her black slaves.

The emperor being at Acsoular, order'd the Mirzas his sons, the commanders of kingdoms, the governors of provinces, the Derogas of cities, and other grand officers and lords of his empire, to write to their lieutenants, to advise 'em to take great care during the expedition into China that the laws be duly executed, and justice dispens'd every where, so that the people might enjoy quiet and security; that they shou'd not give heed to the disturbers of the public tranquillity, as knowing it was their duty to treat the people well, since they were entrusted to 'em by the Creator; that they behave themselves in such a manner, that when an account shall be demanded of their conduct, they may have no cause to repent, nor be the reason of Timur's blushing for shame before the throne of God, at the day of judgment. This order was carefully executed, and sent into all the provinces by men of probity.

The black slaves are eunuchs, and the ordinary guardians of the Mahometan ladys. The reason of Timur's putting this lady into their hands, was to hinder the Mirza Calil Sultan's having any future commerce with her.

Then

Then the Mirza Calil Sultan went to Tachkunt, according to the orders he had receiv'd; and the Mirza Sultan Hussein to Tassi and Sabran. There was nothing to be seen any where but carriages and waggon, which were brought from all the provinces, and fill'd with all sorts of ammunition; and an infinite number of horses brought from all parts to be sold, which the emperor bought, and distributed among the Mirzas, Emirs and soldiers. Then the Seid Coja, son of the Cheik Ali Behader, came from Corassana from the Mirza Charoc, with advice of the good health of that prince.

The emperor sent the Emir Berendac to Tachkunt, to bring away the provisions: and he publish'd an order for all the generals and great officers to keep an exact account of the state of their Tomans, Hezares and Sedes; that in this long expedition no one might be oblig'd to stay behind for want of either provision or arms. This order had so good an effect, that in this numerous army each horseman had enough to suffice ten men, as well in victuals as in arms. Besides this, several thousand loads of corn were carry'd in the waggon which follow'd the army, to sow the fields on their road, that at their return they might not have a scarcity. Several thousands of she-camels were also carry'd; that on a pressing occasion their milk might serve for nourishment to the soldiers. These precautions were necessary to an army, so numerous as not to be match'd in antiquity. Those who had seen the immense riches at the feast of Canighul, were struck with admiration; and men of the best sense reflected upon the Arabian saying, *That when a man has arriv'd at the highest degree of prosperity, he is upon the point of abasement.* Most persons said, even in public,

Book VI. after having seen the prodigious grandeur and magnificence which appear'd in the pleasures of Canighul, and the fine appearance which this innumerable army made, with the vast quantity of arms and baggage which were in the imperial camp, that they no longer doubted the prosperity of Timur being arriv'd at its utmost perfection, and consequently fear'd with reason the diminution of his good fortune. People began to mistrust some disgrace wou'd befall 'em; and their hearts fluctuating between hope and fear, they daily besought God to preserve the emperor from the misfortunes which attend the greatest prosperity, and to turn the evil and destructive eyes * from off this reign, which they hop'd wou'd endure a great while longer.

* See
book IV.
chap. 32.

C H A P. XXIX.

Timur departs from Acsoulas.

THE sun was yet in Capricorn, and the violence of the cold so great, that several men and horses perish'd in the road, some losing their hands and feet, others their ears and noses: the snows and rains were continually falling, the whole face of the heavens seeming to be cover'd but by one cloud, and the whole earth by one piece of snow. Astronomers remark, that at this time there was a conjunction of the three superior planets in Aquarius; which was a presage of some great misfortune. Yet the desire of acquiring the merit of the Gazie prevail'd in the mind of our conqueror above the greatest difficultys: he wou'd not wait till the cold abated, but inform'd himself of the nature and cir-

Chap. 20.
W

circumstances of the roads, of the water, passages, deserts and mountains, which he order'd to be taken down in writing, that all necessary precautions might be us'd.

Then Timur set out from Acsoulat; and sent fresh orders to the Mirzas Cahl-Sultan and Ahmed, accompany'd by the Emirs Codaded Hussein, Yedghiar, Chah Erlat, Chamseddin Abbas, Berendac, and eight others, who were in winter quarters with their troops about Tachkent, Chahroukhia, and Seiram; as also to the Mirza Sultan Hussein, who was with his about Yaffi and Sabran in Capchaq, not to fail of leaving their winter-quarters at the beginning of spring, in order to join the court.

Timur having march'd two days and one night, went to Ouzoun-Ata to encamp, then to Yoscadgiai Cheik, from thence to Sourkens, and afterwards to Comarcha Ata, to Sultan Cheik, and at length to the town of Zernouc, from whence he departed, and crossing the Sihon upon the ice, encamp'd on the other bank. This river was froze so hard this year, that they were oblig'd to dig two or three cubits to get water; and from the sun's entering Sagittarius to his coming out of Pisees, waggons, men and beasts, cou'd pass either the Gihon or Sihon in any part of 'em.

Timur having decamp'd from the banks of the Sihon, arriv'd at Otrar on wednesday the 12th of Regeb 807, and lodg'd in the palace of Birdi Bei, where all the princes and lords had likewise each their respective apartments. The day of the emperor's arrival, one corner of the roof of the palace, where he was lodg'd, set fire, by the tunnel of a chimney running by it; but the fire was soon extinguish'd. This accident disquieted the lords of the court, inasmuch
as

Vol. 17.
1409.

Book VI. as most of 'em had had frightful dreams which prognosticated some misfortune; and it seem'd as if nature had given the people an insight into what shou'd happen to their prince. But fate is inevitable.

Timur sent Moulla Recmat to discover whether there was any passage over the bridge, who carefully examin'd the whole, and brought answer that it was impossible to cross it. Another, who had been sent towards Seiram and the mountain of Coulan, on his return declar'd that the snow of this mountain was two pikes high.

Then Cara Coja, an ancient domestic of Tocatmich Can, heretofore emperor of Capchac, arriv'd at court in quality of ambassador from that prince, who had a long time wander'd about as a vagabond in the desert of Capchac. Timur being pleas'd to grant him a magnificent audience, enter'd in state into the Divan Cané, and ascended his throne; the princes Taizi Aglen, of the race of Octai Caan^s, Bachtemour Aglen, and Gicra Aglen, of the race of Touchi Can, sitting on his right hand, and the Mirzas Olouc-Bec, Ibrahim Sultan, and Aidgel on the left. The ambassador was conducted to the audience by the Emirs Birdi-Bei and Noureddin two brothers, Chamelic and Coja Foufey; and having prostrated himself, had the honor to kiss the imperial carpet: he made an harangue from his master in these words. "I have," says he, suffer'd the punishment my ingratitude merited: the slight acknowledgment I have made for so many favors receiv'd of your highness, hath drawn upon me the miseries I find my self reduc'd to. I have no other

^s Caan signifies Can of Cans.

“rather than the hopes of pardon from your
“sovereign: and if I can be assur’d you’ll forget
“your servant’s faults, I will discover a grateful
“sense of the favor by a constant submission to
“your imperial orders.”

Timur, according to his wonted goodness,
treated this ambassador with civility, and even
assur’d him that at his return from the war of
China, he wou’d again conquer the kingdom of
Touchr Can, which he had a design to put into
the hands of Tocátmich Can his master. After
these civil treatments he dismiss’d the ambaf-
sador Cara Coja, sending by him a present to
Tocátmich. And Timur’s intention being to
depart forthwith from Otrar to continue his
expedition into China, he design’d to send back
the empresses and the young princes his children,
who out of ceremony were come thither to wait
upon him. But fate had otherwise order’d it.

C H A P. XXX.

Timur’s death at Otrar.

THE Alcoran remarks, that God created
the world for the sake of man, but man
for his own service. By this we see that the
dignity of the human soul is too great to re-
main for ever in this material body; and that
so pure and excellent a being can’t find satisfac-
tion but in the enjoyment of him who crea-
ted it, and gave it immortality.

Timur, after the campaign of seven years, in
which he had conquer’d almost all Asia, turn’d
the whole of his ambition towards the establish-
ing of justice in the world, informing himself of
the

Book VI. the state of his subjects, and redressing all evils: if they were oppress'd by tyrants, he did 'em justice; and if in poverty, he enrich'd 'em by his favors; and by this means render'd the world flourishing, and rejoic'd the people's hearts. As soon as he was return'd to the seat of his empire, without reposing himself from his fatigues any longer than five months, he form'd a design to make war on the idolaters of China, hoping by that to obtain pardon of God for his former crimes: and having set out for that expedition, he came to Otrar, seventy six leagues or parafangas distant from Samarcand.

March 25. 1405. On wednesday the 10th of Chaban 807, Timur was attack'd with a burning fever, and he should be heard the Houris say to him, Repent, for you must appear before God. On this, he became sincerely penitent for his crimes, and resolv'd to make satisfaction for 'em by good works. His sickness increasing, he found himself very much weaken'd, having no rest: affliction seiz'd the heart of all the court, which appear'd the greater as the distemper augmented. Then neither empire, nor armys, nor riches, nor crowns stood him in any stead.

And tho Moulana Fadlalla Tebrizi, one of the most skilful physicians of the age, employ'd all his care in prescribing the most excellent remedies, yet the sickness became more violent. Physic is useless when fate has ordain'd the death of any one. All hopes of the emperor's health were lost; his physicians having given him over. But tho his body was weaken'd, yet his mind continu'd sound; and notwithstand-

* The Houris are continual virgins, who the Mahometans believe are appointed for their pleasures in their proper paradise.

ing his violent griefs, he was always informing Ghengis Khan of the condition of his army. When he found his sickness so strong, that all remedies proved ineffectual, he resolv'd courageously to face death; and calling the empress and principal Emirs into his presence, he made the following testament.

"I am satisfy'd that my soul is about to leave my body, and that my asylum is at the throne of God, who gives and takes away life at his pleasure. I beseech you to utter neither crys nor groans at my death; and instead of rending your garments, and running to and fro like madmen, pray to God to have mercy on me; say Allah Ecber *, and the Fatiha †, that my soul may find comfort. Since God has so highly favor'd me as to enable me to give laws to the earth, whereby as present thro all the kingdoms of Iran and Taurus no one dare encroach upon his neighbor, nor the great oppress the poor, I have hopes that he will pardon my sins, tho they are without number. I have this consolation, that during my reign I have not permitted the strong to injure the weak. Tho I am not ignorant of the instability of the world, yet I do not advise you to leave off caring for the affairs thereof; since that will cause disorders among men, banish safety from the highways, and be an obstacle to the people's quiet: and it is certain that at the day of judgment an account will be demanded of those, to whom the care of these things have been intrusted.

* God is the most great.

† The first chapter of the Alcoran, which the Mahometans recite, as Christians do the Lord's prayer.

The History of Timur-Bec.

Timur-Bec
declared
Timur's
successor.

"I declare my son Pir Mehemed Gehanghir
my universal heir, and lawful successor to
the empire. He must possess the throne of
Samarcand with an absolute and independent
sovereignty, that he may carefully manage
both the religious and civil affairs, and take
care of the necessities of the army, and of
the citys and countrys subject to my jurisdic-
tion. I command you all to obey him, and
unanimously to sacrifice your lives in main-
taining his authority; that the world may not
fall into disorder, and that my labor for so
many years may not be lost. If you agree
together, no one will dare to oppose you, or
offer the least obstacle against the execution of
my last will."

Timur then ordered all the Emirs and great
lords of the court, and the generals of the ar-
my, to come before him, whom he strictly en-
join'd to see to the execution of his testament;
and made 'em promise in his presence with so-
lemn oaths not to consent that any one shou'd
oppose it: and he sent orders to all the Emirs and
generals who were absent to take the same
oaths.

The lords having heard this discourse, were
in the utmost consternation, melted into tears,
and fell with their faces to the ground. The
Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Ghamelic, whose
hearts were seiz'd with grief and despair, said to
Timur, "We cou'd sacrifice our lives with a
great deal of pleasure to purchase one single
day more for our gracious master. If our
death wou'd be of service to you, our lives
shou'd cost us nothing: but it is impossible to
alter the decrees of providence. We are your
slaves; and tho being depriv'd of your pro-
sence we have no longer any joy or content-
ment."

Bec.

IV
chap 10

...long as we live, we
...obedient to you, or
...our lives. May heaven never send us into
...if we have the least thought of doing
...any thing contrary to the will of our benefactor.
...We shall not walk in the long paths of
...your death as during your life.
...they were thus speaking, tears gushed
...their eyes, their minds no longer enjoy'd
...any doubt, and their bodies lost all their natural
...they told the emperor that if he
...would write to the Mirza, calling
...him to court, that having the honor to see
...his master's face once more, they might learn
...from his own mouth his last will.

...they would do this, as soon as
...the same force on our
...had heard it themselves. But the
...that his hour was approaching,
...were silent. The
...able for so long a time in the way of
...will have
...to see the Mirza, and one more
...able. God will not have it so.

...who were in the anti-
...of his dilemma,
...and fell upon
...Timur, saying
...his father, spoke to him

"Remember, in every thing I have recom-
"mended to you in relation to the public tran-
"quillity; and be constantly informing your-
"selves
"o. 1. II. B b

felices of the affairs of your subjects. Be va-
 liant, and courageously keep possession of your
 fwards, that like me you may enjoy a long
 reign and a vast empire. I have purged the
 countries of Iran and Touran from the enemies
 and disturbers of the people's quiet, and have
 render'd em flourishing by my justice. You
 do what we have just directed, and make hap-
 py and useful the rule of your actions, the
 kingdom will remain a long time in your
 hands, but it should creep in among you,
 all fortune will attend your undertakings,
 as your enemies will have wars and losses,
 which it will be difficult to put a stop to.
 You shall see the mischief will arise from
 the hands of the infidels.

and tho there were several persons without
 the door of the chamber, who reach'd
 from one end to the other, yet Timur
 desired to have the doctor Moulana Hebr-
 alah of Boukhara Obaid, to read the
 Koran to his bed's head, and once a day
 to say the name of God. At night, after
 evening prayer and bed-time, Timur
 desired that Moulana Hebr alah should
 read to him the promise of Paradise, which
 the words are, There is no other god
 but God, shall assuredly enter into paradise.
 He gave up his soul to the angel Israfiel
 call'd him in these words: "O soul, that
 hopell in God, return to thy Lord with
 signation. We belong to God, and must
 turn to him."

There is no other god than God.

April 1.
#405.

The first group arrived at the residence of the high school principal, William J. ... and were in the ... of ... the ... relations ... the ... in the ... of ... several ... on ... death ... other ... that ... years ... grand ...

Question of what happen'd after Timur's death

... upon his friends and
one was jealous of disorder, and
in the last chapter but the last
... ..

CASEY



100

1990

—

Eb-2

1000-

thunder, storms and tempests did not cease in the night.

Next morning the grandees of the court ended their lamentations, to perform the emperor's funeral obsequies. The doctors, the high chair Carpenter and Maulana Cotobeddin had the care of the ceremony. They offered the prayers and verses of the alcoran, upon which their duty was to be read. Then the box was raised, and surrounded with cushions, and red water being wrapt up in it, was laid in a coffin of ebony, after having commended his soul to God.

When they had finish'd the great funeral obsequies, the

Chieftain Nourreddin, several others, solemnly swore they would associate together, and use their utmost endeavors, even to the hazard of their lives, to fulfil Timur's testament, executed. And as a sign of the war in China, was the year when they kept Timur's death, collected the ladies, changing their habits, or showing exterior signs of grief, they the have protest advice of him in mind.

Afterwards they went up and held a council with him, and be done at his sent advice of the emperor to the Mirza lii Sultan, and the Emir who were at Tashkent. They dispatch'd expresses to Yaffa, and to the Mirza Sultan Hussein, to advise that the emperor's sickness, and that he should come up court with his family. They sent Kezer, Cotobedin to Garin, and to the Mirza Pir Mohamed, to inform him of Timur's death, and

-BUC

[illegible]

C-H-B-E-D-00000

...the bulk of the river from Over to the ice

BB 3

217

The Seattle Post-Intelligencer **Early News & Construction**
the way of Change

...having a little moderated the
universal grief, the Emirs took this op-
portunity to give the following con-

...in an army which was not
...by any in part...
...or in times of...

24

100-443887-100

\$5. impressions in creation, and confiding in God

carry our arms into China, in that we may employ all our strength in conducting this religious war with vigor. The emperor had resolved to march with the soldiers of China, in order to procure peace to the Mussulmans. And after we shall have consulted our consciences in this point, we will display the victorious standard, and return to Samarcand, where we will employ all our joint endeavors for the well-governing of the empire. Thus the grace of God, there are more than thirty kings or sons of kings whom our father has left for his descendants to the empire, one of whom must necessarily inherit it. And should it not be most behooving that we should take care of it?

And gone to many days march, and gone to many days design to make war on the infidels, should return without having executed any thing of consequence?

The princes, empresses, and great ladies, joining these things on their minds, were resolved. That the Emirs with them should march under the command of the Turkish Sultan, whom Timur had chosen, and send him in the expedition into China, that they should join the Khan of Tachkent, to whom the Khan of Samarcand should assign the command of the army, assigning the eldest of the Timurids, that said Sultan should bear the armor thro' out the whole campaign, great Emirs of the council should manage the affairs of state under him, and lastly, that they should march in order, from whence, after having idolaters, ruined the towns, burnt the

... Dec.

100

... the spot, ... return to ... where the ... and ... to execute ...

A. P. XXVII

... court ...

... resolution being taken, the ... took the ... and ... where they arrive on ... the 22d of Chaban 807, and ... with the usual solemnity.

April 140

... by his testament ... the ... his function in the ...

... at ...

... children more than ... other,

... other,

The History of Timur Beg

because he was the son of Chaghatay
beg, a son, to whom the empire of the
succession belongs according to the
can law. We may also say, that
fortune has always attended him, and that
the misfortune may be less than
countenance that he is of a pure family,
vers himself of good nature, has a
great and noble mind, and
his justice, that
elementary towards the people are
known to be known, and we ought
that this great prince, who
splendor to the throne, great
from the great and
universal
that the approaching inheritance
prince may take away from ill-designing pe
sons all means of sowing division, or pr
ring mischief.
This alliance being ended, that
Sera, Mulla, Gannu, Fakh, Gannu, the
Aga, and the other lords, departed
Miras, Qasr, and others, to
mended to the to the
especially when they
constantly to the
Sera. This
mutual affection
At the in the morning of the day
Mirza Ibrahim Sultan, and the
took horse at the head of the army
to march into China, to execute his
intentions in a Gazie against the
Timur's imperial standard, his
kettledrums, with the ensigns of his

were

CHAP. XXV.

The Most Noble Emperor Nero, Emperor of the East.

NOTHING is more certain, than that the Emperor Nero, who is now dead, by his wisdom and his power, had not relied on the design of China, on which anciently the purpose were rendered.

than that he had conceal'd in his breast so long, and which he had discover'd in the war at Damascus where thro an unheard-of cowardice he abandon'd our party, when the Syrian army fall'd out of the city to attack us; the desertion of this day, he kindled in his breast occasion, and excited by a deprav'd ambition, he disbanded part of the troops left wing, and taking from them pass'd the Sillon at Coprate men, each having took the road to Sa.

that place by a stratagem, that they set him to enter the city. At no great day the council, who had carry'd him return'd with this news, every man surpris'd, and thought of taking the measures for preventing his ambitious.

CHINA

The Department of State has received information from the Chinese government that the Chinese government has decided to disband the troops he has raised and with a thousand horsemen, he has taken...

...the Chinese government has decided to disband the troops he has raised and with a thousand horsemen, he has taken...

...he has taken...

They were...

the Chinese government were at Peking...

he days hurry in the caravan, to let 'em know
of the evil design of the Sultan Hussein, who
had broke their measures in relation to the war
with China; that it was proper for the Emper
at Tashkent to return with their regiments to
Acir, which was a famous meadowland, in
which place, the Emper
should stay, and make known to him
the Emper's intention, which had been order'd at the
court of Acir, and which they had sworn to
wards they would endeavour

to carry these affairs together in the most
weir to be held.

When the couriers were for the

and took the road to Samarcand.
Badr-Bai staid in his government of Ottrar, and
at the revolt of the Sultan Hussein had occasi
on to his condemnation, the whole army march'd
towards Samarcand, in

the Simon, where
three camels laden with

They march'd all night

the Emper found the empire

and there hap

was that the

and even the

had had advice before the

he set out from Ottrar,

Hussein had dispers'd his troops

the road to Samarcand with

that at the reception of this

war caus'd by Timur's death was much

creas'd, and that imagining they had a

measure remedy it, the Mirza Adnan

1. Enriquez, Hiram
 2. Enriquez, Hiram

[illegible]

1944-1945

1. The first step in the process is to identify the problem or issue that needs to be addressed. This involves gathering information and understanding the context of the situation.

**Wanted to
know how
and place
order**

that if any one had
you have them, you
can make all your money
these kinds of things

to commit to [redacted] each

The History of Tamerlane.

then in consequence, which in the end must produce repentance and misery on your lives. Your manner of acting has doubtless been changed as the vessels of ambition; how comes it then that you have wounded your feelings towards your fellow-creatures? You have violated your oath of fidelity to your king, which you ought never to have done. You have also done wrong to many innocent people, and have caused the death of many of your subjects. Don't you consider

which will be the result of this? Can you expect to live long after this? What is the value of a long life if it is spent in such a manner?

have so often and so generously sacrificed to the greatest dangers? What is most surprising is that your consciences must approve you at the same time that we do. You are a man of the same kind of heart as I am, and you have the same quality of a great understanding and experience, dare to commit to me the same task that you have done. I have done it, and I have done it to the honor of my king.

in reflection, and I have done it to the honor of my king. I have done it to the honor of my king, and I have done it to the honor of my king.

for if I had not done it, I should have been a traitor to my king, and I should have been a traitor to my king.

and I have done it to the honor of my king, and I have done it to the honor of my king.

CHAP. XXXIV

The Emir Berenduk arrives at the camp with an answer to the letter of the viziers, who were at Tachkent with the Emir of Samarkand.

H. H. Mirza, empresses and Emirs being present, the Amir, the Emir Berenduk, and the Emir Chah, arrived from Tachkent, and after their entrance, paid his respects to the Amir, and afterwards took his place in the council-hall with the Emirs Chah, Nouredin and Chahar, where he delivered the following letter written by the Emir of Samarkand, and Chahar, and Chahar.

We have taken an oath to obey the Mirza of Samarkand, for the good of both nations, and to maintain the direction of the empire in our master's family. The misfortune which has happened appeared so terrible to us, that we feared a great respect would be lost, which it would have been impossible to remedy. All we have done was to send our sincere intention, and to send our troops, that no one might be able to prevent for anything, which would have brought the state into confusion and disorder. We therefore thought you would have been the same intention with us. But since our proceedings do not agree with the will of our master, we receive his orders with respect and sincerity; and God knows

we therein in any way transgressed on. We shall be always ready to do in whatever we judge proper to do as to the execution of the emperor's testament."

The Emirs Chelk Nouredin and Chelk having read this letter, which was conformable to what the Emir Berendae had declar'd, told him they could by no means consent to any thing which was in contradiction to Timur's will, and that they would never acknowledge the Emir Calil Sultan. "If we disobey our emperor's orders," say they, "and acknowledge him for his successor, then when he shall come, we shall deserve to be loaded with torments and shame, and to be for ever disgraced." "We shall therefore adhere to the emperor's affairs, and shall not do anything which a man may judge."

Then the Emirs wrote a second letter to them at Tachkent, whom they invited to submit entirely to the will, and annul the oath they taken this inadvertency; as likewise to consider the obligations they were under of honor, and not have cause to blush before the day of judgment. "This action," they will look ill, both in the sight of God and man, and be an eternal blot, which you will never be able to wipe off."

This second letter was deliver'd by him the Emir Berendae, to whom they spoke as follows: "You have committed a great sin, which you ought to repair, by vacating the oath you have so wrongfully taken, and following our master's orders, which we are all oblig'd to obey. Submit yourselves to Mirza Pir Mehemed, and persuade Calil Sultan to do the same. Let there be an agreement to that purpose, and"

for Pichant.

After that the Emperor's
orders were carried out
and the King of China
in the head of one day
arrived in the city of
Peking where the King of
Siam was waiting for him.

The King of Siam was
very happy to see the
King of China and he
was very kind to him.

The King of Siam was
very kind to the King
of China and he was
very happy to see him.

The King of Siam was
very kind to the King
of China and he was
very happy to see him.

The King of Siam was
very kind to the King
of China and he was
very happy to see him.

The King of Siam was
very kind to the King
of China and he was
very happy to see him.

The King of Siam was
very kind to the King
of China and he was
very happy to see him.

The King of Siam was
very kind to the King
of China and he was
very happy to see him.

The King of Siam was
very kind to the King
of China and he was
very happy to see him.

The King of Siam was
very kind to the King
of China and he was
very happy to see him.

The King of Siam was
very kind to the King
of China and he was
very happy to see him.

The King of Siam was
very kind to the King
of China and he was
very happy to see him.

The King of Siam was
very kind to the King
of China and he was
very happy to see him.

The King of Siam was
very kind to the King
of China and he was
very happy to see him.

The King of Siam was
very kind to the King
of China and he was
very happy to see him.

The Emirs of Ferozabad.

140
The Emirs of Ferozabad, the Mirza, and the Mirza's
cousins, but that he would not open the gate to him
and the Emirs being assembled together agreed
on it that he would then open the gate to him
and they might proclaim the Mirza, and place
him on the throne, after which he would
leave the government of the city.

The Emirs of Ferozabad, believing that whatever
the Mirza said him was all graces, and
therefore they did not to open the gate to
him, but were much affected: he crossed the
Ganges, and being arriv'd at Agra, he met
at Ferozabad, he met the Mirza's
cousins, who had pass'd the
river. He told 'em how all
things were at Ferozabad.

141
140
camp. Seraj Mule Cannon and Ten
held a council with the Emirs on what was
most fitting to be done, and agreed that it
should be best to go to Bocara, which they
would lead the Emir Chait Nooruddin to
intend to persuade the Emirs that they
were the best.

142
140
This Emir departed the first of
the month, and being arriv'd at the gate of
Bocara, he call'd the Emirs to him, and
gave him the same answer as they had given
him. Nevertheless Nooruddin said he
would pass the bridge on foot, and go to
form the gate. "Emirs, said he, what
you are talking of is no trifling matter, and
I will not then to enter alone into the city,
but we may examine together the good and
consequences of what you are doing, and
have cause to repent at last." The
Emir said, he could say, signify'd nothing, it
were buoy'd up with the Mirza, and

...to the ...
...to the ...
...had passed ...

CHAPTER XXX

...the ...
...the ...
...the ...

...that the ...
...the ...
...the ...

...which ...
...with an oath, whereof he had ...
...to risk his life in the defence of ...

...and that he was ...
...the ...
...the ...

...proclaim'd and sworn to the ...
...and unanimously approv'd ...
...had told him ...

...the ...
...and declar'd his ...
...never consent ...

...they drew up a manifesto, which ...
...and seal'd ...
...likewise ...

...in ...
...the ...
...the ...

...and directing ...
...the ...
...his ...

Richards Mirza asked the British how long
the desire being to eliminate him there
some Emirs who called on him to the ex-
ecution of his duties, tho they had had access
to his person but for a short time. The
British, for their own to govern, and
who has any advantage should make use of it.
You said, my friend, capture this opportunity
immediately for Samarcand, and
then which the British
and British officers were
to be sent and how your country, and
the state of the world. I am not sure of it,
and, some of your British officers are
the right of to look an affair.

do not therefore neglect it. The British
protract not the happy minute; for next mo-
ment an insuperable difficulty may be started.
These advances were so often repeated
in the British mission, and mounted
together all the British, and
belonging to Timor, and to
his attendance, which
were at Kashgar and Seiran,
and among the British and other
soldiers of his party, and
the British, and the British
which belonged to the British
and were in their quarters, and
the British their head for Samarcand,
and consider the British, and
the British, and the British
the troops of the British, and
the British forthwith on a body of
Chetani, and that British.

going over to the Mirza Calil Sultan, he gave Berendac an account of the Emir's journey to Samarcand, and of Akram Chah's refusing him entrance into the city.

The Emir Berendac surpris'd at this news, and mov'd as well by his ambition as his conscience, prefer'd policy to justice and reason, and regardless of his oath, or the observance of the rules of equity, immediately return'd to find the Mirza Calil Sultan. On the contrary, Rostam, Taurangza went to Ali Akbar, where he inform'd the Mirzas of the Emir's return. This latter, assur'd and beg'd pardon of the Mirza Calil.

He swore to him a second time. Those officers declar'd the

that they had receiv'd from Pir Mehemed, who he had let his seal & sent it by Achmich; and at the same time he continu'd his road towards Samarcand, with design to attack the empire. This news being come to the Emir Chah Noureddin and Goumelic, they thus address'd the empress.

"An evil counsel of seditious persons has prevail'd; the Emirs have again

sent to the Mirza Calil Sultan, and

violated the treaty which they

and seal'd, and are all on their way

to Samarcand. He who breaks his word and o

ught so to be abhor'd by every one,

and enemy to mankind. Every body

should now be sent into a thousand

for the most powerful emperor, who

a manner the lord of the world, who

scarcely is to exist, when some

whom from the lowest state of life

rais'd to the greatest honors, he

cons to him, and forgetting his

"I shall only
 declare their
 your grief at
 emperor, whose equal is no where to be met
 with, who has obliged the kings of the world
 to serve at his gate, and has suffered
 the name of emperor is no longer
 out of this world, than his last will is
 laid upon. Religion is better for
 the world. What unheard of barbarity
 that abjects are, after so many centuries
 to have them become the enemies of the
 on? It rocks the world in a
 storm as the storm in the
 action. Why are not stones
 sent down from heaven to punish these un-
 grateful wretches? As for us, may God
 grant us his grace, that we may not be
 his enemies; but that we may have
 his interest, and we may employ
 force in the execution of his last will, and
 be obedient to the young princes his
 children, and sacrifice even our lives as
 his servants, rather than disobey his
 will."

CHAPTER XLII

and called this speech the "negotiation on the cigarette" that has been back with the world. It found recognition while the majority should go to the United States.

THE HISTORY OF TIMUR THE LAM.

...from whence they might go to meet the
Mirza Pir Mehmed to show him Timur's testa-
ment. The emirs, approving their propo-
sal, the Emirs took leave of him; and having
assembled a great number of Emirs with
them, they held a council with
him, and the result follows:
"You know that nobody had ever
before us seen the favor we receive;
we had sworn to be made;
And now that his death is
near, we are here, yes for our

him at the day of judgment, we have
intention is to seek the Mirza Pir Mehmed
who is declared by Timur's testament to
be lawful heir to the empire, and to offer
him the empire; and if to him on
our's will, we shall risk our lives,
lose our worldly goods, we'll do it;
rather than fail in our promise
and oath; for if we
of so infamous an action, we
hope to enjoy one day in
paradise, who were the greatest objects of
happy emperor, let us show your
regard to this resolution."
The Emirs of this assembly, who
were greatly touch'd, unanimously
said: "The intention is to obey our
orders: since you are ready to do
that will, we'll follow you with
alacrity, and in what stretch of
loyalty, and in what stretch of
loyalty, and in what stretch of

C. H. A. P. XLIII

The empresses march to Samarcand. Their mourning, after the two Mirzas departed.

THE empresses, accompany'd by the young princes the Mirzas children, as Baisara, Andogh, Bazaras, Siorgatnich and others, with several faithful domestics, departed from the Atad; and having the decess'd emperor's bier with tail and drums carry'd before 'em, and a gage following behind, they took the Samarcand road, and at the har-Raha, with their eyes gushing out with tears. The heirs of the city had the insolence to refuse opening the gate to 'em that day: on which the empresses went down into the garden near the Mirza Charoc near that gate, where pass'd the night. Next day they enter'd it with the Mirzas and officers of their household lodg'd in the Canicah of the Mirza and Bazar, where Timur's coffin lay. Next day they uncover'd their heads, tore their hair; they mangled their faces, and cast themselves on the ground, to testify their sorrow for the emperor. The princesses Bazaras and Roukia Canica, the Mirza Mehan Gehanghir, with several grandees of the empire, as the Coja Abdulvel and others, with the wives of the Cherifs and principal persons having felts about their necks, and their hair torn, assembled together in different mourning habits. The inhabitants shut up the shops and markets; and every one made lamentation.

the emperor
is among

the emperor
is among

the emperor
is among

CHAPTER XLII

the emperor
is among

the emperor
is among

The

The Mirza, notwithstanding the oath, to
show the ministers of these matters, that he
so irritate em in this bad conjuncture, they did
sanction their falsification, and order'd the messen-
gers to salute the Emirs, and tell em that it
intention was to do what they had promis'd
it would be better for em, since it was the
which every honest and sensible man wou'd
think that they wrote a letter, in which
they wou'd em to continue their duty
which they had taken, and to
according to their duty, without
any intimation to the court.
then write and acknowledge it
they had receiv'd from the court
they wou'd find that it was
an indispensable obligation on every
that which is well-pleasing both to God
and that for their integrity might be
their honor by posterity. They lik-
wise wou'd tell em they need not
that, when the Mirza shou'd be fix'd
throne, he wou'd distinguish them
others, as they had preserv'd
they shou'd transgress the orders of
factor, they wou'd commit a very
reasonable action, and besides the
infamy of it, wou'd incur a severe punishment
and must in the end repent in vain.
scald up this letter, which they deliver
yan Temour Cazen, who immediately
with it to Samarcand.

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

em full of reproaches, which they sent by an express. Then continuing their road, they met Roustem Berlas, brother of Hamza, governor of Bocara, whom they had sent thither before, and was return'd to meet the Mirzas, who being arriv'd before the city went to visit the governors of the province, whose assistance they implor'd. They made a new treaty in this holy place, which they confirm'd by solemn oaths.

After which they took possession and enter'd Bocara; they lodg'd in the castle, which they fortified, and strengthened the fortifications. The guard of the city, they put in chains, and which opens upon it, with one half of the castle, and the other half of the castle of the Mirza.

half of the castle and walls, shou'd be attended by the Mirza Ibrahim Sultan, attended by the Emir Cheik Noureddin; that the city shou'd be guarded by the Emirs Roustem Berlas, Hamza, Atabek, Tereckul Care and others, each of whom shou'd have the gate, as well as of the bastions & flanking all come to this resolution, immediately to put it in execution, and build the walls of the city.

CHAPTER II.

Coronation of the Mirza Cabi Sultan Samarcand.

THE H. E. Ambassador Moulana Bekredin had made choice of Wednesday the 16th Ramadan 807, which answers to the year of the 1700, the 1st being in the 5th degree of Aries, for the coronation of the Mirza Cabi Sultan. He accordingly put on the first day into harness, and took possession of the great imperial palace, where the treasures of all Asia were amass'd. Being seated on the throne, the Imperial habit, his hair shorn, and his beard long, the men of the court, their knees congratulated his accession to the throne as he was install'd, to show his regard to Timur's testament.

On the 17th, the Mirza Mohammed Sultan, son of the Mirza Mohammed Sultan, and brother of the Mirza Fir Mohamed, the this day was but nine years of age: and he was seated at the top of all the parents and nobles, according to custom, and the Mirza Sultan had the sole disposal of every thing, as if he had been the lawful sovereign of the Empire.

Four days after, this new emperor went to the Chamber of the deceas'd Mirza Mohamed Sultan, to pay his devotions, and perform the public ceremonies of mourning. The empresses, Mirzas, Emirs, and all the people came there in black habits, and wept and made

114
of Timur-Ber-
made bitter lamentations. By the Mirza Calil Sultan's order the whole Alcoran was read thro, alms were distributed among the poor and sick, and a great funeral-banquet prepar'd.

Then the Emperor's drum was beat in a very mournful manner, after which it was broke to pieces according to custom. The learned men and poets compos'd panegyrics and epitaphs upon the emperor, and among others the son of the Goia Masoud Begeri, and the Goia Asker

As the place Timur, by reason of the loss he always bore to the Cherifs, had several times propos'd that his tomb shou'd be plac'd under that of the great Cherif Suid Berke, that Cherif's coffin was transported from Andcond, and was plac'd in the new shrine, and Timur's tomb was plac'd underneath that of the Cherif, according to the orders he had given; the corps of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan was also transported to the same manseum, and bury'd at the emperor's grandfather's side. May God enlighten their souls with the lamps of his mercy.

When the Mirza Calil Sultan was fix'd on his throne, he open'd his treasures, and distribut'd them very liberally among the Emirs, nobles, lords, and soldiers: but why shou'd he call liberality? it was rather impudence and prodigality, for he distribut'd his gold like mea of wheat, and it was carry'd away by load corn out of barns, to the great amazement of the people.

CHAPTER VIII

*Abridgment of the History of the
Mirza Cásí Sultan, and his*

son, &c.

But H. N. S. D. shall have account
of the shadow of God, and acknowl-
edge the power of secrets: it is for a ray of ti-
tles. The purring is that with which
the world is full: who believes himself to be
the great charge with-
out divine assistance, gives credit to
it. Both absurd and impossible: for God
favors with his mercy the good man, and
the world is full of the power of those who
say their devotion to him, and dis-
cuss the poor. We may also be assured
that it is not well govern'd by its vast
the magazines, nor by the multitude
of the great number of its people,
by the protection of the Almighty. In the
of the world, besides valor requisite for the
gaining of a great empire.

The truth of this plainly appears in the
Mirza Cásí Sultan, who has spent
his whole life in conjunctures, and in the
of the ground, as if he were ever in
the world. His birth, as a great
of the world, drew on him the
of the whole universe: and it was
of the world, and part of the world.
They were with him at Tachkent
when they receiv'd the news of their misfor-
tune, their hearts were fill'd with fear: and a

Then, there were none at that
time in the Marz Gazi-Sultan, even
who took in back to him, thinking by this
to preserve the crown for ever in Timur's
family.

The Marz at the time took the road to
Samarcand, and at his arrival there perceived a
general conformation among the people, the
chief of whom, judging at best so to do, went
to meet him, and congratulated him on his conse-
cration to the crown. The Rulers who had charge
of the city and treasury, likewise resigned
to him, and so he easily became master of the
throne of Samarcand. This city was then in a
very flourishing condition, being rich in
treasures and great lords, and full of
well skilled art-

craftsmen of the town, and by
had left their own country to dwell in this ci-
ty, it being the seat of the empire of Asia.
We will not mention the immense treasures of
ready money, precious stones, stuffs, belts, and
famous vessels and toys, which were innumerable
for the arms, bucklers, tents, pavilions, and
thrones, and other marks of grand
riches and magnificence, which had been
long for several ages by the princes of
kingdoms of Asia, and had been gathered
Timur from the emperors and Rulers of the
counties of Iran and Touran, from the coast
of the Calmacks to the frontiers of Greece,
Natolia; and from the farther part of Asia
the frontiers of Syria, and from Carcen
the great Caspian to the limits of Russia
cassia, Bulgaria and Europe: besides which
the tribute of thirty-six years received
Asia.

...the quantity of
...fell into
...without
...of the
...D.C.

...was one of the
...Mirza

...the conclusion of
...the

...our when
...sovereign, he resign
up to the will of this beauty,
no pleasure but in her company

...her to spin
...the emperor, saying, after his
...her slave, and breath

...I have brought
...in which the
...He

...and chiefly among these were
...the instruments of his ruin, and
...that all the wealth of the

...that did not amount to a tenth
...of the empire, yet he spent
...the

...this account, the first thing to be
...done by this prince was to

16
The wrinkled hands of precious
times on the heads of those, upon whom it
would have been a crime, in a manner, toiling
a little earth; while persons of extraordinary
merit could obtain nothing, or at least but a
trifle. It was then a perfect game of hazard
for he who put in a penny, carry'd away a
million; and those who deserv'd vast treasures,
died without having a tenth part. Moreover,
the Mirza advanc'd several strangers of mean
extraction, made 'em Emirs, and gave 'em the
best places in the state: which discover'd a
great want of policy and conduct; for it alien-
ated the hearts of the great lords of his
court, and the generals of his army; and
even those officers who were his friends
fell into an enmity against him: which
was the root of many disorders.

"It is not honors, says the poet, upon him thou
lov'st, unless by degrees; for if you advance
him on a sudden, he will become insensible
to the favors you have heap'd on him, and
forget the obligations he owes to you."

Besides all this, as the Sultan Calil's mother
was inferior in rank to the deceas'd empress's
wife, and these empresses became jealous of
her growing greatness, she conceiv'd a great
indignation against 'em, and perswaded Calil to
give each of 'em, as well as Timour's concubine
to some brave Emir in marriage; who might
that means, as she pretended, become more
attach'd to his interest, and so bring the state
better order. Accordingly he behav'd
towards those venerable empresses, who
ought to have reverenc'd as his
in a manner condemn'd by all men
forcing them to marry those who were unworthy
to be their porters: he cast angels into his
mouth.

But he did not consider, that a king, who
cast off all thoughts of honor, and laid
himself to the kingdom. In this, he
showed the aversion of his subjects,
and the subjects: and as he con-
tinued with sincerity, the public affairs fell
into the most disorder and confusion. "It
says a certain poet, the ship of empire
sunk, both himself and his lady were
sunk: the kingdom slid off of
the rock, and he fell from the utmost height.
The cause of all these disorders was the gre-
at dislike the Mirza had with strangers, and
persons of no figure or merit. The good ought
to avoid the wicked: for the wicked are the
cause of their own ruin. All these events were
the result of the conduct of Timur:
in governing the empire: they were
ordering the death of this woman:
and by the providence of God, the state
was improved of the ill
of her being suffered to live."

C H A P. XLVIII.

Conclusion of the history of Timur-Bec, which in the qualities by which that conqueror surpassed all the kings who preceded him, and set down.

The names of his children who succeeded him.

IN his glorious victories by which there is no comparable name has acquired the royal dignity, were his sincere piety, the great devotion he bore to religion, his strictness in punishing the liberal and the liberal, and his daily seen and felt by his subjects.

As his great qualities have been mentioned in the series of this history, our design at present is to take notice of certain which were peculiar to him. And among others, with regard to his birth, it is proper to be informed, that his ninth grandfather was Tounten Geng, the race of Buzendger Can, chief of a tribe of the tribe of Gayar, who was descended from the son of Japhet, the son of Noah, whom may salvation rest; (from whence it appears that his ancestors were Canaanites) yet the Elayalltagai his father, as well as his grandfather the Emir Berkulk, having abdicated the kingdom, and left the government of the principality of Kach, which they had preferred with the Tatars of ten thousand men, to the children of their uncle Samy of Kach; we may say that Tim brought the crown into this august family being the first emperor in it.

...to the
highest degree, with a strong ambition
and ambition admir'd by all, endeavoring
to bring the great talent he had re-
ceiv'd from nature to perfection. He pass'd his
life in this poor country, where his great
talent and great genius were not in con-
formity with the time and his integrity
was not upon his every one's admiration
because in personal combats, or in pitch'd bat-
tles, where no counter or before him could boast
himself, and the death of this nation

...of what we advance may be
...on the 10th of

...are not at all
in history will be tax'd with ex-
tation. He mounted the throne of the
emperor when thirty-four years old, and
...during his
...the number of
...he made himself master of the
...Legate, Can, Fouch, Can, and
...he found the great city of
...the world; so that the towns, cities,
...were greater than in the world.

This is a certain fact, and the
...of other things, and
...the crown has been a great
...of it. But the chief pr

...the crown was the
...by persons

The Policy of Tamerlane

One thing further remarkable in this monarch was, that he always observed the wholesome maxim of holding fast; yet he never solely confided in fort, but constantly did what his own good genius taught him, and had such good success in all his undertakings, that it seem'd as if he had been always the care of divine providence. He cho'd not be shaken in his resolutions; he had the policy to be present at the execution of his most important enterprises, either as to the state or religion. Both in peace and war he went out forward every thing for self.

Besides his great and continual employments in war and the government, there remain'd many more things which he did in his reign.

He built; in rivers and canals which he dug; he had in works of piety, as mosques, chappels, hospitals, bridges, palaces, monasterys, gardens, vineyards, and pleasure-houses, which he erected in divers parts of Asia, no so great a list, that it wou'd take up a large volume to enumerate em, without describing em particular. And it wou'd be no exaggeration to say, that a king wou'd be account'd powerful and magnificent, who should employ'd thirty six years only in building great edifices, which Tamerlane did; and that wou'd be thought to surpass all the k the earth on that account, without carry'g those long wars, and obtaining the far conquests which he did. Are not all the great cities in the great routs of Asia for the accommodation of travellers, the many monasterys and hospitals, from which the sick and travellers reap so great advantage by the alms distributed there; are not all

I say, no, works a great miracle, and now reaps the fruits of sacrifice.

We may also consider the blessings this emperor receiv'd from heaven in the great number of children he left behind him; which were thirty-six sons, and seventeen daughters living, according to the following detail.

The deceas'd Mirza GHAZISAHAR had a deft left eleven princes; for the deceas'd Akbar Sultan had had three sons; Mehmed Ghaughir, then nine years of age; Sadvacen and Jahar; &c. The Mirza Pir Ali Ghasani twenty nine years old, had 5 sons; Sadat eleven years of age; Gahel seven, &c. &c. &c. Tostigan, Gaifer, and Bahangir.

The deceas'd Mirza OMAR GHANIZADE had five sons; Pir Mahomed, twenty five years of age; Mirza Ali, fifteen years of age; Mirza Omar Chah, &c. &c. ag'd twenty three, who had two sons, Ghinan six years old; Sultan Ali one year; Esfender twenty one years of age; Ahmed eighteen years; &c. &c. &c. teen; and Begum Hajar twelve.

The sons of the Mirza MIRZA KHALIL were thirty-eight years of age, were in all four; Alsubecre, twenty-three years old, who had four sons; Alengher nine years of age; &c. &c. &c. four; Omar twenty-two years old; Chah Sultan twenty-one; &c. &c. &c. and Sargatnich six.

The Mirza GHANIZADE, twenty-eight years of age, had four sons; Omar Ali and Ibrahim Sultan, both eleven years old; &c. &c. &c. eight years; Sargatnich six; &c. &c. &c. three years; Janaglen two years; and Tamas one year.

These thirty-five princelings being at Timur-Ber's death: besides who as he had one daughter nam'd Sultan-Bat Begum, and sixteen granddaughters: the Mirza Omar Cheik three, the Mirza-Mehemed Sultan three, the Mirza-Miran Chah four, and Mirza Charoc one; the Mirza Pir Moha Gehanghir three, the Mirza Attoabek one, the Mirza Calil Sultan one.

The Mirza Sultan-Hussain, twenty-five years of age, was the youngest Timur's daughter nam'd Akia Beghi or Tagi Can; and his father was Emir Mehemed Bei, son of the Emir Mustafa.

And as it was written in the book of that the crown should continue in this illustrious family by the birth of the Mirza's children.

history of the glorious actions of Timur intend to compile a history of the Mirza Char and give a true relation of his great actions which prov'd him the worthy successor of the most illustrious conqueror who ever appear'd in the world.

The end of the second volume.

I HAVE read by order of my lord
chanicellor the history of *Timur-Beg*
grand Can of Tartary; and believe the
public will receive as much pleasure
as advantage from a work, in which
the reader will discover the geography
of the vast region of Tartary, so lit-
tle known in this part of the world.

L. DE FÉRTOT

THE

THE CONTENT OF THE First VOLUME.

BOOK I.

CHAP. I. Of *Sultan Cazan*, *Zagatai*; his defeat and death. *Mir Cazan*, a Turkish prince, takes upon him the government of the empire, and establishes a grand Can. The war of *Mir Cazan* against *Malek Hussein*, prince of *Herat*. Page 1

Chap. 2. Of the government of the *Mirza Abdallah*, the son of *Cazan*; and of the difference which happened between the prince of *Zagatai*. Page 12

Chap. 3. *Toglac Toman Can*, king of the *Gues*, marches into *Transoxiana*. The flight of *Hadgi Berlas*. Page 18

Chap. 4. The rise of *Mir Hussein*, grandson of *Mir Cazan*: he is assisted by *Timur-Bec*. Page 19

Chap. 5. Several intrigues between *Timur* and *Hadgi Berlas*; as also between the other princes. Page 21

Chap. 6. The king of the *Gues* returns to *Transoxiana* with a great army. The death of *Hadgi Berlas*. The Can confirms *Timur* in the possession of his country of *Kech*, and of a *Toman* of ten thousand men. Page 25

Chap.

Chap. 7. The march of Emir Hussein. 51

Chap. 8. Several warlike exploits of Timur and Hussein. 51

Chap. 9. The rencounter of the army of Geni, and its defeat, caus'd by the policy of Timur-Bec, with the reduction of the city of Kesh. 54

Chap. 10. The death of Teghut Timur Can, king of the Getes; and the defeat of his army by the great Timur-Bec and Hussein. 57

Chap. 11. The assembly of the princes conven'd by Timur and the Emir Hussein, in which they elevate Gulakhan Agien to the dignity of grand Can. 57

Chap. 12. The battle of Loiz, or of the foughs. 58

Chap. 13. The Retreat of Timur-Bec and Hussein, and being'd by the Getes. 61

Chap. 14. Departure of the princes for Samarcand, and the division which happen'd between them. 66

Chap. 15. Timur-Bec brings his army into the field against Emir Hussein. 71

Chap. 16. Several exploits of Timur, and intrigues of the princes. The march of Timur to Carsten. 71

Chap. 17. Emir Hussein brings an army into the field to oppose Timur. 74

Chap. 18. The force and tactics of Timur, by the army of Hussein. Timur defeats the army of the Corasmas. 79

Chap. 19. Timur sends an ambassador to Hussein at Herat. 92

Chap. 20. Timur defeats the army of the Emir Hussein in Transoxiana. 94

Chap. 21. The Emir Hussein sends an army against Timur, which is defeated. 101

Chap. 22. The Emir Hussein again seeks to make peace with Timur. 105

Chap. 23. The Emir Hussein brings an army into the field from Bedakchan. 108

CONTENTS.

Chap. 24. Timur marches at the head of an army to repulse the Gens.	111
Chap. 25. Timur returns from Bedatshan.	115
Chap. 26. A second capture between Timur and Hussein.	117

BOOK II.

CHAP. 1. The establishment of Timur on the throne of the empire of Zaganai.	121
Chap. 2. Timur returns from the city of Balc to Samarcand: the building of the castle and fortifications of that metropolis.	123
Chap. 3. The Couroutai, that is, the diet or assembly of the states, convened by Timur's orders.	125
Chap. 4. Timur marches.	127
Chap. 5. Timur sends an army to Balc and T.	140
Chap. 6. Timur sends the Emir Yakou to besiege Cheburgan.	142
Chap. 7. Timur marches an army into the country of the Geres.	144
Chap. 8. A second expedition of Timur against the Geres.	146
Chap. 9. The embassy from Timur to Hussein, king of Carezem.	147
Chap. 10. Timur departs from Samarcand to make war on the king of Carezem.	149
Chap. 11. Timur makes peace with Djouph Sofi, who succeeded Hussein; and demands in marriage the princess Canzade for the prince Gehanghir his eldest son.	151
Chap. 12. Timur marches a second time into the kingdom of Carezem.	157
Chap. 13. The famous embassy from Timur to the king of Carezem, to demand the princess Canzade.	159

Chap.

THE CONTENTS.

- Chap. 14. Timur marches a second time into the country of the Getes. 165
- Chap. 15. Timur's marriage with the princess Dikka daga; daughter of Camareddin king of the Getes. Timur is in danger of losing his life by a conspiracy which he narrowly escapes. 167
- Chap. 16. Timur marches a third time to Caracorum, and returns on the revolt of Bar Bugh and his clan. 171
- Chap. 17. Timur's fourth expedition to the kingdom of the Getes. 173
- Chap. 18. The death of Mirza Gebaghur, Timur's eldest son. 175
- Chap. 19. Timur's fifth expedition against the Getes. 176
- Chap. 20. Timur's fifth expedition to the country of the Getes against Camareddin. Tocatnich Aglen descended from Tauschi, son of Genghis Khan, comes, and puts himself under the protection of Timur. 178
- Chap. 21. Timur gives Tocatnich Aglen the provinces of Otrar and Sabran; and assists him in making himself master of the empire of the Getes. He also gives him the right of the Ganges, descended from Genghis Khan, and the province of the Ganges. 180
- Chap. 22. Preparations for war. Timur's army into the field against the Getes. 182
- Chap. 23. Timur's irruption into the country of the Ganges. Tocatnich Aglen puts himself under the protection of Timur, and is made a prince of the Ganges. 184
- Chap. 24. The death of Timur's eldest son, Mirza Gebaghur, the emperor Timur. 186
- Chap. 25. Timur sends Temurkhan Can to the Ganges. Malic Can, emperor of Capchac. 188

THE CONTENTS

Chap. 26. *Embassy from the emperor Timur to Joseph Sofi king of Carezem.* 191

Chap. 27. *Timur's fourth war in Carezem: death of Joseph Sofi: conquest of that kingdom.* 194

Chap. 28. *Foundation of the walls of Kech, the country of Timur: the building of the palace of Acherai.* 199

Chap. 29. *The Emir Moudi Saïfeddin sent ambassador to Herat, to Malek Cayaseddin Pir Ali, king of Corassana.* 200

Chap. 30. *Mirza Miran Chah, son of Timur, marches into Corassana, to make war on Malek Cayaseddin Pir Ali, prince of Herat.* 202

Chap. 31. *Timur's army marches to make war in Persia, and the rest of the empire of Iran.* 204

Chap. 32. *Reduction of Parchendes, a town of Corassana.* 207

Chap. 33. *Reduction of Herat, capital of Corassana.* 209

Chap. 34. *The army marches to Tous and Kelat.* 213

Chap. 35. *Timur returns to Samarcand.* 215

Chap. 36. *Death of Akia Beghi, daughter of Timur, and wife of the Emir Bet, son of the Emir Moussa.* 216

Chap. 37. *Timur's second expedition into the kingdom of Iran or Persia.* 239

Chap. 38. *Reduction of the town of Tarchez in Corassana.* p. 225

Chap. 39. *The arrival of an ambassador from Persia, or the true Persia, at the court of Timur.* 22

Chap. 40. *Timur marches into the province of Mazendran.* 229

Chap. 41. *Timur marches to Samarcand. Death of the empress Dilchadaga, and of the princess Gulistan. Timur's age, Timur's sister.* 231

Chap.

THE CONTENTS.

Chap. 42. Timur leads a fresh army into the country of the Getes.	235
Chap. 43. Timur marches to Mawerandran, and thence to Sistan.	236
Chap. 44. Town of Sistan besieged and taken.	239
Chap. 45. Timur marches to Bost.	245
Chap. 46. War against the Ouganiens, inhabitants of the mountains, south of Candahar.	247
Chap. 47. Timur returns to Samarcand.	250
Chap. 48. Timur marches into the province of Mawerandran.	251
Chap. 49. Timur marches into the province of Irac Agemi.	256
Chap. 50. The emperor Timur marches to Salaman.	257
Chap. 51. Timur returns to Samarcand, the capital of his empire.	259
Chap. 52. Timur enters the kingdom of Iran, where he reigns thirty years successfully.	261
Chap. 53. Timur marches to Azerbaijan, or the country of the antient Medes.	263
Chap. 54. Timur enters Georgia at the head of his army. The description of the Persian way of war, as used by the Gorths and Nakhians.	265
Chap. 55. Timur returns to Candahar.	266
Chap. 56. The march of Timur to Berda. Description of the army of Capchac. Defeat of the army of Tocamich Can.	267
Chap. 57. The arrival of the empress Sora, daughter of the emperor of China, and the princes her sons.	271
Chap. 58. Timur's army marches against Cora, a beamed, prince of the Turcomans.	273
Chap. 59. Timur marches to Iran and Afghanistan. The letter which Cha Ching King of Persia writes to Timur at his death.	275
Chap. 60. Timur marches again into the provinces of Pers and Irac Agemi.	279

THE CONTENTS

- Chap. 61. *Timur marches to Chiraz, the capital of Persia or the true Persia.* 294
- Chap. 62. *Reasons which induce Timur to return to the capital of his empire.* 297
- Chap. 63. *Timur returns to Samarcand; and gives the government of Persia and Irak to the family of Murasid.* 301
- Chap. 64. *The emperor orders a process against some Emirs, whom he had left in Transoxiana.* 303

BOOK III.

- CHAP. 1. *Timur-Bec departs for his fifth expedition into the kingdom of Caracem.* 305
- Chap. 2. *Some accidents during Timur's expedition into Caracem.* 307
- Chap. 3. *Timur departs to make war in C., and is victorious over Tocatmich Can.* 317
- Chap. 4. *Timur sends the Mirza Miran Chab into Corassana.* 323
- Chap. 5. *Timur's expedition into Mogolistan against Keker Coja Aglen, and the prince Aucatoura; which made the fifth campaign in that country.* 325
- Chap. 6. *Timur holds a diet, and sends his army into all the quarters of the Moguls, to fight the Getes.* 331
- Chap. 7. *Timur returns to the seat of his empire.* 338
- Chap. 8. *The Couroultai, or diet, held by Timur's order.* 341
- Chap. 9. *Timur sends his troops into the country of the Getes.* 344
- Chap. 10. *Timur marches into the desert of Cap.* 347
- Chap. 11. *Timur reviews his troops.* 356
- Chap. 12. *Timur sends the Mirza Mahomet Sultan at the head of the scouts.* 359

THE CONTENTS.

Chap. 13. Battel between the scouts of the two armies. Death of the Emir Aicnamur, and other famous men.	367
Chap. 14. The army ranged in order of battel in an extraordinary manner. A terrible fight which ensued thereupon.	371
Chap. 15. Timur returns from the desert of Capchaic to the seat of his empire.	382
Chap. 16. The government of Zabulestan given to Mirza Per Mehemet, son of Gehanghir.	384
Chap. 17. Timur departs for a war of five years continuance.	386
Chap. 18. Timur departs from Joudex, after his return.	388
Chap. 19. The taking of Amol, Sari, and Mahabad.	390
Chap. 20. Timur sends a letter to Samarcand.	396
Chap. 21. Timur makes war a second time on the kingdom of Persia and Irak.	399
Chap. 22. Timur marches to the kingdoms of Lorestan and Careslan.	402
Chap. 23. An account of the motions of the princes of Persia, or of Persia and Irak, on which the present affairs depend.	406
Chap. 24. Timur marches to Chiraz against Chah Mansour.	411
Chap. 25. Battel between Timur and Chah Mansour, and the death of the latter.	415
Chap. 26. Timur seizes the princes of the house of Chah Mansour, and disposes of their estates among his domestics.	422
Chap. 27. Timur marches to the Kingdom of Shirvan, or Mircan.	425
Chap. 28. Timur makes the Mirza Miran Chah Khan King of Herat and Cabul.	428
Chap. 29. Timur conquers the Turcoman Kingdoms.	431
Chap. 30. Timur marches to Bagdad.	431

The CONTENTS

Chap. 31. Return of Mirza Mehomet Sultan after the defeat of the Courdes robbers.	438
Chap. 32. Timur sends an ambassador to the Sultan Baruc in Egypt.	439
Chap. 33. The taking of the town of Tecrit.	441
Chap. 34. Timur continues his journey, and sends his princes and Emirs to make inroads in several Kingdoms.	448
Chap. 35. Timur marches to Diarbekir.	450
Chap. 36. Timur marches to Edessa.	452
Chap. 37. Death of Mirza Omar Cheik, Timur's son.	455
Chap. 38. Timur marches to Gezire.	460
Chap. 39. Timur's second enterprize upon Mardin.	461
Chap. 40. Birth of the Mirza Oluc Bey.	463
Chap. 41. Timur marches to Amud or Hamid, capital of the country of Diarbekir.	465
Chap. 42. Timur returns to Samarcanda.	466
Chap. 43. Timur sends bodys of soldiers into several countrys to enlarge his conquests.	468
Chap. 44. The taking of the town and fortress of Avenic.	473
Chap. 45. Timur's return after the taking of Avenic.	477
Chap. 46. Timur sends an army into Georgia.	479
Chap. 47. The birth of Ibrahim Sultan, son of Charoc.	480
Chap. 48. Solemn rejoicings for the birth of Ibrahim Sultan, son of Charoc.	482
Chap. 49. Timur constitutes the Mirza Charoc governor of Samarcand.	484
Chap. 50. Timur goes in person to the Georgian war.	485
Chap. 51. Timur marches a second time into Georgia against Tocatmich Can.	487
Chap. 52. Timur reviews his army.	490
Chap. 53. Battle between Timur and Tocatmich Can.	492

THE CONTENTS.

Chap. 54. Timur goes in pursuit of Tocatnich Can, and installs a new Can of Capchac.	498
Chap. 55. Timur marches into Europe; and pillages the western Capchac, as also Muscovy and Russia.	501
Chap. 56. Timur makes war in Circassia.	505
Chap. 57. Timur marches to Aburz Couh, or mount Caucasus.	506
Chap. 58. Timur attacks the fortress of Chah Taur, and others.	509
Chap. 59. Timur marches to Sensen.	511
Chap. 60. Timur marches into Capchac, and pillages the town of Hadgi Tercan, or Astracan.	513
Chap. 61. Timur returns to Capchac.	515
Chap. 62. Timur gives the government of Azerbaijan to the Mirza Mirancha, who besieges Alengic.	519
Chap. 63. Taking of the town of Seirjan; and the retreat of Bahloul to Nehavend.	520
Chap. 64. Timur sends the Mirza Mehemet Sultan to conquer the kingdom of Ormus. The reduction of Tond.	524
Chap. 65. Timur returns to the seat of his empire.	525
Chap. 66. The building of the palace of Baghi Cherma.	530
Chap. 67. Timur gives the principality of Carassan to the Mirza Chagac.	531
Chap. 68. Timur stays some time at Keck. Return of the Mirza Mehemet Sultan from the conquest of Persia.	534
Chap. 69. Timur demands in marriage for himself the daughter of Kefer Cogia Sultan. The celebration of the marriage of the Mirza Eschender with the princess Beghi Sultan.	537
Chap. 70. Timur gives orders for making the garden of Dilenchah, and building a stately palace.	540

THE
CONTENTS
OF THE
Second VOLUME.

BOOK IV.

CHAP. 1. *The cause of Timur's war in India.* Page 4

Chap. 2. *Timur brings his army into the field, to make war against the Guebres in India.* 7

Chap. 3. *Timur marches against the inhabitants of Ketuer. He defeats the Siapouches, who were cloth'd in black.* 8

Chap. 4. *Timur sends Mohamed Akel to gain intelligence of Mirza Roustem and Buzhan Aglen. His return to Ketuer.* 13

Chap. 5. *Timur sends Mirza Charoc to Herat.* 17

Chap. 6. *The arrival of ambassadors from several places. Tairi Aglen returns from the country of the Calmaes, and Cheik Noureddin from that of Fars.* 18

Chap. 7. *The repairing the fortress of Irjab, and the destroying of the Ouganis robbers.* 19

THE CONTENTS.

Chap. 8. Timur marches to Choumizan and Nagar, and destroys the robbers of the nation of the Per- vians.	25
Chap. 9. Timur passes the river Indus.	28
Chap. 10. Chehabeddin Mobarez Chah Temur com- mits hostilities against the emperor after his submis- sion.	30
Chap. 11. Timur's arrival at Toulentia.	32
Chap. 12. Timur marches in search of Nufret Can- keri.	34
Chap. 13. Arrival of prince Pir Mehmed Gehanghar from Multan.	35
Chap. 14. The taking the town of Band, and the forts of Bamar; the inhabitants of which places were put to the sword.	39
Chap. 15. Timur departs from Batnir, for Serefti, Fatabad and Ahrouni.	45
Chap. 16. Timur marches against a nation of rob- bers called	48
Chap. 17. A review of the whole army marching in order of battel.	48
Chap. 18. Timur marches to the east side of the town of Lami. Massacre of a hundred thousand Indian slaves who were in his camp.	52
Chap. 19. Timur gives battel to Sultan Mahmoud, emperor of India.	57
Chap. 20. Flight of Sultan Mahmoud, and his ge- neral Melon Etn, prince of Multan. Reduction of Delhi capital of India.	61
Chap. 21. Timur departs from Delhi, and pursues his conquests in the remoter parts of India, near the Ganges.	68
Chap. 22. Conquest of Myrthe. The Guebres are put to flight.	69
Chap. 23. Several battels upon the great river Gan- ges, against the militia of the Guebres.	72
Chap. 24. Timur's three Gacets, or expeditions a- gainst the Guebres.	74

THE CONTENTS.

- Chap. 25. *Timur exterminates the Guebres assembled in the famous defile of Coupele. Description of a marble statue of a cow ador'd by the Indians.* 78
- Chap. 26. *Timur's resolution to return to the seat of his empire.* 81
- Chap. 27. *Timur's irruption on the mountain Soudoc.* 82
- Chap. 28. *Several combats in the woods near Soudoc.* 83
- Chap. 29. *Timur's Gazies and expeditions in the province of Tschamou.* 87
- Chap. 30. *Relation of what pass'd at Labor, with regard to Chicri Couker, prince of that city.* 92
- Chap. 31. *Description of the little kingdom of Cashmir, or Kichmir.* 95
- ~~Chap. 32. Timur returns to the seat of his empire.~~ 97
- Chap. 33. *Timur crosses the Oxus, and is made the primes and princesses of the blood.* 102
- Chap. 34. *Building of the great mosque of Samarcand.* 105

BOOK V.

- CHAP. 1. *The causes which oblig'd Timur to make war in the country of Iran, that is, in the western parts of Asia, from the river Gihon to the Mediterranean sea.* 108
- Chap. 2. *Timur's departure for a campaign of seven years.* 113
- Chap. 3. *The transactions of the Emir Solyman.* 117
- Chap. 4. *The arrival of good news from several parts.* 120
- Chap. 5. *Timur marches into Georgia, and to the file of Camcha.* 125

Chap.

THE CONTENTS.

Chap. 6. Timur's return from the defeat of Comilan.	122
Chap. 7. Continuation of the history of the Mirza Roustam, who was gone from Dagean to Chiraz. A great crime committed by his eldest brother, the Mirza Pir Mohamed.	130
Chap. 8. A diet in relation to the affairs of Georgia.	136
Chap. 9. Timur marches against prince Jani Beg, a Georgian.	139
Chap. 10. The taking of the fort of Zeyit, and the town of Zeyit.	142
Chap. 11. Timur marches against the Georgian prince.	143
Chap. 12. Timur returns from Georgia.	144
Chap. 13. Reasons which oblig'd Timur to march against the city of Sebaste, capital of Anatolia.	145
Chap. 14. Timur's letter to the Caiser Roum, that is, the Ottoman emperor.	147
Chap. 15. Timur marches to Sebaste, and takes that city.	151
Chap. 16. Timur marches to Abneftan.	153
Chap. 17. The reasons of Timur's carrying his arms into Syria and Mesopotamia.	157
Chap. 18. Timur marches into the kingdoms of Syria and Egypt.	160
Chap. 19. The taking of the castle of Behesna and Aleppo.	162
Chap. 20. The siege and taking the city of Aleppo.	165
Chap. 21. The castle of Aleppo attack'd and taken.	173
Chap. 22. The taking of the towns and castles of Hama and Hama.	177
Chap. 23. Conquest of the town of Balbec.	180
Chap. 24. Timur marches to Damascus, capital of Syria.	181

THE CONTENTS.

Chap. 25. Timur gives battle to the Sultan of Egypt, and gains the victory.	187
Chap. 26. Taking of the city of Emasscus.	189
Chap. 27. Taking of the castle of Damascus.	194
Chap. 28. Timur returns out of Syria.	202
Chap. 29. Timur crosses the Euphrates, and enters Mesopotamia.	207
Chap. 30. Timur marches to the town of Merdin.	206
Chap. 31. Timur sends troops into Georgia, and to Bagdad.	208
Chap. 32. Timur besieges and takes Bagdad.	211
Chap. 33. Timur's return from Bagdad, and march towards Tauris.	217
Chap. 34. Timur sends the Mirza Chaoe to Arzendgian.	219
Chap. 35. The death of the second wife of Timur, and the young Mirza.	220
Chap. 36. Timur marches into Georgia, and to high Arran.	222
Chap. 37. Timur passes the winter at Carabagh. Arrival of the Mirza Mehemet Salian from Samarcand.	224
Chap. 38. Timur sends troops to make incursions in divers places.	226
Chap. 39. The causes which oblig'd Timur to return to make war on Bajazet the Ottoman emperor.	228
Chap. 40. Timur digs the river of Berles.	234
Chap. 41. Timur departs from Carabagh for the plains of Chemkour.	235
Chap. 42. Taking of the castle of Caroum.	236
Chap. 43. Taking of the castle of Kemac. Arrival of ambassadors from Bajazet.	238
Chap. 44. Timur reviews his army.	243
Chap. 45. Taking of the castle of Haron.	247
Chap. 46. Timur marches to Casarea in Cappadocia, and to Ancora.	249
Chap. 47. Timur ranges his army in order of battle to fight Bajazet.	250

THE CONTENTS.

Chap. 48. Timur gives Bajazet battle, and gains the victory.	252
Chap. 49. The taking of the Ottoman emperor, who is brought in chains before the throne of the conqueror.	255
Chap. 50. Timur's troops to make roads in divers parts of the Ottoman empire. He sends relations of his victory to the city of Ispahan and Tauris, with orders to make public rejoicings.	258
Chap. 51. The continuation of the history of the Mirza Mehmed Sultan, who had been sent to Prusa.	261
Chap. 52. Account of the Mirza Sultan Hussein, and the Emir Beglar Chah, who were gone out to fight the Turks.	265
Chap. 53. Timur departs from Kioutahia.	268
Chap. 54. Timur dispatches couriers into divers countries. The arrival of several ambassadors.	271
Chap. 55. Timur regulates the winter-quarters.	274
Chap. 56. Timur besieges Smyrna, and takes it.	278
Chap. 57. Second arrival of ambassadors from Bajazet's sons.	282
Chap. 58. Timur departs from Smyrna.	285
Chap. 59. Taking of the town of Ephesus and the fortified state of the town.	283
Chap. 60. The death of the Ottoman emperor Bajazet, and of the Mirza Mehmed Sultan; Timur's grandson.	285
Chap. 61. Mourning for the death of the Mirza Mehmed Sultan; and the translation of his coffin.	288
Chap. 62. Arrival of ambassadors from Egypt.	289
Chap. 63. Timur marches against the Caracatars, or the Tartars.	291
Chap. 64. Timur returns from Nisibis.	294
Chap. 65. The manner in which the death of the Mirza Mehmed Sultan, son of Gelangbir, was avenged in Candahar his mother's.	296

THE CONTENTS.

BOOK VI.

- C**HAP. 1. *Timur marches into Georgia.* 1299
- Chap. 2. *The government of Chiraz, at a former time given to the Mirza Râs-Mehamed, son of Omar Cherk; and that of Ispahan to his brother the Mirza Raïstem.* 1301
- Chap. 3. *Timur sends the Mirza Abencherkes to build the city of Bagdad, and gives him the government of Irac-Arabi and Diarbakir.* 1302
- Chap. 4. *Timur's arrival at the frontiers of Georgia.* 1303
- Chap. 5. *The taking of the famous castle of Gutsene in Georgia.* 1308
- Chap. 6. *Relation of what pass'd without during the siege.* 1309
- Chap. 7. *Timur marches to Abkhaze.* 1314
- Chap. 8. *Timur returns from Abkhaze. The cause of his return.* 1315
- Chap. 9. *Timur orders the town of Bailacan to be rebuilt.* 1319
- Chap. 10. *Timur sends intendants and doctors into the provinces of his empire, to examine the affairs of particular persons, and to distribute his justice and favors among the people.* 1321
- Chap. 11. *Continuation of the history of the princes who were gone into Irac-Arabi.* 1324
- Chap. 12. *Arrival of the Mirza Omar from Samarcand. Continuation of what happen'd during the building of Bailacan.* 1325
- Chap. 13. *Timur passes the winter at Carabaghavan. Relation of what happen'd there.* 1326
- Chap. 14. *The emperor sends the Mirza Chah Ghilan.* 1327
- Chap. 15. *Arrival of some princes from Merwan Vastan. A famous funeral banquet made for the late Mirza Mehemed Sultan.* 1328

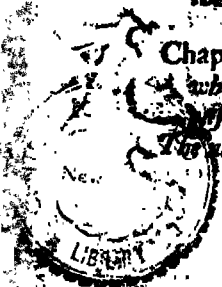
CONTENTS

Chap. 16. Timur's return from a campaign of years.	
Chap. 17. Timur invests the Mirza Omir in the empire of Hulacou Can.	327
Chap. 18. Continuation of the history of the Mirza Roustam and the Emir Solyman Chah, who were sent towards Rei.	338
Chap. 19. Timur sends the Mirza Iskender and the Emir Chameles before the rest towards Rei.	340
Chap. 20. The taking of the citadel of Firouz koub.	342
Chap. 21. Timur marches to Tchela.	347
Chap. 22. Battle between the Mirza Sultan Hussein and Iskender Cheiki. The flight of the latter.	348
Chap. 23. Timur returns to the seat of his empire.	351
Chap. 24. Timur's entry into his imperial city of Samarcand.	355
Chap. 25. Timur holds a general diet. A great feast for the marriage of the princes at Canighul.	358
Chap. 26. The causes which incited Timur to undertake the conquest of the kingdom of China.	368
Chap. 27. Timur sets out for the war against the infidels of China.	372
Chap. 28. An account of certain adventures, the knowledge of which is necessary to the understanding the latter part of this history. A relation of what happen'd at Acsoulat.	375
Chap. 29. Timur departs from Acsoulat.	378
Chap. 30. Timur's death at Otrar.	381
Chap. 31. Relation of what happen'd after Timur's death.	387
Chap. 32. Timur's coffin transported from Otrar.	389
Chap. 33. The empresses and Emirs hold a council concerning the war of China.	391
Chap. 34. Timur's coffin is transported to Samarcand.	393
Chap.	

THE CONTENTS.

- Chap. 35. The Mirza Sultan Hussein, Timur's grandson, opposes the sentiment of the Emirs. 39
- Chap. 36. The Emirs write circular letters to give advice to all the provinces of the Mirza Sultan Hussein's undertaking. 39
- Chap. 37. A letter to the great Emirs who were at Tachkum. 39
- Chap. 38. The Emir Berendac arrives at the empresses court, with an answer to the letter sent the Emirs, who were at Tachkum with the Mirza Calil Sultan. 40
- Chap. 39. Relation of what happen'd on the Emir Berendac's return to Tachkum. 40
- Chap. 40. The great Emirs oppose the Mirza Calil Sultan. 40
- Chap. 41. The Emirs hold a council with the empresses, in relation to the Mirza. 40
- Chap. 42. The Mirzas and Emirs march to Samarcand. 41
- Chap. 43. The empresses march to Samarcand. The mourning, after the two Mirzas departure. 41
- Chap. 44. Account of what pass'd among the Mirzas and Emirs who were gone to Bocara. 41
- Chap. 45. The Mirzas and Emirs at Bocara receive advice of the Mirza Calil Sultan's arrival at Samarcand, and of the obedience paid him by the Emirs of that city. 41
- Chap. 46. Coronation of the Mirza Calil Sultan at Samarcand. 41
- Chap. 47. Abridgment of the history of the Mirza Calil Sultan: and the cause of his death. 41
- Chap. 48. Conclusion of the history of Timur, wherein the qualities by which that conqueror pass'd all the kings who preceded him, are set forth. The names of his children who served him. 41

The end of the contents.





Nie 15
Calc
N 21716

